



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



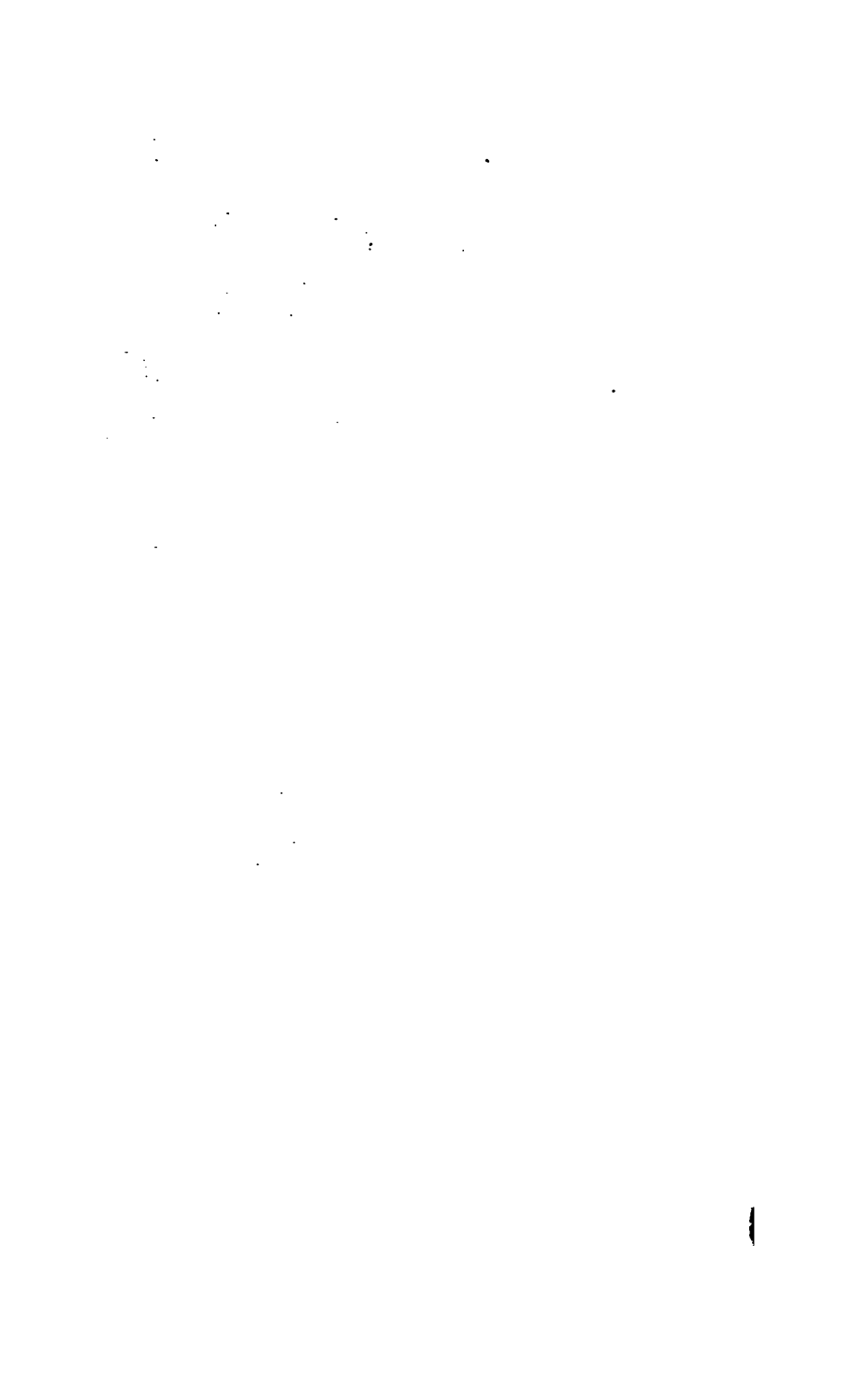
3 3433 07024252 8











1

2

A

# **GRAMMAR**

OF THE

## **FRENCH TONGUE;**

FOUNDED UPON THE DECISIONS OF THE

**FRENCH ACADEMY.**

WHEREIN ALL THE NECESSARY

**RULES, OBSERVATIONS, AND EXAMPLES,**

ARE EXHIBITED IN A

**MANNER ENTIRELY NEW.**

---

**BY JOHN PERRIN.**

---

*Necessaria pueris, jucunda senibus. — Quintil.*

---

**NEW-YORK:**  
**PUBLISHED BY SAMUEL WOOD & SONS,**  
**No. 261 Pearl-Street.**

.....  
**1832.**

5



A

# GRAMMAR

OF THE

## FRENCH TONGUE;

GROUNDLED UPON THE DECISIONS OF THE

### FRENCH ACADEMY.

WHEREIN ALL THE NECESSARY

RULES, OBSERVATIONS, AND EXAMPLES,

ARE EXHIBITED IN A

MANNER ENTIRELY NEW.

---

BY JOHN PERRIN.

---

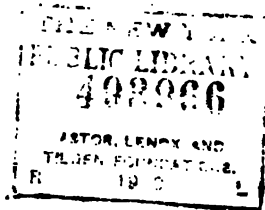
*Necessaria pueris, jucunda senibus.—Quintil.*

---

NEW-YORK:

PUBLISHED BY SAMUEL WOOD & SONS,  
No. 261 Pearl-Street.

.....  
1832.



R. & G. S. WOOD, PRINTERS, NO. 231 PEARL STREET.

NEW YORK  
PUBLIC  
LIBRARY

WELL

John Rogers  
New York  
City  
Papier  
1878

A MILORD LYTTLETON.

MONSEIGNEUR,

En dédiant cet ouvrage à VOTRE GRANDEUR, je ne débiterai pas par le panégyrique de la noblesse de votre naissance, et de votre rang : la flatterie ayant épuisé toutes les nouvelles manières de louer les Grands, la seule qui me reste pour célébrer vos qualités personnelles c'est, d'oser les passer sous silence.

Je laisse à votre Patrie la gloire d'applaudir l'homme d'Etat, le Conseiller privé de sa Majesté, l'ornement de la Société Royale, le Lord qui s'occupe à l'enrichir de monumens plus durables que le marbre. Qu'il me soit permis d'admirer l'Historien, l'Auteur, l'Homme de Lettres. Oui, MONSEIGNEUR, l'Angleterre vous doit les recherches historiques les plus curieuses et les plus exactes. La force et la richesse de la langue Anglaise paroissent dans tous vos écrits ; Vous faites plus, MONSEIGNEUR vous l'embellissez.



Tous les talens littéraires sont réhaussés en VOTRE GRANDEUR, par la protection qu'elle accorde aux Sciences et aux Arts. Le plus grand plaisir pour l'homme de Lettres, est d'encourager tout ce qui peut contribuer à la littérature ; c'est le caractère distinctif du grand-homme ; c'est le vôtre, MONSEIGNEUR, qui ne recherchez pas les louanges, et qui faites tout ce qu'il faut pour les mériter.

Il ne m'aurait donc pas été facile de trouver un autre Mécène aussi célèbre par la supériorité reconnue de son esprit, pour lui présenter cet ouvrage, comme à un Juge éclairé et judicieux, qui connaît toutes les beautés réelles de la langue Française, et dont l'approbation entraîne naturellement celle du public ; mon ambition sera toujours de mériter la vôtre, et d'être avec le plus profond respect,

MONSEIGNEUR,

DE VOTRE GRANDEUR,

Le très humble, et

Très obéissant Serviteur

PERRIN.

## PREFACE.

---

GRAMMAR is universally allowed to be an object of extensive utility\* as the foundation of the Arts and Sciences, and a key to language in general. An excellent production of this kind was the first work of the late FRENCH ACADEMY, who spared no pains to polish and improve their native language, and advance it, as near as possible, to a state of purity and perfection.

I am not insensible that several authors consider it as an essential part of the prefaces to their respective works, to represent their own performances in the brightest colours, and treat those of others with the greatest severity; but I rather choose to give, on this occasion, a short analytical account of the present undertaking, and then humbly submit the whole to the candid and impartial opinion of the public.

Having divided my Grammar into four parts, after a few preliminary observations, I begin the first with the French simple sounds, in nine figures, to which are subjoined all the sounds of the consonants; and I am fully convinced, that any pupil will, with more ease and expedition, acquire the genuine French accent by repeating those invariable sounds, with the assistance of a good master, than by the tiresome rules of pronunciation, which, being grounded on nothing but arbitrary custom, are liable to all its changes and alterations.

\* *This is inaccurate. Grammar is the improvement of language, as language is an index to knowledge.*

The sounds of the French language are followed by an alphabetical list of many French adjectives, each agreeing in gender and number with a different substantive, to make them understood. Another collection of adjectives, with the manner of placing them before or after their substantives, and their signification in either case, is likewise exhibited, which cannot fail of contributing to the scholar's improvement.

The second part begins with a short analysis of the parts of speech, which will enable the pupil to form an idea of the nature and construction of the Grammars of other languages, as well as that of the French ; and the two tables, showing the formation of the feminine gender of adjectives according to the termination, and that of the plural number of nouns, are set in a new light, and adapted to the meanest capacities.

As the verb is a principal part of speech, it should always be considered as a primary object in all grammatical productions ; and yet all grammars are defective on this subject, although of the utmost importance. In order to do it all the justice in my power, I have both in French and English, fully conjugated six regular verbs, and ~~all those that are~~ irregular, in an alphabetical manner ; followed by particular observations upon defective verbs, and the manner of conjugating them.

The third part contains the theory and practice of the French language ; the former of which comprehends the rules of syntax, with many new observations, illustrated by proper examples ; and the latter is a separate and distinct exemplification of the rules and observations after each part of speech for the scholar's improvement.

Precepts and practice, rules and examples, must go hand in hand, to attain a thorough knowledge of any tongue whatsoever.

*As to the French language, the only way for the pupil to learn it for any valuable purpose is, to lay a good foundation by becoming well acquainted with its rules, and then to read proper*

books, or converse with those who speak it in its purity ; but neither reading nor conversation will ever enable him to speak or write it with propriety and elegance, if he be wholly unacquainted with its fundamental principles.

In the fourth part are exhibited the practical irregularities of the French Tongue, alphabetically disposed, with the choice of words and phrases, warranted by the most approved authors, and especially by the decisions of the FRENCH ACADEMY. It is needless to point out the great usefulness of these important articles to those who have made a considerable progress in the language, since they manifestly contain the most elegant and curious of all the French idioms ; some of the rest are interspersed among the rules and observations exemplified in the third part of this work ; and to render the present undertaking more beneficial, I have, in every part thereof, and particularly in the conjugation of the verbs,\* not only in the orthography, but in other respects, had a due regard to the said ACADEMY's regulations.

Thus I have given a short account of my grammatical performance, which is far from being an easy task. A Grammar for the use of schools, consists of such a variety of parts, and some of them so minute and intricate, that it is a very difficult matter to render it at once concise and comprehensive, and adapt it to the meanest capacities. The subject is, indeed, low and vulgar ; but *Virgil* observes, that there is *in tenui labor* ; that such subjects require pains and application. *Quintilian* also assures us, that such works *plus habent operis quam ostentationis* ; that they are not so much shining, as they are laborious productions.

General utility was the object I principally regarded in the execution of my design. I have omitted no necessary rules

\* If Mr. Perrin had said he had followed the French Academy, he would have been more correct. T. W.

and observations; those that I have inserted are just, and illustrated by proper examples: whilst, at the same time, I have had brevity in view, as far as it could be pursued without obscurity and confusion. But, although I have taken all the care in my power to render the following sheets correct, I make no doubt, that unavoidable errors have escaped my utmost attention; for my own experience confirms the truth of what Mr. *Pope* asserts in the following words:

“Whoever thinks a faultless piece to see,  
Thinks what ne’er was, nor is, nor e’er shall be.”

However, if upon a candid and impartial examination, the present should be found a well-conducted undertaking, I am not without hopes that my involuntary errors will be favoured with the reader’s indulgence; which *Horace* represents as a reasonable practice, in these lines:

*Verum ubi plura nitent—, non ego paucis  
Offender maculis, quas aut incuria fudit,  
Aut humana parum cavit natura.*

# CONTENTS.

PRELIMINARY Observations.	- - - -	Page 13
---------------------------	---------	------------

## PART I.

### CHAP. I.

OF Pronunciation.	- - - -	15
-------------------	---------	----

### CHAP. II.

The sounds of the Consonants.	- - - -	16
-------------------------------	---------	----

### CHAP. III.

An Alphabetical list of many of the French Adjectives, each agreeing in Gender and Number with a different Substantive to make them understood.	- - -	17
---	-------	----

### CHAP. IV.

A List of Adjectives, with the manner of their being placed before or after their Substantives, and their Significa- tion in either Case.	- - - -	33
---	---------	----

### CHAP. V.

Of the Notes and Points made use of in writing French.		36
--	--	----

### CHAP. VI.

Of Accents made use of in writing French.	- -	37
A vocabulary, French and English.	- -	40
Familiar and easy Dialogues for young Beginners.	-	47

## PART II.

### CHAP. I.

A SHORT Analysis of the Parts of Speech.	- -	60
--	-----	----

### CHAP. II.

Of Genders.	- - - -	66
-------------	---------	----

### CHAP. III.

Of the formation of the Feminine Gender of Adjectives.		69
--	--	----

### CHAP. IV.

Of the formation of Plural of Nouns.	- - -	71
--------------------------------------	-------	----

	<i>Page</i>
<b>CHAP. V.</b>	
The declension of Nouns. . . . .	71
<b>CHAP. VI.</b>	
Of Pronouns. . . . .	75
SECT. I. Of Personal Pronouns. . . . .	75
SECT. II. Of Possessive Pronouns. . . . .	77
SECT. III. Of Demonstrative Pronouns. . . . .	78
SECT. IV. Of Relative Pronouns. . . . .	79
SECT. V. Of Interrogative Pronouns. . . . .	79
SECT. VI. Of Indefinite Pronouns. . . . .	80
<b>CHAP. VII.</b>	
Of Verbs. . . . .	81
Preliminary Observations. . . . .	81
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verbs. . . . .	83
Conjugation of the Regular Verbs. . . . .	85
Termination of the Primitive Tenses of the regular Verbs. . . . .	86
Conjugation of the irregular Verbs, alphabetically. . . . .	96
Particular Observations upon some Verbs, chiefly defective, and their Manner of being conjugated and used, in alphabetical order. . . . .	148

## PART III.

### CHAP. I.

THE Theory joined to Practice. . . . .	153
Rules and Observations upon Articles. . . . .	153
Rules and Observations upon Articles exemplified for the Scholar's Practice. . . . .	156

### CHAP. II.

Rules and Observations upon Nouns. . . . .	164
Rules and Observations upon Nouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice. . . . .	166

### CHAP. III.

Rules and Observations upon Pronouns. . . . .	171
SECT. I. Personal Pronouns. . . . .	171
Personal Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice. . . . .	176
SECT. II. Possessive Pronouns. . . . .	181
Possessive Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice. . . . .	183

<b>SECT. III.</b>	<b>Demonstrative Pronouns.</b>	-	-	-	<b>Page</b>
	Demonstrative Pronouns exemplified for the				187
	Scholar's Practice.	-	-	-	188
<b>SECT. IV.</b>	<b>Relative Pronouns.</b>	-	-	-	191
	Relative Pronouns exemplified for the Schol-				
	lar's Practice.	-	-	-	193
<b>SECT. V.</b>	<b>Interrogative Pronouns.</b>	-	-	-	196
	Interrogative Pronouns exemplified for the				
	Scholar's Practice.	-	-	-	196
<b>SECT. VI.</b>	<b>Indefinite or Indeterminate Pronouns.</b>	-	-	-	199
	Indeterminate Pronouns exemplified for the				
	Scholar's Practice.	-	-	-	204
<b>SECT. VII.</b>	<b>The supplying Pronouns, le, en, y.</b>	-	-	-	213
	Supplying Pronouns exemplified for the Schol-				
	lar's Practice.	-	-	-	214

CHAP. IV.

<b>Rules and Observations upon the Degrees of Compari-</b>					
<b>son.</b>	-	-	-	-	217
<b>The Degrees of Comparison exemplified for the Schol-</b>					
<b>lar's Practice.</b>	-	-	-	-	221

CHAP. V.

<b>Rules and Observations upon Verbs.</b>	-	-	-	-	226
<b>SECT. I.</b>	<b>The Use of Tenses.</b>	-	-	-	228
	The Tenses of Verbs exemplified for the				
	Scholar's Practice.	-	-	-	230
<b>SECT. II.</b>	<b>The Use of the Subjunctive mood.</b>	-	-	-	235
	The Subjunctive Mood exemplified for the				
	Scholar's Practice.	-	-	-	238
<b>SECT. III.</b>	<b>The Government of Verbs.</b>	-	-	-	244
	The Government of Verbs exemplified for the				
	Scholar's Practice.	-	-	-	247

CHAP. VI.

<b>Rules and Observations upon Impersonal Verbs.</b>	-	-	-	-	254
<b>Rules and Observations upon Impersonal Verbs exempli-</b>					
<b>fied for the Scholar's Practice.</b>	-	-	-	-	256

CHAP. VII.

<b>Rules and Observations upon the Participles.</b>	-	-	-	-	259
<b>SECT. I.</b>	<b>The active or present Participle.</b>	-	-	-	259
<b>SECT. II.</b>	<b>The Participle passive or past.</b>	-	-	-	261
	Rules and Observations upon Participles, exem-				
	plified for the Scholar's Practice.	-	-	-	264

CHAP. VIII.

<b>Rules and Observations upon Adverbs.</b>	-	-	-	-	265
---	---	---	---	---	-----



Rules and Observations upon Adverbs exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.	- - - - -	<i>Page</i> 271
---	-----------	--------------------

## CHAP. IX.

Rules and Observations upon Prepositions.	- - - - -	281
Remarks upon some Prepositions.	- - - - -	282
Further Remarks upon the Prepositions à and de.	- - - - -	286
Rules and Observations upon Prepositions exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.	- - - - -	287

## CHAP. X.

Observations upon the conjunctions si and que.	- - - - -	297
The Conjunction que exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.	- - - - -	299

---

 PART IV.

PRACTICAL Irregularities of the French Tongue alphabetically disposed, with the choice of Words and Phrases, warranted by the most approved Authors, and especially by the decisions of the FRENCH ACADEMY.	303
---	-----

# **A GRAMMAR**

## **OF THE**

# **FRENCH TONGUE.**

---

### **PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.**

IN every congregation of men, certain sounds have been agreed upon to express their wants, their sensations, and their opinions on things seen, felt, heard, or supposed to exist. Every language is either auricular or ocular; that is, that the communication of thought is made to the organ of sense either in writing to the eye, or in speaking to the ear. A person may learn a language ocularly, and auricularly not understand a word, i. e. he may read and write and be understood, and yet speak and not be understood at all. To speak or write accurately a language we must never use two words to express an idea when one will serve the same purpose. In the refinement of language, certain modes of expression have been adopted by each society of people separately, which can only be expressed mentally by another mode among another society. This difference of the mode of expression in the various modes of articulation agreed upon by the diverse sects of society, form what is generally termed the idioms of language; and were it not for these idioms, connected with the various modes of the terminology of inflected words, one general grammar would suffice. Every language is built upon the congregated sounds of the learned of those who speak it, and on that basis rests. To speak and write a language correctly, he who speaks and writes, must divest himself of all foreign idioms: that is, he must speak and write the language as the most fashionable of the natives do. Idiom belongs both to writing and speaking, to the ear and to the eye; but pronunciation belongs to the ear only. It is by this alone that the native can be distinguished from the foreigner; hence to learn the French accurately, we must begin with the pronunciation of the French Alphabet.

T. W.

*THE ALPHABET.*

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R,  
S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v,  
x, y, z.

*THE VOWELS,*

As they are pronounced in spelling.

a, é, i, o, u.

*Another Scale.*

a, e, é, è, i, o, u, ou.

The Scale of the vowels or simple sounds may be increased ; for there are in French several other simple sounds which are commonly represented by two letters as in *heureux*, *peureux*.

*THE CONSONANTS.*

b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.

The above characters may be pronounced according to the English way of spelling, or by annexing to them *any vowel*, either before or after.

## PART I.

## CHAPTER I.

## OF PRONUNCIATION.

IN order to give a just and exact idea of the pronunciation of a language, it is principally necessary to distinguish, as candidly as possible, all the different sounds used in the pronunciation, without any regard to the letters made use of to express those sounds; because a language, as FRENCH, ENGLISH, &c. may express different sounds by the same characters, and the same sounds by different characters.

The French simple Sounds in Nine Figures.

English words wherein the sounds are found.

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| (1) a, an            | what <i>anguish</i> .                                 |
| (2) e,               | answer, ale.  |
| (3) é,               | edict.  |
| (4) è or ê, en, ebb, | when, through the nose as if a <i>g</i> was after it. |
| (5) i, in,           | he, when as above.                                    |
| (6) o, on,           | no tongue.  |
| (7) u,               | curate, curiosity.                                    |
| (8) eu, un,          | this sound is quite wanting in English.               |
| (9) ou,              | to, do.   |

I am very sensible that the conformity of sounds in every English word, does not fully answer to the nicety of the French pronunciation, it being impossible to find such English words, as have strictly the same sound as in French; it may, however, be sufficient for our purpose to have shown, as exactly as possible, the affinity of the French and English sounds.

The simple sounds include the true French pronunciation. There is no child but will easily, and in a short time get it, if the master takes care to make him pronounce these simple sounds properly, and join the consonants with them; wherein consists the whole and only art of reading French.

The compound sounds will easily be formed by this practice, as,

From the ninth and fourth sounds, we have these, *moi, I* or *me*; *foi, faith\**; by adding an *r*, *noir, black*; *boire, to drink*.

From the ninth and fourth or fifth, these, *foin, hay*; *moins, less*; *point, not at all*.

From the sixth and *r*, or, *gold*; *fort, strong*; *bord, brim*; *port, harbour*.

From the ninth and *r*, *court, short*; *cour, a yard*.

From the eighth and *r*, *fleur, flower*; *beurre, butter*.

From the eighth and liquid *l*, *deuil, a mourning*; *feuille, a leaf*.

From the fourth and liquid *l*, *soleil, the sun*; *pareil, like*.

From the first and liquid *l*, *mail, a mail*; *éventail, a fan*.

The same may be said of all other combinations.

N.B. At all times, when a consonant follows the simple sound, the compound is stronger, and more open; as *fleur, beurre, or, port, &c.*

\* On such like occasions, the ninth and first are sounded so quickly, that it is not easy to distinguish them from the sixth and fourth sounds.

## CHAPTER II.

### THE SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

	Sounds.
<b>B</b> , has	2 b, bouquet, <i>a nosegay</i> . p, absolu, <i>absolute</i> .
<b>C</b> ,	3 k, coffre, <i>a trunk</i> . s, cierge, <i>a wax candle</i> . g, second, <i>second</i> .
<b>Ch</b> ,	2 sh, (English) chocolat, <i>chocolate</i> .
	k, écho, <i>echo</i> .
<b>D</b> ,	2 d, donner, <i>to give</i> . t, que vend-il? <i>what does he sell?</i>
<b>F</b> ,	2 f, vif, <i>quick</i> . v, neuf hommes, <i>nine men</i> .

	Sounds.
G,	3 g, gazon, turf.
	j, géant, <i>a giant</i> .
	k, Sarug, <i>a proper name</i> .
H, aspirated,	héros, <i>an hero</i> .
not aspirated,	héroïne, <i>an heroine</i> .
L, liquid,	fille, <i>a girl</i> .
not liquid,	fil, <i>thread</i> .
M,	2 m, mon, <i>my</i> .
	n, nom, <i>a name</i> .
N, nasal,	chien, <i>a dog</i> .
not nasal,	bien aise, <i>very glad</i> .
P,	1 précepteur, <i>a preceptor</i> .
Q, is always followed by 1	
u, in the beginning of	
words, and sounded like	k, quatre, <i>four</i> .
R,	1 miroir, <i>a looking-glass</i> .
S,	2 s, sage, <i>wise</i> .
	z, rose, <i>a rose</i> .
T,	2 t, amitié, <i>friendship</i> .
	s, patience, <i>patience</i> .
V,	1 vertu, <i>virtue</i> .
X,	4 ks, sexe, <i>sex</i> .
	gz, exemple, <i>an example</i> .
	ss, soixante, <i>sixty</i> .
	z, dixième, <i>the tenth, or dix,</i>
	<i>ten followed by a vowel</i> .

All these sounds are exemplified by some more words ranged in their respective classes, in my PRACTICE OF THE FRENCH PRONUNCIATION, ALPHABETICALLY EXHIBITED, where you may find words, wherein such letters are either pronounced or not.

### CHAPTER III.

An Alphabetical List of many of the French Adjectives each agreeing in Gender and Number with a different Substantive to make them understood.

Oss. Those Adjectives marked thus, †, go generally before their Substantives.

Adjectives.	Gender of Substantives.
<b>ABJECTE,</b>	F condition, <i>an abject condition.</i>
abominable,	M crime; <i>an abominable crime.</i>
Abusive,	F coutume, <i>an abusive custom.</i>
académique,	M exercice, <i>an academical exercise.</i>
acariâtre,	F humeur, <i>a humoursome temper.</i>
admirable,	F invention, <i>a wonderful invention.</i>
adverse,	F partie, <i>an adverse party.</i>
affable,	F demoiselle, <i>an affable lady.</i>
affairé,	M homme, <i>a busy man.</i>
affectées,	F manières, <i>affected manners.</i>
affirmatif,	M ton, <i>an affirmative tone.</i>
âgée,	F veuve, <i>an elderly widow.</i>
agréable,	F surprise, <i>an agreeable surprise.</i>
agreste, †	M fruit, <i>wild fruit.</i>
aigrette,	F sauce, <i>a sourish sauce.</i>
aimable,	F fille, <i>a lovely girl.</i>
aisé,	M ouvrage, <i>an easy work.</i>
alimentaire,	F pension, <i>an alimony.</i>
alizés,	M vents, <i>trade winds.</i>
alphabétique,	F liste, <i>alphabetical list.</i>
altier,	M homme, <i>a proud man.</i>
ambiguë,	F parole, <i>an ambiguous word.</i>
ambitieux,	M projet, <i>an ambitious project.</i>
amère,	F boisson, <i>a bitter drink.</i>
amortissable,	F rente, <i>a redeemable rent.</i>
amoureuse,	F fille, <i>an amorous girl.</i>
amphibologique,	F expression, <i>an ambiguous expression.</i>
anatomique,	F dissection, <i>an anatomical dissection.</i>
ancien,	M ami, <i>an ancient friend.</i>
Anglicane,	F église, <i>the church of England.</i>
animales,	F facultés, <i>the sensitive faculties.</i>
annuelle,	F pension, <i>a yearly pension.</i>
anodins,	M remèdes; <i>anodyne remedies.</i>
anonyme,	M livre, <i>an anonymous book.</i>
anséatique,	F ville, <i>a hause town.</i>
antique,	M château, <i>an antique castle.</i>
appétissante,	F viande, <i>relishing meat.</i>
âpre,	M fruit, <i>harsh fruit.</i>
aquilin,	M nez, <i>a hawked nose.</i>

## Adjectives.

arbitraire,  
argentine,  
ardent,  
argilleuse,  
aromatique,  
atrabilaire,  
artificieux,  
Attique,  
avantageux,  
aveugle,  
auriculaire,  
austère,  
authentique,  
auxiliaire,

Bacchique,  
badine,  
bai,  
barbare,  
basse,  
beau,  
bègue,  
belliqueuse,  
bienséante,  
bilieux,  
bissextile,  
bitumineuse,  
bizarre,  
blanche,  
bleu,  
blonds,  
boiteux,  
bon,  
borgne,  
bossu,  
botanique,  
bourbeux,  
bourru,  
brave,  
brillant,  
brûlant,

## Gender of

## Substantives.

M pouvoir, *an arbitrary power.*  
F voix, *a clear voice.*  
M charbon, *a burning coal.*  
F terre, *clayey ground.*  
F herbe, *an aromatic herb.*  
M tempérament, *an atrabiliary temper.*  
M détour, *an artful evasion.*  
M sel, *polite, genteel raillery.*  
M poste, *an advantageous post.*  
M cheval, *a blind horse.*  
M témoin, *an ear witness.*  
F mine, *an austere mien.*  
F loi, *an authentic law.*  
M verbe, *a helping Verb.*

F chanson, *a drinking catch.*  
F humeur, *a wanton humour.*  
M cheval, *a bay horse.*  
F action, *a barbarous action.*  
F chambre, *a ground room.*  
M tapis, *a fine carpet.*  
M enfant, *a stammering child.*  
F nation, *a warlike nation.*  
F parole, *a decent word.*  
M tempérament, *a bilious temper.*  
F année, *the leap year.*  
F matière, *bituminous matter.*  
M esprit, *a whimsical mind.*  
F chemise, *a clean shirt.*  
M ruban, *a blue ribbon.*  
M cheveux, *fair hair.*  
M cheval, *a lame horse.*  
M vin, *good wine.*  
F femme, *a one-eyed woman.*  
M homme, *a crooked backed man.*  
M jardin, *a botanical garden.*  
M passage, *a muddy passage.*  
M air, *a cross air.*  
M soldat, *a brave soldier.*  
M esprit, *a shining wit.*  
M soleil, *a burning sun.*



## A GRAMMAR OF THE

Adjectives.	Gender of	Substantives.
brune,	F	couleur, <i>a brown colour.</i>
brute,	F	pierre, <i>an unhewn stone.</i>
bruyante,	F	compagnie, <i>a bustling company.</i>
burlesque,	F	poésie, <i>burlesque poetry.</i>
Calamiteux,	M	temps, <i>a calamitous time.</i>
calleuse,	F	peau, <i>a callous skin.</i>
calomnieux,	M	rapport, <i>a slanderous report.</i>
candi,	M	sucre, <i>sugar candy.</i>
capable,	M	maître, <i>an able master.</i>
capricieuse,	F	femme, <i>a capricious woman.</i>
captieux,	M	discours, <i>a captious discourse.</i>
casuelle,	F	entreprise, <i>a casual undertaking.</i>
catégorique,	M	réponse, <i>a categorical answer.</i>
catholique,	F	église, <i>the catholic church.</i>
cavalières,	F	manières, <i>blunt manners.</i>
caverneuse,	F	montagne, <i>a hollow mountain.</i>
caustique,	M	emplâtre, <i>a burning plaster.</i>
célèbre,	M	auteur, <i>a famous author.</i>
céleste,	M	bleu, <i>sky-colour.</i>
charitable,	M	ministre, <i>a charitable minister.</i>
chatouilleux,	M	homme, <i>a ticklish man.</i>
chaud,	M	temps, <i>a hot weather.</i>
chaude,	F	main, <i>a warm hand.</i>
chauve,	F	tête, <i>a bald head.</i>
chère,	F	sœur, <i>dear sister.</i>
cher,	M	chapeau, <i>a dear hat.</i>
chimérique,	M	projet, <i>a chimerical project.</i>
chirurgicale,	F	opération, <i>a surgical operation.</i>
circonspecte,	F	conduite, <i>a wary behaviour.</i>
circulaire,	F	lettre, <i>a circular letter.</i>
clair,	M	jour, <i>a clear day.</i>
colossale,	F	statue, <i>a colossean statue.</i>
combustible,	F	matière, <i>a combustible matter.</i>
commode,	F	maison, <i>a convenient house.</i>
commun,	M	prix, <i>a common price.</i>
compacte,	M	corps, <i>a compact body.</i>
complet,	M	traité, <i>a complete treatise.</i>
confuse,	F	idée, <i>a confused idea.</i>
conjecturale,	F	connoissance, <i>a conjectural knowledge.</i>
conjugale,	F	fidélité, <i>conjugal fidelity.</i>
conscientieux,	M	négociant, <i>a conscientious merchant.</i>

Adjectives.	Gender of	Substantives.
considérable,	M	bien, <i>a considerable estate.</i>
constant,	M	ami, <i>a constant friend.</i>
contagieuse,	F	maladie, <i>a contagious sickness.</i>
comptant,	M	argent, <i>ready money.</i>
continuel,	M	bruit, <i>a continual noise.</i>
contraire,	F	résolution, <i>a contrary resolution.</i>
contradictoire,	F	nouvelle, <i>contradictory news.</i>
convenable,	M	logement, <i>a convenient lodging.</i>
cordiale,	F	liqueur, <i>a cordial liquor.</i>
corporelle,	F	punition, <i>a corporeal punishment.</i>
correct,	M	ouvrage, <i>a correct work.</i>
cruel,	M	tourment, <i>a cruel torment.</i>
curieux,	M	tableau, <i>a curious picture.</i>
Dangereux,	M	passage, <i>a dangerous passage.</i>
décent,	M	habillement, <i>a decent dress.</i>
décisive,	F	sentence, <i>a decisive sentence.</i>
délicate,	F	viande, <i>dainty meat.</i>
délicieuse,	F	poire, <i>a delicious pear.</i>
démonstrative,	F	preuve, <i>a demonstrative proof.</i>
déraisonnable,	F	demande, <i>an unreasonable petition.</i>
†dernière,	F	place, <i>the last place.</i> [tion.
désagréable,	F	conversation, <i>an unpleasant conversa-</i>
désastreux,	M	jour, <i>an ill fated day.</i>
desadvanta-	F	situation, <i>a disadvantageous situation.</i>
geuse,		
deshonnête,	F	parole, <i>a dishonest word.</i>
désirable,	M	bien, <i>a desirable blessing.</i>
despotique,	M	pouvoir, <i>despotical power.</i>
dévote,	F	femme, <i>a devout woman.</i>
diffamatoire,	M	libelle, <i>a defamatory libel.</i>
difficile,	F	langue, <i>a difficult tongue.</i>
†digne,	M	magistrat, <i>a worthy magistrate.</i>
diligent,	M	écolier, <i>a diligent scholar.</i>
discret,	M	ami, <i>a discreet friend.</i>
disgracieux,	M	état, <i>a disagreeable situation.</i>
dispendieuse,	F	guerre, <i>an expensive war.</i>
distinctive,	F	marque, <i>a distinctive mark.</i>
docte,	M	professeur, <i>a learned professor.</i>
dogmatique,	M	style, <i>a dogmatical style.</i>
dominicale,	F	oraison, <i>the Lord's prayer.</i>

Adjectives.	Gender of	Substantives.
douloureuse,	F	condition, <i>a grievous condition.</i>
douce,	F	odeur, <i>a sweet smelling odour.</i>
droite,	F	main, <i>the right hand.</i>
dure,	F	pierre, <i>a hard stone.</i>
durable,	F	prosperité, <i>lasting prosperity.</i>
Ecclésiastique,	F	dignité, <i>an ecclesiastical dignity.</i>
économe,	M	mari, <i>a saving husband.</i>
effectif,	M	héritage, <i>a real estate.</i>
efficace,	M	moyen, <i>efficacious means.</i>
efficiente,	M	cause, <i>efficient cause.</i>
effroyable,	M	incendie, <i>a frightful conflagration.</i>
élastique,	M	corps, <i>an elastic body.</i>
élégant,	M	compliment, <i>an elegant compliment.</i>
emblématique,	F	figure, <i>an emblematical figure.</i>
émollient,	M	remède, <i>a softening remedy.</i>
emphytéotique,	M	bail, <i>leasehold for ninety-nine years.</i>
empirique,	M	médecin, <i>a quack doctor.</i>
énergique,	F	demande, <i>an energetical position.</i>
enfantin,	M	discours, <i>a childish discourse.</i>
énigmatique,	F	proposition, <i>an enigmatical proposition.</i>
entière,	F	semaine, <i>a whole week.</i>
envieux,	M	artisan, <i>an envious tradesman.</i>
épais,	M	nuage, <i>a thick cloud.</i>
épidémique,	F	maladie, <i>an epidemical distemper.</i>
épineux,	M	procès, <i>a crabbed law-suit.</i>
épique,	M	poème, <i>an epic poem.</i>
épiscopal,	M	palais, <i>a bishop's palace.</i>
épistolaire,	M	style, <i>epistolary style.</i>
exclusif,	M	droit, <i>an exclusive right.</i>
expéditif,	M	commis, <i>an expeditious clerk.</i>
expert,	M	médecin, <i>an expert physician.</i>
expressif,	M	mot, <i>an expressive word.</i>
exquis,	M	mets, <i>a dainty mess.</i>
extérieure,	M	partie, <i>the exterior part.</i>
extraordinaire,	M	événement, <i>an extraordinary event.</i>
extrême,	F	différence, <i>a very great difference.</i>
<i>Fabuleuse,</i>	F	histoire, <i>a fabulous story.</i>
<i>facile,</i>	F	langue, <i>an easy tongue.</i>
<i>fantastique,</i>	M	projet, <i>a fantastical project.</i>

Adjectives.	Gender of	Substantives.
farineuse,	F	dartre, <i>a white tetter.</i>
fastidieuse,	F	société, <i>a fastidious society.</i>
fatal,	M	moment, <i>a fatal moment.</i>
favorable,	F	occasion, <i>a favourable occasion.</i>
favori,	M	plaisir, <i>a darling pleasure.</i>
fausse,	F	nouvelle, <i>false news.</i>
ferme,	M	pilier, <i>a firm pillar.</i>
féroce,	F	bête, <i>a fierce beast.</i>
fertile,	F	province, <i>a fertile province.</i>
fidèle,	M	amant, <i>a faithful lover.</i>
fier,	M	homme, <i>a haughty man.</i>
figuratif,	M	sens, <i>a figurative sense.</i>
fine,	F	éttoffe, <i>fine stuff.</i>
fixe,	M	prix, <i>a set price.</i>
flasques,	F	joues, <i>flabby cheeks.</i>
flatteur,	M	courtisan, <i>a fawning courtier.</i>
faible,	F	santé, <i>feeble health.</i>
fortuit,	M	cas, <i>a mere chance.</i>
frais,	M	air, <i>a cool air.</i>
franc,	M	arbitre, <i>free will.</i>
Française,	F	mode, <i>a French fashion.</i>
frauduleux,	M	commerce, <i>a fraudulent trade.</i>
friand,	M	pâté, <i>a dainty pye.</i>
froid,	M	temps, <i>cold weather.</i>
frugale,	F	vie, <i>frugal life.</i>
frivole,	M	conte, <i>a frivolous story.</i>
fruitier,	M	arbre, <i>a fruit tree.</i>
funèbre,	F	oraison, <i>funeral sermon.</i>
funeste,	F	aventure, <i>a fatal adventure.</i>
Galantes,	F	manières, <i>genteel manners.</i>
gauche,	F	main, <i>the left hand.</i>
généreux,	M	maître, <i>a generous master.</i>
géographique,	F	carte, <i>a map.</i>
géométrique,	F	démonstration, <i>a geometrical demonstration.</i>
glorieuse,	F	entreprise, <i>a glorious undertaking.</i>
Gothique,	F	lettre, <i>black letter.</i>
gracieux,	M	compliment, <i>a gracious compliment.</i>
grammaticale,	F	régle, <i>a grammatical rule.</i>
grand,	M	verger, <i>a great orchard.</i>

Adjectives.	Gender of	Substantives.
gras,	M	jambon, <i>a fat ham.</i>
grave,	F	démarche, <i>a grave gait.</i>
grenu,	M	épi, <i>a full ear of corn.</i>
gros,	M	paquet, <i>a large bundle.</i>
grotesques,	F	figures, <i>grotesque figures.</i>
guéable,	F	rivière, <i>a fordable river.</i>
guerrier,	M	peuple, <i>warlike people.</i>
gutturale,	F	lettre, <i>a guttural letter.</i>
‡Habile,	M	ouvrier, <i>an able workman.</i>
habituel,	M	vice, <i>an habitual vice.</i>
hagards,	M	yeux, <i>fierce eyes.</i>
haïssable,	M	objet, <i>an hateful object.</i>
hardie,	F	entreprise, <i>a bold undertaking.</i>
harmonieuse,	F	période, <i>an harmonious period.</i>
‡haute,	F	montagne, <i>a high mountain.</i>
héroïque,	F	action, <i>an heroical action.</i>
honorifique,	M	titre, <i>an honourable title.</i>
humide,	M	linge, <i>wet linen.</i>
hypocrite,	F	mine, <i>an hypocritical mien.</i>
Illégitime,	M	pouvoir, <i>an illegal power.</i>
illicite,	M	contrat, <i>an illicit convention.</i>
illustre,	F	famille, <i>an illustrious family.</i>
imaginaire,	M	bonheur, <i>fantastical happiness.</i>
immémorial,	M	temps, <i>immemorial time.</i>
immodérée,	M	passion, <i>an immoderate passion.</i>
immodeste,	M	posture, <i>an immodest posture.</i>
impardonable,	M	faute, <i>an unpardonable fault.</i>
imparfait,	M	ouvrage, <i>an imperfect work.</i>
impénétrable,	M	secret, <i>an impenetrable secret.</i>
imprenable,	M	ville, <i>an impregnable city.</i>
impraticable,	M	chemin, <i>an impracticable road.</i>
impropre,	M	terme, <i>an improper term.</i>
imprudent,	M	avis, <i>an imprudent advice.</i>
impudente,	F	conversation, <i>a shameful conversation.</i>
inaccessible,	F	montagne, <i>an inaccessible mountain.</i>
incomparable,	F	beauté, <i>an incomparable beauty.</i>
inconstant,	F	amour, <i>inconstant love.</i>
incontestable,	F	vérité, <i>incontestable truth.</i>
incorrigible,	M	garçon, <i>an incorrigible lad.</i>

Adjectives.	Gender of	Substantives.
incroyable,	F	nouvelle, <i>incredible news.</i>
incurable,	F	maladie, <i>an incurable sickness.</i>
indigent,	M	auteur, <i>an indigent author.</i>
indigeste,	M	manger, <i>indigestible victuals.</i>
indisciplinable,	M	écolier, <i>an unruly scholar.</i>
indispensable,	M	devoir, <i>an indispensable duty.</i>
indubitable,	M	succès, <i>undoubted success.</i>
inépuisable,	F	source, <i>inexhaustible source.</i>
inévitabile,	M	nauffrage, <i>an unavoidable shipwreck.</i>
inféodée,	F	rente, <i>rent-charge.</i>
infinie,	F	obligation, <i>an infinite obligation.</i>
ingénieuse,	F	invention, <i>an ingenious invention.</i>
inhabitable,	F	maison, <i>an uninhabitable house.</i>
inhumaine,	F	dureté, <i>an inhuman hardness.</i>
inimitable,	M	sculpteur, <i>an inimitable carver. [tion.</i>
inintelligible,	F	proposition, <i>an unintelligible proposi-</i>
inique,	F	action, <i>a wicked action.</i>
injurieuse,	F	parole, <i>an injurious word.</i>
inquiet,	M	esprit, <i>an unquiet mind.</i>
insatiable,	M	appétit, <i>an insatiable appetite.</i>
insolvable,	M	débiteur, <i>an insolvent debtor.</i>
insoutenable,	F	opinion, <i>an unwarrantable opinion.</i>
intime,	M	ami, <i>an intimate friend.</i>
intrinsèque,	F	qualité, <i>an inward quality.</i>
invalidé,	F	convention, <i>an invalid convention.</i>
invariable,	F	amitié, <i>an unchangeable friendship.</i>
inventive,	F	imagination, <i>an inventive imagination.</i>
invincible,	M	courage, <i>an invincible courage.</i>
inviolable,	M	attachement, <i>an inviolable attachment.</i>
inutile,	M	travail, <i>a useless labour.</i>
irrévocable,	M	arrêt, <i>an irrevocable decree.</i>
isabelle,	M	cheval, <i>a yellow-dun horse.</i>
jeune,	F	beauté, <i>a young beauty.</i>
jolie,	F	demoiselle, <i>a handsome lady.</i>
joyeuse,	F	filles, <i>a joyful girl.</i>
Judaïque,	F	coutume, <i>a Jewish custom.</i>
judiciaire,	F	astrologie, <i>judicial astrology.</i>
judicieux,	M	philosophe, <i>a judicious philosopher.</i>
juridique,	F	conviction, <i>a juridical conviction.</i>
juste,	M	jugement, <i>a just judgment.</i>
justificative,	F	pièce, <i>a voucher.</i>

Adjectives.	Gender of	Substantives.
Laborieux,	M	jardinier, <i>a laborious gardener.</i>
labourable,	F	terre, <i>arable ground.</i>
laconique,	M	style, <i>a laconic style.</i>
flaïde,	F	figure, <i>an ugly face.</i>
lamentable,	M	cri, <i>a lamentable shriek.</i>
langoureuse,	F	situation, <i>a languishing situation.</i>
languissante,	F	santé, <i>weak health.</i>
large,	F	rue, <i>a broad street.</i>
lascif,	M	désir, <i>a lascivious desire.</i>
lent,	M	pas, <i>a slow step.</i>
licentieuse,	F	conduite, <i>a licentious conduct.</i>
licite,	F	vente, <i>a lawful sale.</i>
limitrophe,	M	pays, <i>a neighbouring country.</i>
liquide,	F	médecine, <i>liquid physic.</i>
littérale,	F	traduction, <i>a literal translation.</i>
litigieux,	M	droit, <i>a litigious right.</i>
livide,	M	teint, <i>a livid complexion.</i>
flong,	M	discours, <i>a long discourse.</i>
lourd,	M	paquet, <i>a heavy burden.</i>
lucratif,	M	métier, <i>a lucrative trade.</i>
lugubre,	M	spectacle, <i>a mournful spectacle.</i>
Lyrique,	F	poésie, <i>Lyric poetry.</i>
Magique,	M	art, <i>magic art.</i>
magnétique,	F	vertu, <i>magnetical virtue.</i>
majestueux,	M	port, <i>a majestic carriage.</i>
maigre,	M	mouton, <i>lean mutton.</i>
majuscule,	F	lettre, <i>a capital letter.</i>
malencontreux,	F	moment, <i>an ominous moment.</i>
malingré,	M	cheval, <i>a sickly horse.</i>
malicieuse,	F	femme, <i>a malicious woman.</i>
malpropres,	F	manchettes, <i>slovenly ruffles.</i>
malsaine,	F	saison, <i>an unwholesome season.</i>
manifeste,	F	vérité, <i>manifest truth.</i>
marchande,	F	ville, <i>a trading town.</i>
marécageux,	M	terrain, <i>a marshy ground.</i>
marin,	M	monstre, <i>a sea monster.</i>
maritimes,	F	puissances, <i>maritime powers.</i>
martiale,	F	intrépidité, <i>warlike intrepidity.</i>
massif,	M	or, <i>solid gold.</i>
matérielle,	F	substance, <i>a material substance.</i>

Adjectives.	Gender of	Substantives.
Maternelle,	F	tendresse, <i>a motherly tenderness.</i>
matrice,	F	église, <i>the mother church.</i>
mauvaise,	F	excuse, <i>a bad excuse.</i>
inéchanique,	F	art, <i>a mechanical art.</i>
méchante,	M	créature, <i>a wicked creature.</i>
médicinale,	F	potion, <i>a physical drink.</i>
mélancholique,	F	humeur, <i>a melancholy humour.</i>
mélodieuse,	F	voix, <i>a melodious voice.</i>
mémorable,	M	événement, <i>a memorable event.</i>
mesquine,	F	économie, <i>solid economy.</i>
méthodique,	M	discours, <i>methodical discourse.</i>
militaire,	F	academie, <i>a military academy.</i>
minérale,	F	eau, <i>mineral water.</i>
mobiliaire,	M	bien, <i>a personal estate.</i>
modeste,	F	filie, <i>a modest girl.</i>
modique,	M	prix, <i>a moderate price.</i>
moëlleux,	M	drap, <i>a soft substantial cloth.</i>
momentané,	M	plaisir, <i>a momentary pleasure.</i>
monotone,	F	voix, <i>a voice of one and the same sound.</i>
montagneux,	M	pays, <i>a hilly country.</i>
morne,	M	silence, <i>a sullen silence.</i>
mortelle,	F	fièvre, <i>a mortal fever.</i>
municipal,	M	droit, <i>common law.</i>
municipale,	F	ville, <i>a corporation town.</i>
mur,	M	raisin, <i>ripe grapes.</i>
musical,	M	air, <i>a musical tune.</i>
mutuel,	M	amour, <i>mutual love.</i>
mythologique,	M	dictionnaire, <i>a mythological dictionary.</i>
Natal,	M	air, <i>the native air.</i>
naturel,	M	penchant, <i>a natural inclination.</i>
naval,	M	combat, <i>a sea fight.</i>
navigable,	F	rivière, <i>a navigable river.</i>
nébuleux,	M	{ temps, <i>foggy</i> } weather.
neigeux,		{ <i>snowy</i> }
nécessaire,	F	condition, <i>a necessary condition.</i>
net,	M	verre, <i>a clean glass.</i>
neuve,	F	perruque, <i>a new wig.</i>
noire,	F	culotte, <i>black breeches.</i>
nonchalant,	M	domestique, <i>a careless servant.</i>
notoire,	M	vol, <i>a notorious robbery.</i>



Adjectives.	Gender of	Substantives.
†nouvelle,	F	mode, <i>a new fashion.</i>
†nus,	M	pieds, <i>bare feet.</i>
Oblique,	F	ligne, <i>an oblique line.</i>
obscène,	M	peinture, <i>an obscene picture.</i>
obstructif,	F	remède, <i>a stopping remedy.</i>
occulte,	F	qualité, <i>a hidden quality.</i>
oculaire,	M	témoin, <i>an eye witness.</i>
odoriférante,	F	fleur, <i>an odoriferous flower.</i>
odieuse,	F	comparaison, <i>an odious comparison.</i>
oisif,	M	écolier, <i>an idle scholar.</i>
Olympiques,	M	jeux, <i>the Olympic games.</i>
Olympien,	M	Jupiter, <i>Olympic Jove.</i>
onéreuse,	F	charge, <i>a burthensome employment.</i>
opiniâtre,	M	homme, <i>an obstinate man.</i>
opulente,	F	ville, <i>an opulent city.</i>
orageux,	M	vent, <i>an obstinate wind.</i>
orgueilleux,	M	mépris, <i>a proud scorn.</i>
originel,	M	péché, <i>original sin.</i>
outrageux,	M	soupçon, <i>an offensive suspicion.</i>
Paienne,	F	religion, <i>the Pagan religion.</i>
pair,	M	nombre, <i>an even number.</i>
pâle,	M	visage, <i>a pale face.</i>
pacifique,	M	roi, <i>a peaceable king.</i>
panique,	F	terreur, <i>a panic fear.</i>
pardonable,	F	méprise, <i>a pardonable mistake.</i>
paresseuse,	F	servante, <i>an idle maid.</i>
particulier,	M	soin, <i>a particular care.</i>
patentes,	F	lettres, <i>letters patent.</i>
paternel,	M	devoir, <i>fatherly duty.</i>
pathétique,	M	ton, <i>a pathetic tone.</i>
patrimonial,	M	bien, <i>a patrimonial estate.</i>
pattu,	M	pigeon, <i>a rough-footed pigeon.</i>
pédantes,	F	manières, <i>pedantic manners.</i>
pénale,	F	loi, <i>a penal law.</i>
pénates,	M	dieux, <i>household gods.</i>
pendable,	M	cas, <i>a hanging matter.</i>
pénible,	M	ouvrage, <i>a toilsome work.</i>
perceptible,	F	fausseté, <i>a perceptible untruth.</i>
péremptoire,	M	argument, <i>a peremptory proof.</i>

Adjectives.	Gender of	Substantives.
pernicieux,	M	jeu, <i>a pernicious game.</i>
perpétuel,	M	tourment, <i>a perpetual torment.</i>
personnelle,	F	faute, <i>a personal fault.</i>
pertinente,	F	réplique, <i>a pertinent reply.</i>
pesant,	M	paquet, <i>a heavy bundle.</i>
petit,	M	mouchoir, <i>a small handkerchief.</i>
philosophale,	F	pierre, <i>the philosopher's stone.</i>
philosophique,	F	question, <i>a philosophical question.</i>
pleine,	F	bouteille, <i>a full bottle.</i>
poétique,	M	style, <i>a poetical style.</i>
pointilleux,	M	critique, <i>a cavilling critic.</i>
poissonneux,	M	étang, <i>a fish-pond well stored.</i>
polie,	F	nation, <i>a polite nation.</i>
polyglotte,	F	bible, <i>a polyglot bible.</i>
pompeux,	M	équipage, <i>a pompous equipage.</i>
ponctuel,	M	homme, <i>a punctual man.</i>
poreux,	M	bois, <i>porous wood.</i>
posthume,	M	ouvrage, <i>a posthumous work.</i>
poudreux,	M	souliers, <i>dusty shoes.</i>
poussif,	M	cheval, <i>a short-winded horse.</i>
préalable,	F	convention, <i>a previous convention.</i>
précieuse,	F	pierre, <i>a precious stone,</i>
précis,	M	jour, <i>a precise day.</i>
précoces,	F	fruits, <i>hastings.</i>
préfixe,	F	heure, <i>a fixed hour.</i>
préliminaire,	F	observation, <i>a preliminary observation.</i>
prématuré,	M	esprit, <i>an untimely wit.</i>
présomptueuse,	F	jeunesse, <i>a presumptuous youth.</i>
principale,	F	étude, <i>a chief study.</i>
probable,	M	sentiment, <i>a probable opinion.</i> [tion.
problématique,	F	proposition, <i>a problematical proposi-</i>
prochain,	M	printemps, <i>next spring.</i>
prodigieux,	M	colosse, <i>a prodigious colossus.</i>
profond,	M	fossé, <i>a deep ditch.</i>
prolize,	M	discours, <i>a prolix discourse.</i>
prompte,	F	colère, <i>sudden anger.</i>
public,	M	affront, <i>public affront.</i>
puéril,	M	amusement, <i>childish amusement.</i>
pyramidale,	M	colonne, <i>a pyramidal column.</i>

Quadrangu-  
laire.

F place, *a four-square place.*

Adjectives.	Gender of	Substantives.
querelleuse,	F	femme, <i>a quarrelsome wife.</i>
quotidien,	M	pain, <i>daily bread.</i>
Raboteuse,	F	planche, <i>a rugged shelf.</i>
raisonnable,	F	demande, <i>a reasonable demand.</i>
rapide,	M	cours, <i>a rapid stream.</i>
rare,	M	oiseau, <i>an uncommon bird.</i>
rebelle,	M	sujet, <i>a rebellious subject.</i>
récente,	F	plaie, <i>a recent wound.</i>
réci-pro-que,	F	fidé-lité, <i>reciprocal fidelity.</i>
récréative,	F	lecture, <i>an entertaining lecture.</i>
redoutable,	F	mort, <i>a dreadful death.</i>
réelle,	F	perte, <i>a real loss.</i>
réformé,	M	officier, <i>a reformed officer.</i>
régulier,	M	plan, <i>a regular plan.</i>
remarquable,	F	enseigne, <i>a remarkable sign.</i>
ré-pré-hen-sible,	M	procé-dé, <i>a blameable proceeding.</i>
respectueuse,	F	ré-pon-se, <i>a respectful answer.</i>
riche,	F	robe, <i>a rich gown.</i>
ridicule,	M	habillement, <i>a ridiculous dress.</i>
rigoureuse,	F	peine, <i>a rigorous pain.</i>
royal,	M	palais, <i>a royal palace.</i>
rouge,	M	vin, <i>red wine.</i>
roux,	M	cheveux, <i>red hair.</i>
rubicond,	M	visage, <i>a ruddy face.</i>
rude,	M	hiver, <i>a hard winter.</i>
ruineuse,	F	dépense, <i>a ruinous expense.</i>
rustique,	F	vie, <i>country life.</i>
Sablonneuse,	F	terre, <i>sandy ground.</i>
sage,	F	conduite, <i>wise behaviour.</i>
sain,	M	fruit, <i>sound fruit.</i>
Salique,	F	loi, <i>the Salic law.</i>
sanguinaire,	M	con-qué-rant, <i>a blood-thirsty conqueror.</i>
satirique,	M	trait, <i>a satirical bolt.</i>
savant,	M	ou-vra-ge, <i>a learned work.</i>
sauvage,	M	canard, <i>a wild duck.</i>
scabreuse,	F	en-tre-pri-se, <i>a dangerous undertaking.</i>
sec,	M	lin-gé, <i>dry linen.</i>
scientifique,	F	pré-face, <i>a learned preface.</i>
scorbutique,	F	ma-la-die, <i>scorbutical sickness.</i>

Adjectives.	Gender of	Substantives.
secret,	M	art, <i>a secret art.</i>
séditieux,	M	écrit, <i>a seditious writing.</i>
sempiternelle,	F	vieille, <i>an old woman.</i>
sérieuse,	F	réprimande, <i>a serious reprimand.</i>
sévère,	M	ton, <i>a severe tone.</i>
similaire,	M	son, <i>a similar sound.</i>
sincère,	M	ami, <i>a sincere friend.</i>
sinistre,	M	présage, <i>an unlucky omen.</i>
soigneux,	M	jardinier, <i>a careful gardener.</i>
solide,	M	fondement, <i>a solid foundation.</i>
solitaire,	F	vie, <i>a retired life.</i>
solvable,	M	débiteur, <i>a solvent debtor.</i>
sombre,	F	matinée, <i>a dark morning.</i>
soluble,	M	problème, <i>a soluble problem.</i>
somptueux,	M	repas, <i>a sumptuous meal.</i>
îsot,	M	marché, <i>a silly bargain.</i>
spacieux,	M	jardin, <i>a spacious garden.</i>
spécieux,	M	prétexte, <i>a specious pretence.</i>
spiritueuse,	F	liqueur, <i>a spirituous liquor.</i>
splendide,	F	entrée, <i>a splendid entry.</i>
stérile,	M	arbre, <i>a barren tree.</i>
Stoïque,	F	insensibilité, <i>a stoical insensibility.</i>
studieux,	M	écolier, <i>a studious scholar.</i>
suave,	F	odeur, <i>a sweet smell.</i>
sublime,	M	style, <i>a sublime style.</i>
subreptice,	F	dispense, <i>a surreptitious dispensation.</i>
succincte	F	analyse, <i>a short analysis.</i>
suffisant,	M	témoignage, <i>a sufficient character.</i>
superbe,	M	batiment, <i>a magnificent building.</i>
superstitieuse,	F	pratique, <i>a superstitious practice.</i>
suraturel,	M	signe, <i>a supernatural sign.</i>
suspect,	M	dessein, <i>a suspected design.</i>
 Tacite,	M	consentement, <i>a tacit consent.</i>
tardifs,	M	raisins, <i>tardy grapes.</i>
téméraire,	M	combat, <i>a rash combat.</i>
tendre,	M	poulet, <i>a tender chicken.</i>
terrible,	F	épouvante, <i>a terrible fright.</i>
tiède,	M	thé, <i>a lukewarm tea.</i>
timide,	M	lièvre, <i>a fearful hare.</i>
tolérable,	M	mal, <i>a tolerable evil.</i>

Adjectives.	Gender of	Substantives.
tortueux,	M	ruisseau, <i>a winding rivulet.</i>
tauffue,	F	haie, <i>a bushy hedge.</i>
triennal,	M	bail, <i>a triennial lease.</i>
triomphal,	M	arc, <i>a triumphal arch.</i>
triste,	M	souvenir, <i>a sad remembrance.</i>
tumultueuse,	F	compagnie, <i>a tumultuous company.</i>
turbulente,	F	république, <i>a turbulent republic.</i>
Turque,	F	religion, <i>the Turkish religion.</i>
tyrannique,	M	pouvoir, <i>tyrannical power.</i>
Ultérieur,	M	examen, <i>a further examination.</i>
unanime,	M	consentement, <i>an unanimous consent.</i>
uniforme,	M	rapport, <i>an uniform report.</i>
unique,	M	fil, <i>an only son.</i>
universelle,	F	connaissance, <i>universal knowledge.</i>
urgente,	F	nécessité, <i>a pressing necessity.</i>
utile,	F	découverte, <i>an useful discovery.</i>
Vague,	F	signification, <i>a vague signification.</i>
vaillant,	M	général, <i>a valiant general.</i>
vaine,	F	pensée, <i>a vain thought.</i>
valide,	M	contrat, <i>a valid contract.</i>
variable,	M	temps, <i>variable weather.</i>
vaste,	F	prairie, <i>a vast meadow.</i>
vénimeuse,	F	araignée, <i>a venomous spider.</i>
verd,	M	tapis, <i>a green carpet.</i>
véreuse,	F	pomme, <i>a maggoty apple.</i>
véridique,	M	gazettier, <i>a true gazetteer.</i>
vertueuse,	F	femme, <i>a virtuous woman.</i>
viagère,	F	pension, <i>an annuity.</i>
victorieuse,	F	armée, <i>a victorious army.</i>
vieux,	M	pont, <i>an old bridge.</i>
vigoureuse,	F	défense, <i>a vigourous defence.</i>
visible,	F	éclipse, <i>a visible eclipse.</i>
vocale,	F	musique, <i>vocal music.</i>
volage,	F	jeunesse, <i>fickle youth.</i>
volontaire,	M	meurtre, <i>a wilful murder.</i>
vraie,	F	nouvelle, <i>true news.</i>
vide,	M	pot, <i>an empty pot.</i>
vulgaire,	F	opinion, <i>a vulgar opinion.</i>
Zélé,	M	predicateur, <i>a zealous preacher.</i>

## CHAPTER IV.

A LIST of Adjectives, with the manner of their being placed before or after their Substantives, and their signification in either case.

- Juste prix, *a reasonable rate.* homme juste, *a just man.*  
 juste défense, *a just defence.* action juste, *a just action.*  
 à bas prix, *at a low rate.* action basse, *a mean action.*  
 le bas ventre, *the lower part of the belly.* les Pays-bas,\* *the low countries.*  
 une mûre délibération, *a mature deliberation.* du fruit mûr, *ripe fruit.*  
 maigre chère, *poor fare.* viande maigre, *lean meat.*  
 vive douleur, *a smart pain.* esprit vif, *a lively wit.*  
 bon homme, *a man who means no harm, or a simple man.* homme bon, *a good natured man.*  
 pauvre homme, *a sorry fellow.* homme pauvre, *a poor man.*  
 grand homme, *a great man.* homme grand, *a tall man.*  
 certaine nouvelle, *a certain piece of news.* nouvelle certaine, *truc, or certain news.*  
 sage-femme, *a midwife.* femme sage, *a sober woman.*  
 grosse femme, *a large woman.* femme grosse, *a woman big with child.*  
 galant homme, *a complete gentleman.* homme galant, *a man com- plaisant to the ladies.*  
 le grand monde, *the great folks.* air grand, *a noble aspect.*  
 plaisant homme, *an impertinent fellow.* homme plaisant, *a pleasant man.*  
 vilain homme, *a disagreeable man.* homme vilain, *a niggardly fellow.*  
 furieux animal, *a large creature.* animal furieux, *a fierce creature.*  
 mort-bois, *wood of no value.* bois mort, *dead trees.*  
 morte-eau, *the water at the bottom of the sea.* eau morte, *standing water.*

\* In other cases, speaking of countries, the adjective goes before, as *le bas Languedoc, la basse Normandie, la basse Saxe, la haute Saxe, la basse Autriche; le bas Rhin, le haut Rhin, &c.*

- endroit ligne, *straight along*. ligne droite, *a straight line*.  
 franc coquin, *a very rogue*. homme franc, *an honest downright man*.  
 franc-salé, *an allowance of salt*. arbre franc, *an ungrafted or real tree*.  
 franche-vérité, *naked truth*. marchandise franche, *free merchandise*.  
 franc-tillac, *the lowermost deck*. bourgeois franc, *a free citizen*.  
 basse cour, *an inner yard*. voix basse, *a low voice*.  
 basse-fosse, *a dungeon*. rivière basse, *a shallow river*.  
 le bas bord, *the larboard of a ship*. faire main basse, *to put all to the sword*.  
 les basses voiles, *the main, and mizzen sails*. cœur bas, *a base soul*.  
 le bas peuple, *the mob*. avoir la vue basse, *to be short sighted*.  
 les basses cartes, *the small cards*. esprit bas, *a mean wit*.  
 cher ami, *dear friend*. habit cher, *a dear suit*.  
 clairs deniers, *clear or spare money*. du linon clair, *clear lawn*.  
 un doux zéphir, *a gentle gale*. un billet doux, *a love letter*.  
 dure mère, *dura mater*. viande dure, *tough meat*.  
 faux frais, *extraordinary expenses*. cheval faux, *a stumbling horse*.  
 fin matois, *a sly cunning man*. diamant fin, *a right diamond*.  
 fol espoir, *a foolish hope*. peintre fou, *a mad painter*.  
 fol amour, *Cupid*. poète fou, *a mad poet*.  
 le haut bout, *the upper end*. la chambre haute, *the upper house*.  
 menus plaisirs, *pocket money*. jambes menues, *small, slender legs*.  
 molle condescendance, *a dull compliance*. vie molle, *an easy life*.  
 les pâles couleurs, *the green sickness*. visage pâle, *pale face*.  
 rouge bord, *a bumper*. des yeux rouges, *blood-shot eyes*.  
 rouge-gorge, *a robin red-breast*. couleur rouge, *red colour*.  
 rase campagne, *an open field*. velours ras, *shorn velvet*.

saine doctrine, *true doctrine.* temps sain, *wholesome weather.*

la saine raison, *sound reason.* jugement sain, *sound judgment.*

de vains efforts, *vain endeavours.* peine vaine, *unprofitable trouble.*

faible raison, *a weak reason.* l'âge faible, *infancy.*

vaine gloire, *vain glory.* homme vain, *a vainglorious man.*

un vif ressentiment, *a lively sentiment.* des yeux vifs, *sparkling eyes.*

double bière, *strong beer.* acte double, *duplicate of a writing.*

vive douleur, *a smart pain.* cheval vif, *a mettlesome horse.*

vif-argent, *quicksilver.* couleur vive, *a lively colour.*

de vive voix, *by word of mouth.* teint vif, *a lively complexion.*

ferme résolution, *firm resolution.* muraille ferme, *a firm wall.*

de vastes desseins, *great designs.* un esprit vaste, *a great genius.*

vieille mode, *an old fashion.* vin vieux, *old wine.*

le verte jeunesse, *youthful days.* bois vert; *green wood.*

une vere réponse, *a sharp answer.* fruit vert, *unripe fruit.*

une verte réprimande, *a sharp reprimand.* pois verts, *green peas.*

âpre combat, *a cruel combat.* un esprit âpre, *an austere man.*

un vert galant, *a brisk galant.* une tête verte, *a hair-brained fellow.*

la tendre jeunesse, *tender youth.* l'âge tendre, *tender age.*

maigre repas, *pitiful cheer.* terroir maigre, *a barren soil.*

maigre auteur, *a pitiful author.* style maigre, *a poor style.*

froide mine, *cold look.*

ample pouvoir, *full power.* viande froide, *cold meat.*

discours ample, *a diffuse discourse.*

à plus forte raison, *how much* raison forte, *a strong reason.*



## CHAPTER V.

*Of the notes and points made use of in writing French.*

THE several marks used in writing French are the following :

A comma, *une virgule*, (,) divides the lesser part of a sentence, and stops the reader's voice till he can count one.

A semicolon, *une virgule* and *un point*, (;) divides the greater part of a sentence, at which the reader must stop till he can count two.

A colon, *deux points*, (:) marks the half of a sentence, at which the reader must stop till he can count *three*.—Semicolons and colons are sometimes used promiscuously.

A period or full point, *un point*, (.) is used when the sentence is fully ended, and requires a pause till he can count *four*.

A note of interrogation, *un signe d'interrogation*, (?) is used in asking a question.

A note of admiration, *un signe d'admiration*, (!) is used when we admire, wish, or wonder ; it serves also to express some violent passion.

\* An apostrophe, *un apostrophe*, (') set over the place where some letter is left out ; as *l'amour*, instead of *le amour*, *love*.

A hyphen, *un tiret*, or *un trait d'union*, (-) joins words or syllables together ; as *parla-t-il*, *did he speak?* *parle-t-elle*, *does she speak?*

A cedilla, *une cédille*, (ç) is placed under c, when it is pronounced like s, before a, o, or u.

A parenthesis, *une parenthèse*, ( ) includes something not necessary to the sense, but brought in to explain or illustrate it, and is very seldom used.

A diæresis, *un tréma*, (¨) parts two vowels coming together, and signifies their making two syllables, as *Saül* était roi d'Israël ; *Saul was king of Israel*.

\* These three vowels, a, e, i, when the following words begin with a vowel or an h not aspirated, are left out in French in the following words :

*Le, la, je, me, te, se, de, ce, ne, que; l', j', m', t', s', d', c', u', qu', puisqu', &c.*

There are several other notes made use of by authors and printers ; but it would be needless to trouble the learner here with any.

Oss. I. *Le, la, ce*, suffer no elision before *enxe, onzième, oui* ; neither in the imperative mood, as *laissez-le, aller, let him go* : except when followed immediately by *en* or *y*, as *laissez l'y aller, let him go thither*.

Oss. II. *Si* suffers an elision only before *il* or *ils*.

Oss. III. *Là, there, and qui, who*, are never contracted.

Oss. IV. *e* in *grande* is contracted in some words beginning with a consonant, as, *grand'mère, grandmother, à grand'peine, with much ado, &c.*

## CHAPTER VI.

### *Of Accents made use of in writing French.*

AN accent is a note put over a vowel, at the end of a syllable or word, to denote its sound, quantity, nature, or signification.

An accent is either acute, *aigu*, (´) ; grave, *grave*, (˘) ; or circumflex, *circonflexe*, (ˆ).

The first is placed upon *e*, when it has a slender sound ; as in *été, the summer* ; except in the words of the second person plural, because *e* is joined with *z*, as *vous aimez, ye love*.

The second accent is sometimes put upon *e*, when it has an open sound ; as in *salière, salt-celler* ; in some monosyllables, ending with an *s*, *près, near* ; *très, very, most, &c.* also, at the end of words of more than one syllable, as in *progrès, progress* ; *après, after*. It is used in the last case, when an *s* follows.

This accent is likewise used to distinguish articles, adverbs, verbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, as in the following words :

*a, has.*

*là, the.*

*de là, of, or from the,*

*des, some, of, or from the.*

*ça, come on.*

*ou, or.*

*à, at or to.*

*là, there.*

*de-là, from thence.*

*dès-que, as soon as.*

*ça, hither.*

*où, where.*

N.B. Compounds follow the same rule, as *là-haut*, above; *là-bas*, down, there, below; *là-dessus*, upon that; *là-dessous*, under that, under there; *de là*, thence, from thence; *par là*, that way; *celui-là*, *celle-là*, that.

This accent is never placed in the beginning or in the middle of words, when an *e* is followed by a consonant, with which it makes a syllable.

The third is placed commonly upon a long vowel, as, in *âge*, age; *fête*, a feast; and particularly upon those which were formerly spelt with an *s*, as in *abîme*, an abyss; *les nôtres*, ours, &c.

In some monosyllables, as in *mât*, a mast.

At the end of some words ending with *t*, as in *forêt*, a forest.

In the third person singular of the preterite subjunctive, as, *qu'il parlât*, that he might speak, to distinguish the subjunctive from the indicative, *il parla*, he spake.

Observe that words of the first conjugation take a *t*, besides the accent, in the conjunctive mood, and none in the indicative: whereas all other words have a *t*, in the indicative and subjunctive moods.

Cardinal Numbers.	Numerical Letters.	Les Nombres Cardinaux.
1, one.	I.	un.
2, two.	II.	deux.
3, three.	III.	trois.
4, four.	IV.	quatre.
5, five.	V.	cinq.
6, six.	VI.	six.
7, seven.	VII.	sept.
8, eight.	VIII.	huit.
9, nine.	IX.	neuf.
10, ten.	X.	dix.
11, eleven.	XI.	onze.
12, twelve.	XII.	douze.
13, thirteen.	XIII.	treize.
14, fourteen.	XIV.	quatorze.
15, fifteen.	XV.	quinze.
16, sixteen.	XVI.	seize.
17, seventeen.	XVII.	dix-sept.
18, eighteen.	XVIII.	dix-huit.
19, nineteen.	XIX.	dix-neuf.
20, twenty.	XX.	vingt.

21, <i>twenty-one.</i>	XXI.	vingt-&-un.
22, <i>twenty-two.</i>	XXII.	vingt-deux.
and so on to		<i>jusqu'à</i>
30, <i>thirty.</i>	XXX.	trente.
31, <i>thirty-one.</i>	XXXI.	trente-&-un.
32, <i>thirty-two.</i>	XXXII.	trente-deux.
and so on to		<i>jusqu'à</i>
40, <i>forty.</i>	XL.	quarante.
41, <i>forty-one.</i>	XLI.	quarante-&-un.
42, <i>forty-two.</i>	XLII.	quarante-deux.
and so on to		<i>jusqu'à</i>
50, <i>fifty.</i>	L.	cinquante.
51, <i>fifty-one.</i>	LI.	cinquante-&-un.
52, <i>fifty-two.</i>	LII.	cinquante-deux.
and so on to		<i>jusqu'à</i>
60, <i>sixty.</i>	LX.	soixante.
61, <i>sixty-one.</i>	LXI.	soixante-&-un.
62, <i>sixty-two.</i>	LXII.	soixante-deux.
and so on to		<i>jusqu'à</i>
70, <i>seventy.</i>	LXX.	soixante-&-dix.
71, <i>seventy-one.</i>	LXXI.	soixante-&-onze.
72, <i>seventy-two.</i>	LXXII.	soixante-&-douze.
and so on to		<i>jusqu'à</i>
80, <i>eighty.</i>	LXXX.	quatre-vingts.
81, <i>eighty-one.</i>	LXXXI.	quatre-vingt-un.
82, <i>eighty-two.</i>	LXXXII.	quatre-vingt-deux.
and so on to		<i>jusqu'à</i>
90, <i>ninety.</i>	XC.	quatre-vingt-dix.
91, <i>ninety-one.</i>	XCI.	quatre-vingt-onze.
92, <i>ninety-two.</i>	XCII.	quatre-vingt-douze.
and so on to		<i>jusqu'à</i>
100, <i>one hundred.</i>	C.	cent.
200, <i>two hundred.</i>	CC.	deux cens.
300, <i>three hundred.</i>	CCC.	trois cens.
400, <i>four hundred.</i>	CCCC.	quatre cens.
500, <i>five hundred.</i>	D, or I <sub>0</sub> .	cinq cens.
600, <i>six hundred.</i>	DC, or I <sub>0</sub> C.	six cens.
700, <i>seven hundred.</i>	DCC, or I <sub>0</sub> CC.	sept cens.
800, <i>eight hundred.</i>	DCCC, or I <sub>0</sub> CCC.	huit cens.
900, <i>nine hundred.</i>	DCCCC, or I <sub>0</sub> CCCC.	neuf cens.
1000, <i>one thousand.</i>	M, or CI <sub>0</sub> .	mille.

These numbers never vary their termination, except *un*, which makes *une* in the feminine : *cent*, which makes *cents* or *cens* in the plural ; *mille* is written *mil*, when we write the date of the year ; in this case *cent* does not vary ; as,

1796, *one thousand seven* — DCCXCVI. mil-sept-  
*hundred and ninety-six.* cent quatre-vingt-seize.

The words *sepante*, *octante*, and *nonante* are obsolete ; *huitante* and *neuvante*, have been made use of only by some calculators. The advantage of admitting these words, *septante*, *huitante*, *neuvante*, which preserve their roots, is obvious enough to those who have numbers to put down, in figures under the telling of another person. *Six-vingt* (*six score*) was the common appellation for 120 in the last century, but has been abandoned : *quatre-vingt* (*four score*) will probably soon experience the same fate. Those false numerical appellations are entirely rejected by Mathematicians.

### ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1st, *first*.  
2d, *second*.  
3d, *third*.  
4th, *fourth*.  
5th, *fifth*.  
6th, *sixth*.  
7th, *seventh*.  
8th, *eighth*.  
9th, *ninth*.  
10th, *tenth*.  
11th, *eleventh*.  
12th, *twelfth*.  
13th, *thirteenth*.  
14th, *fourteenth*.  
15th, *fifteenth*.  
16th, *sixteenth*.  
17th, *seventeenth*.  
18th, *eighteenth*.  
19th, *nineteenth*.  
20th, *twentieth*.  
21st, *twenty-first*.  
22d, *twenty-second*.  
and so on, &c.  
*Once*,  
*twice*,  
*thrice*,  
*four times*.

### LES NOMBRES ORDINAUX.

1<sup>er</sup>. premier, M. première, F.  
2<sup>d</sup>. second, M. seconde, F.  
3<sup>e</sup>. troisième, M. & F.  
4<sup>e</sup>. quatrième.  
5<sup>e</sup>. cinquième.  
6<sup>e</sup>. sixième.  
7<sup>e</sup>. septième.  
8<sup>e</sup>. huitième.  
9<sup>e</sup>. neuvième.  
10<sup>e</sup>. dixième.  
11<sup>e</sup>. onzième.  
12. douzième.  
13<sup>e</sup>. treizième.  
14<sup>e</sup>. quatorzième.  
15<sup>e</sup>. quinzième.  
16<sup>e</sup>. seizième.  
17<sup>e</sup>. dix-septième.  
18<sup>e</sup>. dix-huitième.  
19<sup>e</sup>. dix-neuvième.  
20<sup>e</sup>. vingtième.  
21<sup>e</sup>. vingt-et-unième.  
22<sup>e</sup>. vingt-deuxième.  
& ainsi de suite.  
une fois  
deux fois.  
trois fois.  
quatre fois.

*First, or in the first place.* premièrement, ou en premier lieu.

*secondly, or in the second place.* secondement, ou en second lieu.

*thirdly, or in the third place.* troisièmement, ou en troisième lieu.

*fourthly, or in the fourth place.* quatrièmement, ou en quatrième lieu.

**The MONTHS of the YEAR. The CARDINAL POINTS.**

*January, Janvier.*

*The east, l'orient, ou l'est.*

*February, Février.*

*The west, l'occident, ou l'ouest.*

*March, Mars.*

*The south, le midi, ou le sud.*

*April, Avril.*

*The north, le nord, ou le septentrion.*

*May, Mai.*

*June, Juin.*

*July, Juillet.*

*August, Août.*

**The FIVE SENSES.**

*September, Septembre.*

*The sight, la vue.*

*October, Octobre.*

*The hearing, l'ouïe.*

*November, Novembre.*

*The feeling, le toucher.*

*December, Décembre.*

*The taste, le goût.*

*The smell, l'odorat.*

**The SEASONS of the YEAR.**

*The spring, le printemps.*

**The FOUR DIVISIONS of the WORLD.**

*The summer, l'été.*

*Europe, l'Europe.*

*The autumn, l'automne.*

*Asia, l'Asie.*

*The winter, l'hiver.*

*Africa, l'Afrique.*

*America, l'Amérique.*

**The DAYS of the WEEK.**

*Monday, Lundi.*

**Of the MOON.**

*Tuesday, Mardi.*

*New moon, nouvelle lune.*

*Wednesday, Mercredi.*

*First quarter, premier quartier.*

*Thursday, Jeudi.*

*Full moon, pleine lune.*

*Friday, Vendredi.*

*Last quarter, dernier quartier.*

*Saturday, Samedi.*

*Sunday, Dimanche.*

**The FOUR ELEMENTS.**

**Of GEOGRAPHY.**

*The fire, le feu.*

**I.**

*The air, l'air.*

**Terms relating to the LAND.**

*The earth, la terre.*

*A continent, un continent.*

*The water, l'eau.*

*An island*, une île.

*A peninsula*, une presqu'île.

*An isthmus*, un isthme.

*A promontory*, un promontoire.

*A mountain*, une montagne.

*A coast or shore*, une côte.

## II.

Terms relating to WATER.

*The ocean*, l'océan.

*A gulf*, un golfe.

*A strait*, un détroit.

*A channel*, un canal.

*A lake*, un lac.

*A river*, une rivière.

Of the WEATHER.

*The heat*, le chaud.

*The cold*, le froid.

*The rain*, la pluie.

*The dew*, la rosée.

*The hail*, la grêle.

*The snow*, la neige.

*The frost*, la gelée.

*The thaw*, le dégel.

*A fog, or mist*, un brouillard.

*The glazed frost*, le verglas.

*A storm*, un orage.

*A tempest*, une tempête.

*A flash of lightning*, un éclair.

*The thunder*, le tonnerre.

*The thunder bolt*, la foudre.

*The rainbow*, l'arc-en-ciel.

*The wind*, le vent.

*A hurricane*, un ouragan.

The AGES of MEN.

*Birth*, la naissance.

*Childhood*, l'enfance.

*Youth*, la jeunesse.

*Manhood*, la virilité.

*Old Age*, la vieillesse.

*Death*, la mort.

ARTS and SCIENCES.

*Divinity*, la théologie.

*Philosophy*, la philosophie.

*Logic*, la logique.

*Natural philosophy*, la physique.

*Physic*, la médecine.

*Surgery*, la chirurgie.

*Law*, le droit.

*Grammar*, la grammaire.

*Rhetoric*, la rhétorique.

*Poetry*, la poésie.

*Mathematics*, les mathématiques.

*Astrology*, l'astrologie.

*Chronology*, la chronologie.

*Arithmetic*, l'arithmétique.

*Algebra*, l'algèbre.

*Geometry*, la géométrie.

*Geography*, la géographie.

*Perspective*, la perspective.

*Dialling*, la gnomonique.

*Surveying*, l'arpentage.

*Architecture*, l'architecture.

*Fortifications*, les fortifications.

*Navigation*, la navigation.

*Music*, la musique.

*Chemistry*, la chimie.

*Painting*, la peinture.

*Statuary*, la sculpture.

*Fencing*, l'escrime.

*Riding*, le manège.

*Dancing*, la danse.

*Drawing*, le dessin.

The PERIODS of TIME.

*An instant*, un instant.

<i>A moment</i> , un moment.	<i>The chin</i> , le menton.
<i>A minute</i> , une minute.	<i>The neck</i> , le cou.
<i>A quarter of an hour</i> , un quart d'heure.	<i>The shoulders</i> , les épaules.
<i>Half an hour</i> , une demi-heure.	<i>The arms</i> , les bras.
<i>An hour</i> , une heure.	<i>The elbow</i> , le coude.
<i>A day</i> , un jour.	<i>The wrist</i> , le poignet.
<i>The morning</i> , le matin.	<i>The hand</i> , la main.
<i>Noon</i> , midi.	<i>The fingers</i> , les doigts.
<i>Afternoon</i> , l'après-midi.	<i>The thumb</i> , le pouce.
<i>The evening</i> , le soir.	<i>The nails</i> , les ongles.
<i>Midnight</i> , minuit.	<i>The fist</i> , le poing.
<i>A week</i> , une semaine.	<i>The knees</i> , les genoux.
<i>A month</i> , un mois.	<i>The legs</i> , les jambes.
<i>A year</i> , un an.	<i>The feet</i> , les pieds.
<i>An age</i> , un siècle.	<i>The heels</i> , les talons.
<i>Eternity</i> , l'éternité.	<i>The hip</i> , la hanche.
<i>The beginning</i> , le commencement.	
<i>The middle</i> , le milieu.	
<i>The end</i> , la fin.	
	WEARING APPAREL.
	<i>A coat</i> , un habit.
	<i>A waistcoat</i> , une veste.
	<i>The sleeves</i> , les manches.
	<i>The buttons</i> , les boutons.
	<i>The button-holes</i> , les boutonnières.
	<i>The pockets</i> , les poches.
	<i>A fob</i> , un gousset.
	<i>The lining</i> , la doublure.
	<i>Linen</i> , du linge.
	<i>The ruffles</i> , les manchettes.
	<i>A handkerchief</i> , un mouchoir.
	<i>Stockings</i> , des bas.
	<i>Garters</i> , des jarretières.
	<i>Shoes</i> , des souliers.
	<i>Buckles</i> , des boucles.
	<i>A hat</i> , chapeau.
	<i>A wig</i> , une perruque.
	<i>Gloves</i> , des gants.
	<i>A muff</i> , un manchon.
	<i>A comb</i> , un peigne.
	<i>A sword</i> , une épée.
	<i>Boots</i> , des bottes.
PARTS of the BODY.	
<i>The head</i> , la tête.	
<i>The hair</i> , les cheveux.	
<i>The face</i> , le visage.	
<i>The forehead</i> , le front.	
<i>The features</i> , les traits.	
<i>The eyes</i> , les yeux.	
<i>The eye-brows</i> , les sourcils.	
<i>The eye-lids</i> , les paupières.	
<i>The nose</i> , le nez.	
<i>The nostrils</i> , les narines.	
<i>The cheeks</i> , les joues.	
<i>The lips</i> , les lèvres.	
<i>The mouth</i> , la bouche.	
<i>The teeth</i> , les dents.	
<i>The gums</i> , les gencives.	
<i>The jaw</i> , la mâchoire.	
<i>The throat</i> , le gosier.	
<i>The ears</i> , les oreilles.	



<i>A shrub</i> , un arbrisseau.	<i>The margin</i> , la marge.
<i>A wall-tree</i> , un espalier.	<i>The ink</i> , l'encre.
<i>Brambles</i> , des ronces.	<i>The ink-horn</i> , l'écritoire.
<i>A thorn</i> , une épine.	<i>Cotton</i> , du coton.
<i>Apples</i> , des pommes.	<i>A pen</i> , une plume.
<i>Pears</i> , des poires.	<i>The nib</i> , le bec.
<i>Cherries</i> , des cerises.	<i>The slit</i> , la fente.
<i>Plumbs</i> , des prunes.	<i>A penknife</i> , un canif.
<i>Almonds</i> , des amandes.	<i>Dust</i> , de la poussière.
<i>Peaches</i> , des pêches.	<i>Sand</i> , du sable.
<i>Figs</i> , des figues.	<i>A powder-box</i> , un poudrier.
<i>Chestnuts</i> , des châtaignes.	<i>A lesson</i> , une leçon.
<i>Walnuts</i> , des noix.	<i>Wax</i> , de la cire.
<i>Small nuts</i> , des noisettes.	<i>Wafers</i> , des pains à cache- ter.
<i>Filberts</i> , des avelines.	<i>A seal</i> , un cachet.
<i>Oranges</i> , des oranges.	<i>Pocket-book</i> , des tablettes.
<i>Citrons</i> , des citrons.	<i>A ruler</i> , une règle.
<i>Grapes</i> , du raisin.	<i>A writing</i> , une écriture.
<i>Gooseberries</i> , des groseilles.	<i>A letter</i> , une lettre.
<i>Strawberries</i> , des fraises.	<i>A syllable</i> , une syllabe.
Of the STUDY and the	
SCHOOL.	
<i>Paper</i> , du papier.	<i>A word</i> , un mot.
<i>Blotting-paper</i> , du papier	<i>An accent</i> , un accent.
brouillard.	<i>A phrase</i> , une phrase.
<i>Brown paper</i> , du papier gris.	<i>A sentence</i> , une sentence.
<i>Gilt paper</i> , du papier doré.	<i>A period</i> , une période.
<i>A quire of paper</i> , une main	<i>An exercise</i> , un thème.
de papier.	<i>A translation</i> , une traduc- tion.
<i>A sheet of paper</i> , une feuille	<i>Verses</i> , des vers.
de papier.	<i>Prose</i> , de la prose.
<i>A ream of paper</i> , une rame	<i>A desk</i> , un pupitre.
de papier.	<i>Parchment</i> , du parchemin.
<i>A book</i> , un livre.	<i>Pasteboard</i> , du carton.
<i>A page</i> , une page.	<i>A blot</i> , un pâtre.
<i>A leaf</i> , un feuillet.	<i>A pencil</i> , un crayon.

## FAMILIAR AND EASY DIALOGUES.

FOR YOUNG BEGINNERS.

+

I.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| SIR, your most humble servant.                            | Monsieur, votre très humble serviteur.   |
| I have the honour to be yours.                            | J'ai l'honneur d'être le vôtre.  |
| I hope you are well.                                      | Votre santé est-elle bonne ?   |
| To render my duty to you.                                 | A vous rendre mes devoirs.   |
| To obey you.  | A vous obéir.  |
| How do they do at your house ? +                          | Comment se porte-t-on chez vous ? +  |
| They are all well.  | Tout le monde s'y porte bien.  |
| Ready to do you any service.                              | Prêt à vous rendre service.  |
| At your service.  | A votre service.   |
| And you, madam, how do you do ?                           | Et vous, madame, comment vous portez vous ?  |
| Pretty well. Very well.                                   | Passablement bien. Fort bien.  |
| Is all your family well ?                                 | Tout le monde se porte-t-il bien chez vous ?   |
| Perfectly well.   | Parfaitement bien.   |
| How does your mother do ?<br>—your father ?—your sister ? | Comment se porte Madame votre mère ?—Monsieur votre père ?—Mademoiselle votre sœur ? |
| You do them much honour, they are in good health.         | Vous leur faites bien de l'honneur ; ils sont tous en bonne santé.                   |
| I am very glad to see you in good health.                 | Je suis bien charmé de vous voir en bonne santé.                                     |
| And I also.   | Et moi pareillement.   |
| I am infinitely obliged to you.                           | Je vous suis infiniment obligé.  |
| I most humbly thank you.                                  | Je vous remercie très humblement.  |
| I am much indebted to you.                                | Je vous suis bien redevable.   |
| I give you a thousand thanks.                             | Je vous rends mille graces.  |

Madam, you jest ; I do but my duty.	Madame, vous vous moquez, je ne fais que mon devoir.
Now I think on it, how does your brother ?	Apropos, comment se porte monsieur votre frère ?
Exceedingly well.	Parfaitement bien.
I am very glad of it.	J'en suis bien aise.
Does he learn French ?	Apprend il le Français ?
Yes, Sir, and my sister likewise.	Oui, monsieur, et ma sœur aussi.
Does he go to school ?	Va-t-il à l'école ?
He goes to the academy, and my sister is in a boarding school.	Il va à l'Academie, et ma sœur est dans une pension.
I shall be very glad to see them at the next holidays.	Je serai bien aise de les voir aux vacances prochaines.
Sir, they will not be less glad to see you.	Monsieur, ils ne seront pas moins charmés de vous voir.
Farewell, present my most humble respects to your father and mother.	Adieu, présentez mes très humbles respects à monsieur votre père et a madame votre mère.
Tell them I will go and see them some day or other.	Dites-leur que j'irai les voir un de ces jours.
Well, good bye.	{ ah ça, au plaisir. { ah ça, à l'honneur.

## II.

Sir, I am overjoyed to meet you here.	Monsieur, je suis ravi de vous rencontrer ici.
Sir, you are very kind.	Monsieur, vous avez bien de la bonté.
How have you done since I had the pleasure to see you ?	Comment vous êtes-vous porté depuis que je n'ai eu le plaisir de vous voir ?
Always very well ; thank God.	Toujours fort bien ; Dieu merci.
My mother is sick.	Ma mère est malade.
Is she ? indeed I am very sorry for it.	Elle est malade ! En vérité j'en suis très fâché.
What is the matter with her ?	Qu'est-ce qu'elle a ?

She has the headach.	Elle a mal à la tête.
She has the toothach.	Elle a mal aux dents.
She has a fever.	Elle a la fièvre.
She has not gone out this fortnight.	Il y a quinze jours qu'elle n'est sortie.
I am very sorry I have not time to see her to-day.	Je suis très fâché de n'avoir pas le temps de la voir aujourd'hui.
What hinders you ?	Qu'est ce qui vous en empêche ?
Indeed, I cannot ; I must go to Islington.	En vérité, je ne saurais ; il faut que j'aille à Islington.
She would be very glad to see you.	Elle serait bien aise de vous voir.
To-morrow, without fail, I shall have that honour.	Demain, sans faute, j'aurai cet honneur là.
I am very sorry to hear she is ill.	Je suis très fâché d'apprendre qu'elle se porte mal.
Do not fail to call to-morrow.	Ne manquez pas de venir demain.
No, no, I will not fail.	Non, non ; je n'y manquerai pas.
I rely on you.	Je compte sur vous.
You may depend upon me.	Vous pouvez compter sur moi.
Farewell ; I will tell it her.	Adieu ; je le lui dirai.

## III.

Let us speak nothing else but French.	Ne parlons que Français.
I agree to it ; it is the best means to learn a language.	J'y consens ; c'est le meilleur moyen d'apprendre une langue.
Well ; let us begin.	Hé bien ; commençons.
Do you speak French ?	Parlez-vous Français ?
I speak it a little.	Je le parle un peu.
French is a very useful language.	Le Français est une langue très utile.
It is now-a-days the universal language.	C'est aujourd'hui la langue universelle.
The French language is very difficult.	Le Français est très difficile.

The English is still more so. L'Anglais l'est encore davantage.

Are you very well versed in the French tongue ? Etes-vous bien savant dans la langue Française ?

Not much, I do but begin. Pas beaucoup, je ne fais que de commencer.

Do you understand what you read ? Comprenez-vous ce que vous lisez ?

I understand better than I can speak. Je comprends mieux que je ne parle.

I do not wonder at it ; it is always easier to understand a language than to speak it. Je ne m'en étonne pas ; il est toujours plus facile de comprendre une langue que de la parler.

Who teaches you French ? Qui est ce qui vous enseigne le Français ?

It is master A. C'est Monsieur A.

I know him ; he is a very able man. Je le connais ; c'est un fort habile homme.

How many times a week does he attend you ? Combien de leçons vous donne-t-il par semaine ?

As often as I am at leisure. Aussi souvent que j'en ai le temps.

Almost every day. Presque tous les jours.

How long have you been learning French ? Combien y a-t-il que vous apprenez le Français ?

Six months. Six mois.

Indeed you have made a great progress. En vérité vous avez fait de grands progrès.

Sir, you encourage me to make greater. Monsieur, vous m'encouragez à en faire de plus grands.

You must always speak French. Il faut toujours parler Français.

I am afraid of making blunders. J'ai peur de faire des fautes.

They would laugh at me. On se moquerait de moi.

Not at all ; do not be afraid of being laughed at. Point du tout ; ne craignez pas qu'on se moque de vous.

## IV.

Where are you going ? Où allez-vous ?

**I am going to the Park, to church, to the play, to Greenwich, to Islington, &c.** **Je vais au Parc, à l'église, à la comédie, à Greenwich, à Islington, &c.**

**Where do you come from ?** **D'où venez vous ?**

**I come from the Park, from church, from the play, from Greenwich, from Islington, &c.** **Je viens du Parc, de l'église, de la comédie, de Greenwich, d'Islington, &c.**

**Was the king at the play ?** **Le roi était-il à la comédie ?**  
**Yes, and the queen too.** **Oui, et la reine aussi.**

**How do you like the English language ?** **Comment trouvez vous la langue Anglaise ?**

**The English tongue is difficult for Frenchmen to learn.** **Je trouve que l'Anglaise est très difficile pour les Français.**

**Do you learn Latin ?** **Apprenez-vous le Latin ?**

**I have been learning it these two years.** **Il y a deux ans que je l'apprends.**

**What do you think of the Latin ?** **Que pensez-vous du Latin ?**

**Sir, I think that the Latin is more difficult than the French.** **Monsieur, je pense que le Latin est plus difficile que le Français.**

**You are in the right.** **Vous avez raison.**

**What French authors do you read ?** **Quels auteurs Français lisez-vous ?**

**I read the adventures of Telemachus, Gil Blas, the age of Louis XIV. the history of Charles XII. king of Sweden.** **Je lis les aventures de Télémaque, Gil Blas, le siècle de Louis XIV. l'histoire de Charles XII. roi de Suède.**

**Do not you read sometimes La Fontaine's fables ?** **Ne lisez-vous pas quelque fois les fables de Lafontaine ?**

**Yes, Sir, my master told me he was the best author for fables.** **Oui, Monsieur, mon maître m'a dit que c'était le meilleur auteur pour les fables.**

**What do you learn by heart ?** **Qu'apprenez-vous par cœur ?**  
**I learn the articles, the pronouns, the verbs, &c.** **J'apprends les articles, les pronoms, les verbes, &c.**

**You pronounce the French very well.** **Vous prononcez très bien le Français.**

**I take a great deal of pains. Je prends beaucoup de peine.**  
**Nothing is to be got without pains. On n'a rien sans peine.** ✓

**Is it true ?**

**Est-il vrai ?**

**Yes, it is true.**

**Oui, il est vrai.**

**Do you believe it ?**

**Le croyez vous ?**

**It is but too true.**

**Il n'est que trop vrai.**

**Believe me on my word.**

**Croyez moi sur ma parole.**

**I would not tell you a lie for  
all the gold in the world.**

**Je ne voudrais pas vous dire  
un mensonge pour tout  
l'or du monde.**

**Did you see it ?**

**L'avez vous vu ?**

**Why did you not tell it me ?**

**Pourquoi ne me l'avez-vous  
pas dit ?**

**I can assure you.**

**Je puis vous assurer.**

**I believe you.**

**Je vous crois.**

**Do you speak in earnest ?**

**Parlez-vous sérieusement ?**

**I speak in earnest.**

**Je parle sérieusement.**

**Well, let it be so.**

**Hé bien, à la bonne heure.**

**I will not oppose it.**

**Je ne m'y opposerai pas.**

**That is not true.**

**Cela n'est pas vrai.**

**You are mistaken.**

**Vous vous trompez.**

**Did you guess it ?**

**L'avez vous deviné ?**

**Who told it you ?**

**Qui est-ce qui vous l'a dit ?**

**It is somebody you know.**

**C'est quelqu'un que vous  
connaissiez.**

**Are you certain of it ?**

**Etes-vous sûr de cela ?**

**You may be mistaken.**

**Vous pouvez vous tromper.**

**I do not believe I am mis-  
taken.**

**Je ne crois pas que je me-  
trompe.**

**There is no such thing.**

**Il n'y a rien de cela.**

**Who doubts it ?**

**Qui est-ce qui en doute ?**

**I will never doubt it.**

**Je n'en douterai jamais.**

**There is no doubt of it.**

**Il n'y a point de doute.**

**I will lay any thing you  
please.**

**Je gagerai tout ce qu'il vous  
plaira.**

**I never lay any wager.**

**Je ne fais jamais de gageure.**

**When did you see him, or  
her ?**

**Quand l'avez vous vu ou  
vue ?**

**When did you see them ?**

**Quand les avez-vous vus ?**

I saw him last week.	Je le vis la semaine passée.
I saw her last month.	Je la vis le mois passé.
I did not see them.	Je ne les ai pas vus.
What do you say ?	Que dites-vous ?
I said nothing at all.	Je n'ai rien dit du tout.
I heard it.	Je l'ai ouï dire.
Do not believe such a story.	Ne croyez pas un tel conte.
I do not believe it.	Je ne le crois pas.
When did you hear it ?	Quand l'avez vous ouï dire ?
To-day, yesterday, the day before yesterday.	Aujourd'hui, hier, avant hier.
Will you tell it him ?	Lui direz vous ?
I shall never tell it him.	Je ne le lui dirai jamais.

## VI.

Do you choose to drink a dish of tea ?	Souhaitez vous prendre une tasse de thé ?
Sir, I am much obliged to you, I never drink any.	Monsieur, je vous suis très-obligé ; je n'en prends jamais.
What ! you never drink tea ?	Quoi ! vous ne prenez jamais de thé ?
You like coffee better, perhaps.	Vous aimez peut-être mieux le café ?
Do you know any news ?	Savez-vous quelque nouvelle ?
I know of nothing worth your while to hear.	Je n'en sais point qui soit digne de vous être rapportée.
There is no talk of any thing.	On ne parle de rien.
When do you expect him ?	Quand l'attendez vous ?
Did you ever know him ?	L'avez-vous jamais connu ?
I know him by reputation.	Je le connais de réputation.
Do you remember it ?	Vous en souvenez-vous ?
No, Sir, I do not remember it.	Non, Monsieur, je ne m'en souviens pas.
I have a very bad memory.	J'ai la mémoire très mauvaise.
You forget easily.	Vous oubliez aisément.
Will you take a little walk ?	Voulez-vous faire un petit tour de promenade ?
<i>With all my heart.</i>	De tout mon-cœur.



Where shall we go ?

Ou irons-nous ?

Let us go into the Park ; we shall see the king there.

Allons au Parc ; nous y verrons le roi.

At what o'clock is he to be seen ?

A quelle heure peut on le voir ?

About twelve o'clock.

Vers midi.

I should be very glad of seeing him.

Je serais bien aise de le voir.

He is a very handsome prince.

C'est un très beau prince.

I shall be glad to see the queen likewise ; everybody speaks well of her.

Je serai bien aise de voir aussi la reine : tout le monde en dit du bien.

Did you ever see the prince of Wales ?

Avez-vous jamais vu le prince de Galles ?

They say he is a handsome young prince.

On dit que c'est un beau jeune prince.

## VII.

It is very fine weather.

Il fait très beau temps.

Do you believe it will rain to-day ?

Croyez-vous qu'il pleuve aujourd'hui ?

I do not believe it will cease raining all the day long.

Je ne crois pas que la pluie cesse d'aujourd'hui.

The sky is very clear and serene.

Le ciel est très clair et serain.

We are in the best season now.

Nous sommes à présent dans la meilleure saison.

What season do you like best ?

Quelle saison aimez vous davantage ?

The summer is the most agreeable of all the seasons.

L'été est la plus agréable de toutes les saisons.

It is sometimes very cold in the spring.

Il fait quelquefois très froid au printemps.

I do not like the winter at all.

Je n'aime pas du tout l'hiver.

Do you not go to the play ?

N'allez-vous pas à la comédie ?

I am to go thither this evening.

Je dois y aller ce soir.

*There is a new play.*

Il y a une nouvelle pièce.

*There will be a great many people.*

Il y aura un grand concours de monde.

**I have a mind to go thither** *J'ai envie d'y aller aussi.*  
likewise.

**Do : I shall be very glad to** *Venez : je serai bien aise de*  
accompany you. *vous y accompagner.*

**Stay a little ; I will be with** *Attendez un peu ; je suis à*  
you in an instant. *vous à l'instant.*

**Do your business : I shall** *Faites vos affaires ; je vous*  
stay for you. *attendrai.*

**Now, I am ready.** *A présent, je suis prêt.*

**Let us go.** *Allons.*

# VIII.

**What o'clock is it ?** *Quelle heure est-il ?*

**What o'clock do you believe** *Quelle heure croyez-vous*  
it is ? *qu'il soit ?*

**I believe it is not yet late.** *Je crois qu'il n'est pas en-*  
*core tard.*

**Guess.** *Devinez.*

**Nine o'clock.** *Neuf heures.*

**It is past ten o'clock.** *Il est dix heures passées.*

**It is a quarter past ten.** *Il est dix heures & un quart.*

**It is half an hour past ten.** *Il est dix heures & demie.*

**It is three quarters past ten.** *Il est onze heures moins un*  
*quart.*

**Indeed, I did not think it** *En vérité, je ne croyais pas*  
was so late. *qu'il fût si tard.*

**Time goes away swiftly.** *Le temps s'écoule avec ra-*  
*pidité.*

**One is never dull in good** *On ne s'ennuie jamais en*  
company. *bonne compagnie.*

**Let us go and take a walk** *Allons faire un tour de jar-*  
into the garden. *din.*

**With all my heart.** *De tout mon cœur.*

**Have you any fine flowers** *Avez-vous de belles fleurs*  
in your garden ? *dans votre jardin ?*

**Very fine ones.** *De fort belles.*

**Will you give me leave to** *Voulez-vous me donner la*  
gather some ? *permission d'en cueillir ?*

**You may gather as many as** *Vous en pouvez cueillir au-*  
you please. *tant qu'il vous plaira.*

**Do you choose some pears,** *Souhaitez vous des poires,*  
*apples, cherries, &c.* *des pommes, des cerises*

I am not fond of fruit.	Je ne suis pas grand amateur de fruit.
Let us go home ; it is almost dinner time.	Allons au-logis ; il est bientôt temps de dîner.
Are you hungry ?	Avez-vous faim ?
Have you a good appetite ?	Avez-vous bon appétit ?
I do not know if I shall be able to eat a dinner ; I breakfasted very heartily.	Je ne sais pas si je pourrai dîner ; j'ai très bien déjeuné.
One gets a stomach by eating.	L'appétit vient en mangeant.

## IX.

Let us sit down to table.	Mettons-nous à table.
Is dinner ready ?	Le dîner est-il prêt ?
The meat is upon the table.	On a servi.
Sir, you make ceremonies ; pray do not make any.	Monsieur, vous faites des cérémonies ; de grace, n'en faites point.
What do you choose to have ?	Que souhaitez vous ?
What you please.	Ce qu'il vous plaira.
How do you like this roast meat ?	Comment trouvez-vous ce rôti ?
It is exceeding good and very tender.	Il est excellent et très tendre.
Sir, if you are dry, call for some drink.	Monsieur, si vous avez soif, demandez à boire.
You do not eat.	Vous ne mangez pas.
I beg your pardon ; I eat very heartily.	Je vous demande pardon ; je mange de bon appétit.
This is all we have.	C'est tout ce que nous avons.
There is no need of any thing else.	Il ne faut rien de plus.
I invited you to dinner only to enjoy your company.	Je ne vous ai invité à dîner, que pour jouir de votre compagnie.
What do you choose to drink ?	Que souhaitez-vous boire ?
Sir, to your health.	Monsieur, à votre santé.
<i>Madam, I have the honour to drink to your health.</i>	<i>Madame, j'ai l'honneur de boire à votre santé.</i>
<i>To all that pleases you.</i>	<i>A tout ce qui vous fait plaisir.</i>

Sir, it is the pleasure of seeing you.	Monsieur, c'est celui de vous voir.
Shall I help you to a little bit of the leg of mutton?	Vous servirai-je un petit morceau de gigot ?
I am infinitely obliged to you ; I have eat enough.	Je vous suis infiniment obligé ; j'ai assez mangé.
No more.	Pas davantage.
What shall we do after dinner ?	Que ferons-nous après dîner ?
What the ladies please.	Ce qu'il plaira à ces dames.

X. :

We shall have a holy-day to-morrow.	Nous aurons demain congé.
Show me your exercise.	Montrez-moi votre thème.
I shall show it to you after breakfast.	Je vous le montrerai après déjeuner.
Who took my inkstand ?	Qui est-ce qui a pris mon écritoire ?
Give me my penknife.	Donnez-moi mon canif.
I did not see it.	Je ne l'ai pas vu.
Do not blot your paper.	Ne faites point de pâtés.
Who has got my wafers ?	Qui est-ce qui a des pains à cacheter.
Come, I will give you some.	Venez, je vous en donnerai.
They make a great deal of noise there.	On fait beaucoup de bruit par-là.
Sit down in your place ; and be quiet.	Asseyez-vous à votre place ; & soyez tranquille.
Indeed, I do not speak a word.	En vérité, je ne dis mot.
Learn your lesson.	Apprenez votre leçon.
I know it perfectly well.	Je la sais parfaitement bien.
Will you be pleased to make me a pen ?	Vous plait-il de me tailler une plume ?
That is good for nothing at all.	Celle-ci ne vaut rien du tout.
Make your pens yourself.	Taillez vos plumes vous-même.
Why is your exercise so ill-written ?	Pourquoi votre thème est-il si mal écrit ?
That paper sinks.	C'est du papier qui boit.

It is wet ; you must dry it near the fire.	Il est humide ; il faut le faire sécher devant le feu.
What is the French for — ?	Quel est le Français de — ?
How do you say in French ?	Comment dit on en Français ?
Why do you not shut the door ?	Pourquoi ne fermez-vous pas la porte ?
I found it open.	Je l'ai trouvée ouverte.
Your stockings have holes in them.	Vos bas sont troués.
I shall get them mended.	Je les ferai raccommoder.
I did not observe it when I put them on.	Je n'y ai pas pris garde quand je les ai mis.
Tie your garters ; your stockings are about your heels.	Attachez vos jarrettières ; vos bas sont ravalés.
Now, come and say your lesson.	A présent, venez dire votre leçon.
I have but two words to write.	Je n'ai que deux mots à écrire.
Give me leave to go out.	Donnez-moi permission de sortir.
Go, and come back immediately.	Allez, & revenez dans l'instant.
I have lost my pencil.	J'ai perdu mon crayon.
You lose every thing.	Vous perdez tout.
You do not take care of any thing.	Vous ne prenez garde à rien.
Somebody took it from me.	Quelqu'un me l'a pris.
Look for it.	Cherchez-le.
I have looked every where.	Je l'ai cherché par-tout.
Lend me your book.	Prêtez-moi votre livre.
I want it myself.	J'en ai besoin moi-même.
Do not push me, I cannot write.	Ne me poussez pas, je ne puis écrire.
Who shakes the table ?	Qui est-ce qui remue la table ?
I did not do it on purpose.	Je ne l'ai pas fait exprès.
Well, let us see.	Ah, ça, voyons.

## XI.

<i>It is time to go to bed.</i>	Il est temps de s'aller coucher.
<i>It grows late.</i>	Il se fait tard.

I never go to bed so early. Je ne me couche jamais de si bonne heure.

At what o'clock do you rise? A quelle heure vous levez-vous?

I have no fixed hour. Je n'ai point d'heure fixe.

You may sit up as long as you please; for my part, I am going to bed. Vous pouvez veiller tant qu'il vous plaira; pour moi, je vais m'aller coucher.

I am used to go to bed sometimes. J'ai coutume de me coucher de bonne heure.

Light a candle. Allumez une chandelle.

Where are my slippers? Où sont mes pantoufles?

I am going to fetch them. Je m'en vais les quérir.

Snuff the candle. Mouchez la chandelle.

Draw the curtains. Tirez les rideaux.

Do not fail to wake me. Ne manquez pas de m'éveiller.

I shall come sooner perhaps than you choose. Je viendrai, peut-être, plutôt que vous ne voudrez.

No; do not be afraid. Non; n'ayez pas peur.

Gentlemen and ladies, I wish you good night. Messieurs & Mesdames, je vous souhaite le bon soir.

Sir, or Madam, I wish you a good night's rest. Monsieur, ou Madame, je vous souhaite une bonne nuit.

## XII.

What! you are a-bed still? Quoi! vous êtes encore au lit?

Do you sleep? Dormez vous?

No; I am awake. Non; je suis éveillé.

You awake me too early; it is very dark yet. Vous m'éveillez de trop grand matin; il ne fait pas encore jour.

Your curtains are drawn; you do not see the daylight. Vos rideaux sont tirés; vous ne voyez pas la clarté du jour.

How did you sleep last night? Comment avez-vous dormi cette nuit?

I did not sleep a wink all the night long. Je n'ai pas fermé l'œil de toute la nuit.

No matter ; I shall get up N'importe ; je me leverai  
presently. dans l'instant.

I am going to bid the ser- Je m'en vais dire au domes-  
vant to make a fire. tique de faire du feu.

Bring me some water, I must Apportez moi de l'eau, il  
wash my face, my mouth, faut que je me lave le  
and my hands. visage, la bouche, et les  
mains.

Where are my shoes ? Où sont mes souliers ?

They are at the door. Ils sont à la porte.

Are they clean ? Sont-ils nettoyés ?

Give me my silk stockings. Donnez-moi mes bas de soie.

Somebody knocks at the On frappe à la porte ; allez  
door ; go and see who it is. voir qui c'est.

I am not yet ready to go Je ne suis pas encore prêt  
out. à sortir.

Take care to keep a good Ayez soin de faire bon feu  
fire in the parlour. dans la salle.

Tell Mr. A. I am coming Allez dire à M. A. que je  
down immediately. vais descendre dans l'in-  
stant.

Sir, I am overjoyed to see Monsieur, je suis ravi de  
you in good health. vous voir en bonne santé.

I am sorry to have made Je suis fâché de vous avoir  
you wait so long. fait attendre si longtemps.

Not at all, you jest. Point du tout, vous vous  
moquez.

Let us go and take a turn. Allons faire un tour de pro-  
menade.

## PART II.

### CHAPTER I.

#### *A short Analysis of the Parts of Speech.*

THERE are in the French language ten sorts of words, or parts of Speech, namely ; the ARTICLE, the SUBSTANTIVE or NOUN, the ADJECTIVE or ADJUNCT, the PRONOUN, the VERB, the ADVERB, the PARTICIPLE, the PREPOSITION, the CONJUNCTION, and the INTERJECTION.

1. The article is a word prefixed to substantives to point them out, and to show how far the signification extends ; as, *the* study of history is useful and agreeable ; *l'étude de l'histoire est utile et agréable* : *the* nature of man is unknown to man ; *la nature de l'homme est inconnue à l'homme* : *A* bad man is ungrateful towards God and towards men ; *un méchant homme est ingrat envers Dieu & envers les hommes* : *A* prince is not always so happy as people believe : *un prince n'est pas toujours aussi heureux que le peuple croit*.

Grammarians admit of two sorts of articles.

The definite (*the*) *le*, m. *la*, f. for *the singular* ; *les*, plural, for *both genders*.

The indefinite (*a* or *an*) *un* m. *une*, f. for *the singular*, *des*, instead of *quelques*, *plusieurs*, for *the plural*.

The definite article, 1st, restrains the signification of a general appellation ; *l'étude de l'histoire est utile et agréable*. *La* nature de l'homme est inconnue à l'homme.

2dly. It indicates the gender and number of substantives ; and for that reason is used in French before a noun taken in its widest sense ; as *l'étude orne l'esprit* ; study adorns the mind ; *la* nature a beaucoup d'observateurs, mais elle a peu de confidants ; nature has many observers, but she has few confidants. *Les* princes ne sont pas toujours aussi heureux que *le* peuple croit ; princes are not always so happy as people believe ; *les* exemples instruisent plus que *les* préceptes ; examples instruct more than precepts.

Substantives in French having no final to distinguish sufficiently the plural from the singular, it has been necessary to prefix a particle, in order to denote the number of the things spoken of and the article, which, as we have shown, limits the general signification of nouns, was also formed to point out their gender and number.

The indefinite article is used in a vague sense, and restrains the signification of a general appellation to one or several objects in an indefinite or partitive sense ; as, *un* prince n'est pas toujours aussi heureux que le peuple croit. Nous voyons quelquefois *des* princes très malheureux : we sometimes see princes very unhappy. *Un* homme de génie est sujet, comme un autre homme, à commettre des erreurs & des fautes ; a man of genius



is subject, like another man, to commit (*some*) errors and faults.

II. A SUBSTANTIVE or noun, is a word which expresses the name of any thing that exists, or which we conceive as existing ; as, the Earth,—a house,—man,—Peter,—virtue,—prudence. *La Terre*,—*une maison*,—*l'homme*,—*Pierre*,—*vertu*,—*prudence*.

To Substantives belong gender, number, and case.

The gender is either *masculine* or *feminine*, as, *le père*, *la mère* ; *le jardin*, *la maison*. There is no *neuter* in the French Tongue.

The number is either *singular* or *plural*.

The *singular* signifies one thing ; as, *le père*, *la mère*.

The *plural* more than one ; as, *les pères*, *les mères*.

The case signifies the different states, or the different circumstances of a noun.

A noun in a preposition is to be considered either as subject or object, *that is to say*, as governing or governed. The governing case, called also the *nominative*, expresses the subject of the verb, and is placed in French, as in English, *before* the verb.

III. An ADJECTIVE is a word added to a Substantive to express its quality ; as a *diligent* scholar, *un écolier diligent*. In French, the adjective is declinable, and agrees in gender and number with the substantive to which it is joined or refers ; as, *un petit homme*, *une petite femme*, a little man, a little woman.

The feminine of the adjective is formed, by adding an *e* (called *mute* or *feminine*) to the masculine gender ; as, *un petit homme*, *une petite femme* ; but if the primitive masculine ends with an *e* mute, then there is no alteration, and the feminine is like the masculine ; as *un champ fertile*, *une terre fertile*. See page 70.

IV. The PRONOUN supplies the place of a noun, and removes the confusion arising from a frequent repetition : as *j'ai vu mon frère*, *il était très malade* ; instead of *mon frère était très malade* : I saw my brother, he was very sick ; instead of *my brother* was very sick.

Pronouns are of six kinds, viz. personal, possessive, demonstrative, relative, interrogative, and improper or *indefinite*.

The *personal* pronoun is used instead of the name of

a person ; as, *je, tu, il*, m. *elle*, f. for the singular ; *nous, vous, ils*, m. *elles*, f. for the plural.

The possessive pronouns mark possession ; they are of two sorts, conjunctive and absolute.

The conjunctive pronouns are used only with substantives ; as, *mon, ma, mes ; ton, ta, tes ; son, sa, ses ; notre, nos ; votre, vos ; leur, leurs*.

The absolute pronouns are used by themselves, their substantives being understood, as, *le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes ; le tien, la tienne, les tiens, les tiennes ; le sien, la sienne, les siennes, les siennes ; le nôtre, la nôtre ; les nôtres ; le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres ; le leur, la leur, les leurs*.

The demonstrative pronouns are used to particularize persons or things, as if pointed at by the finger.

The relative pronouns refer to persons or things spoken of in a former part of a sentence.

The interrogative pronouns are used in asking questions.

The indefinite pronouns are used in a vague sense ; as, *tout, quelque, chaque, &c.*

V. A VERB is a word which signifies to be or to do ; as, Thomas *est* studieux, Thomas *is* studious ; Thomas *étudié*, Thomas *studies*.

The proper definition of the verb is, that it is a word which signifies *affirmation* ; for its proper office is to *affirm some attribute* of the subject (or nominative) of the propositions. But if we join its principal accident it may be thus defined : a word which signifies *affirmation with the designation of the person, number, and time* : which definition agrees properly with the verb substantive to be (*être*.) But, since men have frequently united certain attributes to the affirmation, for the sake of brevity, the verb (active or neuter) may be again defined thus, a word signifying *the affirmation of some attribute, with the designation of person, number, and time*.

Verbs are divided, first into regular and irregular, personal and impersonal.

When a verb follows the rule of its conjugation, it is called regular ; but if it deviates from it, it is called irregular.

Personal verbs, are those which are conjugated with the personal pronouns, *je, tu, il, elle, &c.*

Impersonal pronouns are those which are conjugated only in the third person singular with the pronoun *il, &c.*

Secondly, verbs are divided into active, passive, neuter, and reflected.

The active verb marks the action of its subject, or nominative case ; and makes good sense with the accusative of its object, or the thing on which it acts ; as, je mange *du pain*, I eat bread ; tu bois *de la bière*, thou drickest beer ; il chante *une chanson*, he sings a song.

The passive verb marks the passion or suffering of its subject : je *suis* aimé, I am loved ; tu *es* puni, thou art punished ; il *est* banni, he is banished.

A neuter verb is a word denoting the action of its subject or nominative, which remains in the subject, and does not with propriety admit an accusative after it : as, *Je dors*, I sleep ; *il court*, he runs.

The reflected verbs receive their name from reflecting the action of a subject or nominative on itself ; as, je *me brûle*, I burn myself ; il *s'aime*, he loves himself.

There are also two auxiliary or helping verbs, être, *to be* ; avoir, *to have* ; these are called auxiliary, from their helping in the conjugation of other verbs.

Four things are to be distinguished in verbs ; the mood, the tense, the number, and the person.

The mood expresses the different manner and use made of a verb positively, conditionally, or in an unspecified manner. There are four moods, infinitive, indicative, subjunctive, and imperative.

The infinitive is the root of the verb ; it expresses the action or passion in an indefinite sense, without any particular circumstance of time, number, or person.

The indicative expresses the action or passion in a direct or positive manner, in a time present, past, or future. We shall have a more precise idea of the indicative in comparing it with the subjunctive mood.

The subjunctive is a manner of expressing the action or passion with a modified affirmation or negation, always supposing another verb, which it follows, or it belongs to, or some conjunction by which it is governed.\*

\* The differences between the indicative and the subjunctive are chiefly :

1. The tenses of the subjunctive affirm or deny indirectly, always supposing another verb affirming or denying directly ; as in this phrase : I will have you do your duty, *Je veux que vous fassiez votre devoir*. *Je veux* is a direct affirmation, and independent of any other ; whereas, *que vous fassiez* refers

The imperative expresses the action or passion by commands, prohibitions, desires, &c.

The future tense has sometimes the signification of the imperative mood, when it commands or forbids; as, thou shalt love the Lord thy God, *tu aimeras le Seigneur ton Dieu*.

The tenses express the period of time in which an action or passion is, was, or shall be. They are properly three, the present, the past, and the future.

Each tense has two numbers, singular and plural; and each number has three persons.

VI. A PARTICIPLE partakes something of the nature of a verb, and something of an adjective.

Besides the quality or attribute, which is the property of the adjective, the participle expresses *time*, together with the consideration of *acting*, or *being acted upon*, from whence the participle *present* or *active*, and the participle *past* or *passive*; as, *Les hommes craignant Dieu*; *Dieu craint par les hommes*.

The Latins have also formed a participle future.

If the definition of the verb is right which is to signify *affirmation*, the participles must be the root of the common Ellyptical verbs, since the participle can be united only with the verb substantive *to be*, *Etre*; which verb substantive is reckoned by the best Grammarians to be the *only verb*, the *sole verb*.

VII. An ADVERB marks the difference and circumstance of an action or passion.

VIII. A PREPOSITION is a word placed before those nouns and pronouns which it governs, or before some verbs, in order to connect words one with another, and to show the relation between them.

IX. A CONJUNCTION serves to connect one word with another, and sentences with sentences.

X. An INTERJECTION expresses the motions or passions of the soul, as joy, grief, admiration, &c.

The last four parts of speech are undeclinable.

*devoir* is but an indirect affirmation, and depending on the first. 2. The tenses of the subjunctive are so depending on the words or conjunctions that are before them, that they cannot be separated from them without having an undetermined sense, nor, consequently, a simple affirmation. So from the foregoing example you take away *je veux que*, what follows, *vous fassiez votre devoir*, has no determined sense, and could not be put in the beginning of the phrase; whereas, the tenses of the indicative may be separated, and make by themselves, without the help of the conjunction, a clear and determined sense; as, *I believe we shall have some rain*, *je crois que nous aurons de la pluie*; take away *je crois que*, what follows, *nous aurons de la pluie*, has a determined sense, understood without any other word.

## CHAPTER II.

*Of Genders.*

To give rules for knowing the Gender of Substantives would be needless and puzzling: "They are so many," says *Boyer*, "so intricate, and liable to so many exceptions, that the best and easiest way is to learn them in his royal Dictionary." And, indeed, rules would be of no advantage to the learner. However, as some substantives are of the masculine gender in one sense, and of the feminine in another, it will not be amiss to give a list of those.

## MASCULINE.

un aigle, *an eagle.*

un aire, *a nest of birds of prey.*

un aune, *an alder tree.*

un barbe, *a barb, (a horse.)*

un coche, *a public travelling coach.*

un cornette, *a cornet of a troop of horse.*

un couple, *a couple, (two persons united together.)*

un cravate, *a Croatian soldier.*

un délice, *pleasure, delight.*

un écho, *an echo.*

un espace, *a space, a distance.*

un enseigne, *an ensign.*

un exemple, *an example.*

le fin d'un affaire, *the main or chief part of a business.*

un foret, *a drill.*

le foudre de Jupiter, *Jupiter's thunder-bolt.*

## FEMININE.

les aigles Romaines, *the Roman eagles.*

une aire, *a threshing floor.*

une aune, *an ell.*

une barbe, *a beard.*

une coche, *a sow.*

une cornette, *a woman's coronet.*

une couple, *a pair (two things together.)*

une cravate, *a cravat or neckcloth.*

des délices, *delights.*

Echo, *the nymph Echo.*

une espace, *a space used by printers.*

une enseigne, *a post sign.*

une exemple, *a copy for writing.*

la fin d'une affaire, *the end of a business.*

une forêt, *a forest.*

la foudre, *thunder.*

## FRENCH TONGUE.

### MASCULINE.

uu garde, *one of the guards.*  
 le greffe, *the rolls.*  
 un livre, *a book.*  
 le gueule, *the gules (in heraldry.)*  
 un hale, *dry weather.*  
 un quatrième, *the fourth part of something.*  
 un lis, *a lily.*  
 un loutre, *a sort of hat.*  
 un manœuvre, *a labourer.*  
  
 un manche, *a handle.*  
 un mémoire, *a bill, a memorandum.*  
 un mestre de camp, *a colonel of horse.*  
  
 un mode, *a mood, (philosophical term.)*  
 un moule, *a mould.*  
 un mousse, *a cabin boy.*  
 un navire, *a ship.*  
  
 un office, *an office for business.*  
 le grand œuvre, *the philosopher's stone.*  
 un page, *a young page.*  
 un palme, *a hand's breadth.*  
  
 un parallèle, *a comparison.*  
 un pendule, *a pendulum.*  
  
 un période, *a period, (a course of time.)*  
 personne, *nobody, any body.*  
 un pique, *a spade (at cards.)*  
 un pivoine, *a gnat-snapper.*

### FEMININE.

une garde, *a guard; also a sick person's nurse.*  
 une greffe, *a slip of a tree.*  
 une livre, *a pound.*  
 la gueule, *the mouth of a dog, cat, lion, &c.*  
 une halle, *a market hall.*  
 une quatrième, *a sequence of four cards at piquet.*  
 la Lis, *a river in Flanders.*  
 une loutre, *an otter.*  
 la manœuvre, *the tackling of a ship, and the working of it.*  
 une manche, *a sleeve.*  
 la mémoire, *memory.*  
 le mestre de camp, *the first company of a regiment of horse.*  
 une mode, *a fashion.*  
 une moule, *a muscle.*  
 de la mousse, *moss.*  
 la navire, *the ship (a term of heraldry.)*  
 une office, *a buttry.*  
 une œuvre de piété, *a work of piety.*  
 une page, *a page of a book.*  
 une palme, *a branch of a palm-tree.*  
 une parallèle, *a parallel line.*  
 une pendule, *a pendulum clock.*  
 une période, *a period (in discourse.)*  
 une personne, *a person.*  
 une pique, *a pike.*  
 une pivoine, *a piony.*

## MASCULINE.

un poêle, *a stove, a pell.*  
 un plane, *a plane-tree.*  
 un poste, *a post, an employ-  
 ment.*  
 le pource, *the purples.*  
 d'un beau pourpre, *of a fine  
 purple colour.*  
 le réclame, *the sign to call  
 back a hawk.*  
 un satyre, *a satyr, a heathen  
 demi-god.*  
 un somme, *a sleep, a nap.*  
 un souris, *a smile.*  
 un temple, *a church.*  
 un triomphe, *a triumph.*  
 un trompette, *a trumpeter.*  
 un tour, *a turn, a trick.*  
 un teneur de livres, *a book-  
 keeper.*  
 un vase, *a jar, a vessel, a vase.*  
 un vigogne, *a hat made of a  
 sort of Spanish wool.*  
 un voile, *a veil.*

## FEMININE.

une poêle, *a frying-pan.*  
 une plane, *a plane.*  
 la poste, *post, the post-office.*  
 la pourpre, *the purple mark  
 of regality, &c.*  
 de la pourpre Tyrienne :  
*Tyrian purple.*  
 la réclame, *the catch word.*  
 une satire, *a satire (in poe-  
 try.)*  
 une somme, *a sum.*  
 une souris, *a mouse.*  
 la temple, *the temple.*  
 une triomphe, *trump at cards.*  
 une trompette, *a trumpet.*  
 une tour, *a tower.*  
 la teneur d'un acte, *the tenor  
 or contents of a writing.*  
 la vase, *the bottom of the sea.*  
 de la vigogne, *a sort of Span-  
 ish wool.*  
 une voile, *a sail.*

*The following Substantives are*

## Rather MASCULINE.

amour, *love.*  
 amours, *cupids.*  
 bronze, *cast copper.*  
 cloaque, *common sewer or  
 sink.*  
 Comté, *county.*  
 duché, *duchy.*  
 épisode, *episode.*  
 épithalame, *epithalamium.*

## Rather FEMININE.

absinthe, *wormwood.*  
 amours, *passions, intrigues.*  
 alcove, *alcove.*  
 caque, *cag or barrel.*  
 épitase, *epitasis.*  
 épitaphe, *epitaph.*  
 hymne,\* *hymn.*  
 énigme, *a riddle.*  
 idylle, *idyl.*  
 { anagramme, *an anagram.*  
 { épigramme, *an epigram.*

\* According to the French Academy, this word is feminine when we speak of hymns in churches, otherwise it is masculine.

Rather MASCULINE.  
 amulette, *an amulet*.  
 sphinx, *sphinx*.  
 orgue, *an organ*.  
 holocauste, *burnt sacrifice*.  
 horoscope, *horoscope*.

Rather FEMININE.  
 orgues,\* *organs*.  
 parallaxe, *parallax*.  
 thériaque, *treacle*.  
 horloge, *a clock*.  
 équivoque, *an equivocation*.

\* This word is masculine in the singular, according to the *French Academy*.

### CHAPTER III.

#### *Of the formation of the Feminine Gender of Adjectives.*

##### GENERAL RULE.

ADJECTIVES take an *e* mute for the formation of their feminine ; as, aimé, *aimée* ; écrit, *écrite* ; constant, *constante*.† Adjectives ending with an *e* mute have no variation in their feminine, without exception, as, admirable, m. *admirable*, f. *amiable*, m. *aimable*, f.

Other adjectives form their feminine according to their termination, as in the following *Concise Table*.

Adjectives ending	form their Feminine
in	in
c,	1 che
f,	ve,
g,	gue,
el, eil, il, ol, ul,	2 elle, eille, ile, olle, ulle,
on,	onne,
ien,	ienne,
eur, }	3 eure, euse,
eux, }	
as, es, os,	4 asse, esse, osse,
ous,	oute,
et, ot,	5 ette, otte,

##### EXCEPTIONS.

† *Favori, favorites* ; *benin, benigne* ; *malin, maligne* ; *frain, fraîche* ; *épais, épaisse*.



*eau,*  
*ou,*  
*oux,*  
*aux,*

*elle,*  
*olle,*  
6 *ouce,*  
*ausse.*

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. Grec, *Grecque*; Turc, *Turque*; public, *publique*; caduc, *caduque*.
2. Civil, *civile*; subtil, *subtile*; puéril, *puérile*.
3. Vieux, *vieille*; antérieur, postérieur, citérieur, ultérieur, intérieur, extérieur, majeur, mineur, supérieur, inférieur, meilleur, follow the general rule.
4. Ras, *rase*; clos, *close*.
5. Secret, *Secrète*; complet, *complète*; discret, *discrète*; inquiet, *inquiète*; replet, *replète*; dévot, *dévot*.
6. Jaloux, *jalouse*; roux, *rousse*.

N.B. The FRENCH ACADEMY write, first, cru, *raw*; nu, *naked*; vert, *green*; and not crud, nud, verd. Secondly, bénit, and béni, *blessed, holy*, both follow the general rule. Thirdly, tors, and not tort, *twisted, wrong*. The adjective makes in its feminine both *torte* and *torse*; for we say, *une colonne torse, de la soie torse*; and popularly we say, *une jambe tort, une bouche torte, une gueule torte*.

## CHAPTER IV.

*Of the formation of Plural Nouns.*

## GENERAL RULE.

NOUNS in general form their plural by adding an *s* to the singular; as, *homme, hommes*.\*

POLYSYLLABLES ending in *nt*, in the singular, form their plural by changing the final *t* into *s*; as, *enfant, enfans*; but monosyllables follow the general rule.

NOUNS ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, are alike in both numbers.

NOUNS ending in *ail* or *al* change *ail* and *al* into *aux*, in the plural: as, *travail, travaux*; *cheval, chevaux*.†

NOUNS ending in *au*, *eu*, *eau*, *ieu*, and *ou*, have their plural by adding an *x* to their singular.‡

## EXCEPTIONS.

\* *Tout* makes *tous*.

† *Ail, aux*.

*Bal, carnaval, local, pal, régal*, and proper names ending in *al*, likewise these nouns, *attirail, camail, détail, éventail, mail, épouvantail, gouvernail, portail, serail*, follow the general rule.

‡ *Bleu, trou, clou, cou, matou, lion, bœuf, fou*, and *loup garou* follow the general rule.

N. B. Œil makes *yeux* ; aïeul, *aïeux* ! gentilhomme, *gentilshommes* ; monsieur, *messieurs* ; madame *mesdames* ; mounseigneur, *messieurs* ; mon, *mes* ; ton, *tes* ; son, *ses* ; notre, *nos* ; votre, *vos* ; ciel, *heaven*, makes *cieux*. However, we say *des ciels* de lit ; testers of beds ; *les ciels* d'un tableau, *the top of a picture* ; *des arcs-en ciel*, rainbow.

## CHAPTER V.

### *On the Declension of Nouns.*

As I have hinted before, the *nominative* of nouns is like the *accusative*, the *genitive* is like the *ablative* ; so we shall call the *nominative* the *first case*, the *genitive* the *second case*, and the *dative* the *third case*.

✓ Nouns substantive of the *masculine* gender, and beginning with a *consonant* are thus declined.

#### SINGULAR.

1st. le livre, *the book*.

2d. du livre, *of or from the book*.

3d. au livre, *to the book*.

#### PLURAL.

les livres, *the books*.

des livres, *of or from the books*.

aux livres, *to the books*.

#### SINGULAR.

1st. la table, *the table*.

2d. de la table, *of or from the table*.

3d. à la table, *to the table*.

#### PLURAL.

les tables, *the tables*.

des tables, *of or from the tables*.

aux tables, *to the tables*.

Nouns substantive of *either* gender beginning with a *vowel*, or an *h* mute, are thus declined :

## SINGULAR.

- 1st. l'homme, *the man*.  
 2d. de l'homme, *of or from the man*.  
 3d. à l'homme, *to the man*.

## PLURAL.

- les hommes, *the men*.  
 des hommes, *of or from the men*.  
 aux hommes, *to the men*.

Nouns substantive of the *masculine* gender, and beginning with a *consonant*, are thus declined with the *indefinite* article :

## SINGULAR.

- 1st. un miroir, *a looking-glass*.  
 2d. d'un miroir, *of or from a looking-glass*.  
 3d. à un miroir, *to a looking-glass*.

## PLURAL.

- des miroirs, *some looking-glasses*.  
 de miroirs, *of or from some looking-glasses*.  
 à des miroirs, *to some looking-glasses*.

Nouns substantive of the *masculine* gender, and beginning with a *vowel*, or an *h* mute, are thus declined :

## SINGULAR.

- 1st. un accident, *an accident*.  
 2d. d'un accident, *of or from an accident*.  
 3d. à un accident, *to an accident*.

## PLURAL.

- des accidens, *some accidents*.  
 d'accidens, *of or from accidents*.  
 à des accidens, *to some accidents*.

Nouns substantive of the *feminine* gender, and beginning with a *consonant*, thus :

## SINGULAR.

- 1st. une peine, *a pain*.  
 2d. d'une peine, *of or from a pain*.  
 3d. à une peine, *to a pain*.

PLURAL.

des peines, *some pains.*  
de peines, *of or from some pains.*  
à des peines, *to some pains.*

Nouns substantive, beginning with a *vowel*, or an *h* mute and of the *feminine* gender, thus :

SINGULAR.

1st. une aiguille, *a needle.*  
2d. d'une aiguille, *of or from a needle.*  
3d. à une aiguille, *to a needle.*

PLURAL.

des aiguilles, *some needles.*  
d'aiguilles, *of or from some needles.*  
à des aiguille, *to some needles.*

But in the *plural* number, when a noun substantive of *either* gender is preceded by an *adjective*, beginning with a *consonant*, it is thus declined :

PLURAL.

1st. de malheureux accidens, *some unhappy accidents.*  
2d. de malheureux accidens, *of some unhappy accidents.*  
3d. à de malheureux accidens, *to some unhappy accidents.*

Before an *adjective* beginning with a *vowel* or an *h* mute, thus :

1st. d'indignes amis, *some unworthy friends.*  
2d. d'indignes amis, *of or from some unworthy friends.*  
3d. à d'indignes amis, *to some unworthy friends.*

Proper names of *men*, *women*, *cities*, *villages*, &c. take no articles before them ; but in the second and third cases they take the preposition *de* and *a* thus :

1st. Jean, *John.*  
2d. de Jean, *of or from John*  
3d. à Jean, *to John.*

When they begin with a *vowel*, or an *h* mute, thus :

1st. Alexandre, *Alexander.*  
2d. d'Alexandre, *of or from Alexander.*  
3d. à Alexandre, *to Alexander.*

**Observe ;** *Some* in English, expressed or understood before a noun taken in a partitive sense, is expressed in French by *du, de la, de l'* for the *singular*, and *des* for the *plural*, or *de* for both genders and numbers in the following manner :

When the word of the masculine gender begins with a *consonant*, thus :

- 1st. *du sel, some salt.*
- 2d. *de sel, of or from some salt.*
- 3d. *à du sel, to some salt.*

When the word, either masculine or feminine, begins with a *vowel*, or *h* mute, thus :

- 1st. *de l'argent, some money.*
- 2d. *d'argent, of or from some money.*
- 3d. *à de l'argent, to some money.*

- 1st. *de l'huile, some oil.*
- 2d. *d'huile, of or from some oil.*
- 3d. *à de l'huile, to some oil.*

When the noun is feminine, thus :

- 1st. *de la salade, some sallad.*
- 2d. *de salade, of or from some sallad.*
- 3d. *à de la salade, to some sallad.*

Before an adjective of either gender or number, thus :

- 1st. *du bon pain, some good bread.*
- 2d. *de bon pain, of or from some good bread.*
- 3d. *à de bon pain, to some good bread.*

The plural is the same as the plural of the definite article.

## CHAPTER VI.

*Of Pronouns.*

THE construction of the pronoun being the most difficult part of our language, I shall here, for perspicuity's sake, nearly follow the denomination which other grammarians have given them, though many of the pronouns may be looked upon as adjectives.

## SECTION I.

*Of Personal Pronouns.*

They are two-fold : conjunctive and disjunctive. The first generally precede the verb ; the second commonly follow the verb. The first take neither article nor preposition before them ; the second take, in their second case, the preposition *de*, and in their third case the preposition *à*.

*The Conjunctive Pronouns.*

All nouns and pronouns, as we have hinted before, have three cases : the first answering to the Nominative and Accusative ; the second to the Genitive and Ablative ; the third to the Dative. The three cases of the conjunctive personal pronouns alone, and the three cases of the third person indeterminate, when they take no preposition before them, do not answer the three cases of other nouns ; therefore we shall call the first the Nominative case, the second the Dative case, and the third the Accusative case.

## The First Person.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. Je, I,  
Dat. me, to me,  
Acc. me, me.

## PLURAL.

Nom. nous, we,  
Dat. nous, to us,  
Acc. nous, us.

## The Second Person.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. tu, <i>thou</i> ,	Nom. vous, <i>you</i> ,
Dat. te, <i>to thee</i> ,	Dat. vous, <i>to you</i> ,
Acc. te, <i>thee</i> .	Acc. vous, <i>you</i> .

## The Third Person Masculine.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. il, <i>he or it</i> ,	Nom. ils, <i>they</i>
Dat. lui, <i>to him, or to it</i> ,	Dat. leur, <i>to them</i> ,
Acc. le, <i>him or it</i> .	Acc. les, <i>them</i> .

## The Third Person Feminine.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. elle, <i>she or it</i> ,	Nom. elles, <i>they</i> ,
Dat. lui, <i>to her or to it</i> ,	Dat. leur, <i>to them</i> ,
Acc. la, <i>her or it</i> .	Acc. les, <i>them</i> .

## The Third Person Indeterminate.

Nom. on, *one, they, or people*.  
 Dat. se, *to one's self, to himself, to herself, to itself, to themselves, or to one another*.  
 Acc. se, *one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves, or one another*.

## The Third Person supplying and governed.

1st. le, *it, so*.  
 2d. en, *of him, of her, of it, some of them, from them, by them, with them*.  
 3d. y, *to it, there, therein, in it, in them, about it, or them*.

## The Disjunctive Pronouns.

## The First Person.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1st. moi, <i>I, me</i> ,	1st. nous, <i>we, us</i> ,
2d. de moi, <i>of or from me</i> ,	2d. de nous, <i>of or from us</i> ,
3d. à moi, <i>to me</i> .	3d. à nous, <i>to us</i> .

The Second Person.

1st. toi, <i>thou, thee,</i>	1st. vous, <i>you,</i>
2d. de toi, <i>of or from thee,</i>	2d. de vous, <i>of or from you,</i>
3d. à toi, <i>to thee.</i>	3d. à vous, <i>vous, to you.</i>

The Third Person Masculine.

1st. lui, <i>him, he or it,</i>	1st. eux, <i>they, them,</i>
2d. de lui, <i>of or from him, or it,</i>	2d. d'eux, <i>of or from them,</i>
3d. à lui, <i>to him or it.</i>	3d. à eux, <i>leur, to them.</i>

The Third Person Feminine.

1st. elle, <i>she, her, or it,</i>	1st. elles, <i>they, them,</i>
2d. d'elle, <i>of or from her, or it,</i>	2d. d'elles, <i>of or from them,</i>
3d. à elle, <i>lui, to her, or it.</i>	3d. à elles, <i>leur, to them.</i>

The Third Person Indeterminate.

1st. soi, <i>one's self, himself, herself, or itself.</i>
2d. de soi, <i>of or from one's self, himself, herself, or itself.</i>
3d. à soi, <i>to one's self, himself, or itself.</i>

*Note.* Their compounds have the same cases as their simples ; as,

moi-même, <i>myself,</i>	nous-mêmes, <i>ourselves,</i>
toi-même, <i>thyself,</i>	vous-mêmes, <i>} yourselves,</i>
lui-même, <i>himself,</i>	
elle-même, <i>herself,</i>	eux-mêmes, <i>} themselves.</i>
soi-même, <i>one's self,</i>	elles-mêmes, <i>} themselves.</i>

SECTION II.

Of Possessive Pronouns.

SING.		PLUR.	
MASC.	FEM.		
1st. mon,	ma,	mes,	<i>my,</i>
2d. de mon,	de ma,	de mes, <i>of or from my,</i>	
3d. à mon,	à ma,	à mes,	<i>to my.</i>

After the same manner are declined,

ton, ta, tes, *thy,*  
 son, sa, ses, *his, or her, its,*  
 notre, nos, *our ;* votre, vos, *your ;* leur, leurs, *their.*



Observe, first, these conjunctive pronouns come always before a noun to which they are joined.

Observe secondly, the following absolute possessive pronouns, being used by themselves, are declined in the definite article, thus :

SING.			PLUR.	
MASC.	FEM.		MASC.	
1st. le mien, la mienne, les,		} miens, {		{ mine,
2d. du mien, de la mienne, des,				
3d. au mien, à la mienne, aux,				
			F. miennes,	{ of mine,
				{ to mine.

After the same manner are declined,

le tien, la tienne, les tiens les, tiennes, *thine*,  
 le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes, *his or her's*,  
 le nôtre, la nôtre, les nôtres, *our's*,  
 le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres, *your's*,  
 le leur, la leur, les leurs, *their's*.

### SECTION III.

#### *Of Demonstrative Pronouns.*

SING.	SING.
MASC.	FEM.
1st. ce, or cet before a vowel,	cette, <i>this or that</i> ,
2d. de ce, or de cet,	de cette, <i>of or from this or that</i> ,
3d. à ce or à cet	à cette, <i>to this or that</i> .

PLUR.	
M. and F.	
1st. ces,	<i>these or those</i> ,
2d. de ces,	<i>of or from these or those</i> ,
3d. à ces,	<i>to these or those</i> .

After the same manner is declined,

SING. M.	F.	PLUR. M.	F.
celui,	celle, <i>he or she</i> ;	ceux,	celles, <i>those</i> .

**N. B.** The foregoing demonstrative pronouns are used in speaking of persons or things. *Ceci*, and *cela* are used in speaking of things only.

1st. <i>ceci, this,</i>	<i>cela, that,</i>
2d. <i>de ceci of or from this,</i>	<i>de cela, of or from that,</i>
3d. <i>à ceci, to this,</i>	<i>à cela, to that.</i>

## SECTION IV.

*Of Relative Pronouns.*

MOST pronouns in French have a relative signification : but those which are properly so called are the following :

## SING. and PLUR.

1st. qui, que,	<i>who, whom, or which,</i>
2d. de qui, or dont,	<i>of whom or whose.</i>
1st. quoi, cequi, ceque,	<i>what,</i>
2d. de quoi, or dont,	<i>of what or which,</i>
3d. à quoi,	<i>to what.</i>

## SING. MASC. SING. FEM.

1st. lequel,	laquelle, <i>which,</i>
2d. duquel,	de la quelle, <i>of which, or whose,</i>
3d. auquel,	à laquelle, <i>to which.</i>

## PLUR. MASC. PLUR. FEM.

1st. lesquels,	lesquelles, <i>which,</i>
2d. desquels,	desquelles, <i>of which or whose,</i>
3d. auxquels,	auxquelles, <i>to which.</i>

## SECTION V.

*Of Interrogative Pronouns.*

1st. qui, <i>who or whom,</i>	que <i>what,</i>
2d. de qui, <i>of or from whom,</i>	de quoi, <i>of or from what,</i>
3d. à qui, <i>to whom,</i>	à quoi, <i>to what.</i>

After the same manner is declined :

SING. M. F.	PLUR. M. F.
quel, quelle,	quels, quelles, <i>what,</i>

This pronoun is always followed by a substantive.

## SING. MASC. SING. FEM.

1st. lequel,	laquelle, <i>which,</i>
2d. duquel,	de laquelle, <i>of or from which,</i>
3d. auquel,	à laquelle, <i>to which.</i>

PLUR. MASC.	PLUR. FEM.
1st. lesquels,	lesquelles, <i>which</i> ,
2d. desquels,	desquelles, <i>of or from which</i> ,
3d. auxquels,	auxquelles, <i>to which</i> .

## SECTION VI.

*Of Indefinite Pronouns.*

SING.	PLUR.
MASC. and FEM.	MASC. and FEM.
1st. quelque,	quelques, <i>some</i> ,
2d. de quelque,	de quelques, <i>of or from some</i> ,
3d. à quelque,	à quelques, <i>to some</i> .

After the same manner are declined,  
 quelqu'un, quelqu'une, quelques-uns, quelques-unes.  
*some, somebody.*  
 chaque, chacun, chacune, *every, each*.  
 pas un, aucun, nul, personne, *nobody*.  
 rien, *nothing* : peu, *little* : plusieurs, beaucoup, *many*.

SING. MASC.	SING. FEM.
1st. l'un l'autre,	l'une l'autre, <i>one another</i> .
2d. l'un de l'autre,	l'une de l'autre, <i>of one another</i> .
3d. l'un à l'autre,	l'une à l'autre, <i>to one another</i> .

PLUR. MASC.	PLUR. FEM.
les uns les autres,	les unes les autres, <i>one another</i> .
les uns des autres,	les unes des autres, <i>of one ano</i> .
les uns aux autres,	les unes aux autres, <i>to one ano</i> .

SING. MASC.	SING. FEM.
1st. l'un & l'autre,	l'une & l'autre, <i>both</i> .
2d. de l'un & de l'autre,	de l'une & de l'autre, <i>of both</i> .
3d. à l'un & à l'autre,	à l'une & à l'autre, <i>to both</i>

PLUR. MASC.	PLUR. FEM.
les uns & les autres,	les unes & les autres, <i>both</i> .
des uns & des autres,	des unes & des autres, <i>of both</i> .
aux uns & aux autres,	aux unes & aux autres, <i>to both</i> .

SING. MASC.	SING. FEM.
1st. l'un ou l'autre,	l'une ou l'autre, <i>either</i> .
2d. de l'un ou de l'autre,	de l'une ou de l'autre, <i>of either</i> .
3d. à l'un ou à l'autre,	à l'une ou à l'autre, <i>to either</i> .

## PLUR. MASC.

les uns ou les autres,  
des uns ou des autres,  
aux uns ou aux autres,

## PLUR. FEM.

les unes ou les autres, *either*.  
des unes ou des autres, *of either*.  
aux unes ou aux autres, *to either*.

## SING. MASC.

1st. ni l'un ni l'autre,

## SING. FEM.

ni l'une ni l'autre, *neither*.

2d. ni de l'un ni de l'autre, ni de l'une ni de l'autre, *of neith*.

3d. ni à l'un ni à l'autre, ni à l'une ni à l'autre, *to neither*.

## PLUR. MASC.

ni les uns ni les autres,

## PLUR. FEM.

ni les unes ni les autres, *neither*.

ni des uns ni des autres, ni des unes ni des autres, *of nei*.

ni aux uns ni aux autres, ni aux unes ni aux autres, *to nei*.

## CHAPTER VII.

## PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

*Of Verbs.*

1. All personal verbs are conjugated by the help of these pronouns *je, tu, il, or elle*, for the singular, and *nous, vous, ils, or elles*, for the plural.

2. All reflected verbs are conjugated with these pronouns, *je me, tu te, il se, or elle se ; nous nous, vous vous, il se, or elle se ; e*, in *me, te, se*, is omitted, and an apostrophe is put in its place, when the following word begins with a vowel.

3. All active verbs may become reflected, by putting *se* before the infinitive, when the action may return upon the agent that produces it.

4. Reflected verbs, in a reciprocal sense, are used in the plural only.

5. All neuter and active verbs are conjugated in their compound tenses by the help of the auxiliary *avoir*, likewise the verb *être*.

6. Reflective and reciprocal verbs are always conjugated in their compound tenses by the help of *être* ; also these following verbs, *aller, aborder, arriver, accourir, décider, descendre, entrer, monter, mourir, naître, partir*

*retourner, sortir, tomber, venir*, and their derivatives, except when some of them are used actively.

7. In all the verbs of the first conjugation, wherein an *e* is preceded by a *g*, that *e* is kept through all tenses and moods, as *manger*, to eat; *mangeant*, eating.

8. The compound regular and irregular verbs commonly follow the conjugation of the simple, from which they are derived.

9. The termination of the tenses, B, d, f, (*see page 88*) is the same in all verbs, both regular and irregular.

10. Custom requires that an *s* should be added to the second person of the imperative mood, in verbs of the first conjugation, when they are followed by the participles *en*, and *y*; as, *disposes-en*; *penses-y*; *vas-y*; the latter take a *t*, when it is followed by *en*, as, *va-t-en*.

Conjugation. Of the auxiliary verb AVOIR, *to have*.  
INFINITIVE MOOD.

AVOIR, *to have*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Ayant, *having*.

| Eu, *had*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

J'ai, *I have*,  
tu as, *thou hast*,  
il\* a, *he has*.

| Nous avons, *we have*,  
vous avez, *ye have*,  
ils ont, *they have*.

Imperfect.

J'avais, *I had*,  
tu avais, *thou hadst*,  
il avait, *he had*.

| Nous avions, *we had*,  
vous aviez, *ye had*,  
ils avaient, *they had*.

Preterperfect.

J'eus, *I had*,  
tu eus, *thou hadst*,  
il eut, *he had*.

| Nous eûmes, *we had*,  
vous eûtes, *ye had*,  
ils eurent, *they had*.

\* Or *elle*, *she*, in the third person singular of all verbs.

† Or *elles* for the feminine, in all verbs in the third person plural.

Future.

J'aurai, <i>I shall or will</i>	} have.	Nous aurons, <i>we shall</i>	} have.
tu auras, <i>thou shalt</i>		vous aurez, <i>ye shall</i>	
il aura, <i>he shall</i>		ils auront, <i>they shall</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Aye, *have thou,*  
qu'il ait, *let him have,*  
qu'elle ait, *let her have.*

PLURAL.

Ayons, *let us have,*  
ayez, *have ye, [them have.*  
qu'ils or qu'elles aient, *let*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.	} have.	que PLURAL.	} have.
J'aye, <i>that I may</i>		Nous ayons, <i>we may</i>	
tu ayes, <i>thou mayest</i>		vous ayez, <i>ye may</i>	
il ait, <i>he may</i>		ils aient, <i>they may</i>	

Imperfect.

SINGULAR.

J'aurais, *I should\**  
tu aurais, *thou shouldst*  
il aurait, *he should*

PLURAL.

Nous aurions, *we sh.*  
vous auriez, *ye sh.*  
ils auraient, *they sh.*

que Preterperfect.

J'eusse, <i>that I might†</i>	} have.	Nous eussions, <i>we mig.</i>	} have.
tu eusses, <i>thou mightest</i>		vous eussiez, <i>ye might</i>	
il eût, <i>he might</i>		ils eussent, <i>they might</i>	

Now to have the compound tenses, you need only add after each person the participle past, *eu* for the French and *had* for the English, through all the tenses and moods; as *j'ai eu* I have had, and so on.

Conjugation

Of the auxiliary verb ETRE, *to be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

ETRE, *to be.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Etant, *being.*

PAST.

| Eté, *been.*

\* Or *I could, would, or might have.*

† Or *I had, or could, would, or should have.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je suis, *I am*,  
tu es, *thou art*,  
il est, *he is*.

## PLURAL.

Nous sommes, *we are*,  
vous êtes, *ye are*,  
ils sont, *they are*.

## Imperfect.

J'étais, *I was*,  
tu étais, *thou wast*,  
il était, *he was*.

Nous étions, *we were*,  
vous étiez, *ye were*,  
ils étaient, *they were*.

## Preterperfect.

## SINGULAR.

Je fus, *I was*,  
tu fus, *thou wast*,  
il fut, *he was*.

## PLURAL.

Nous fûmes, *we were*,  
vous fûtes, *ye were*,  
ils furent, *they were*.

## Future.

Je serai, *I shall or will*  
tu seras, *thou shalt*  
il sera, *he shall* } &

Nous serons, *we shall*  
vous serez, *ye shall*  
ils seront, *they shall* } &

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Sois, *be thou*,  
qu'il soit, *let him be*,  
qu'elle soit, *let her be*.

## PLURAL.

Soyons, *let us be*,  
soyez, *be ye*, [them be.  
qu'ils or qu'elles soient, *let*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.  
Je sois, *that I may*  
tu sois, *thou mayest*  
il soit, *he may* } &

que PLURAL.  
Nous soyons, *we may*  
vous soyez, *ye may*  
ils soient, *they may* } &

## Imperfect.

Je serais, *I should*  
tu serais, *thou shouldst*  
il serait, *he should* } &

Nous serions, *we should*  
vous seriez, *ye should*  
ils seraient, *they should* } &

que

Preterperfect.

Je fusse, <i>that I might</i>	} &	Nous fussions, <i>we might</i>	} &
tu fusses, <i>thou might</i>		vous fussiez, <i>ye might</i>	
il fut, <i>he might</i>		ils fussent, <i>they might</i>	

The compound tenses of this verb are formed by the help of the auxiliary verb *avoir*, through all its tenses and moods by adding after each person and tense *été*, for the French, and *been* for the English, as, *j'ai été*, I have been, &c. *j'avais été*, I had been, &c. and so on, &c.

Observe, 1st, the compound tenses of all other verbs, both regular and irregular, are formed by the help of these two auxiliary verbs, by adding the participle past of the verb you are conjugating, after each tense and person of the auxiliary verb. For example, to find all the compound tenses of the verb *parler*, to speak, its participle past being *parlé*, you need only put it after the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*.

Observe, 2dly, those verbs that are conjugated by the help of *être*, are only compounded of the simple of that auxiliary verb; that is to say, the compound of the verb *être* does not serve for the compound of others; whereas the compound of the verb *avoir* may serve, but seldom, for the compound of others: consequently, verbs conjugated by the help of *avoir* are sometimes compounded of the compound, and those conjugated by the help of *être* are only compounded of its simple tenses. The reason of it may be, because the compound tenses of the verb *être* are formed by the help of the verb *avoir*, which reflective, and some neuter verbs will not admit of. Except from this observation, verbs used passively, which are conjugated by the help of *être* in all its tenses, both simple and compound.

N. B. What verbs are conjugated by the help of *avoir* or the help of *être*,—See *Preliminary Observations*, p. 81. Art 5 and 6.

### *Conjugation of Regular Verbs.*

It is very indifferent how many conjugations we admit. Some admit four, others ten, and even Father Buffier reckons *twelve*. There may be reckoned six conjugations:



## The

1st.	<i>er</i>	} as {	aimer, <i>to love.</i>
2d.	<i>ir</i>		punir, <i>to punish.</i>
3d.	<i>avoir</i>		devoir, <i>to owe.</i>
4th.	<i>re</i> preceded by <i>d</i>		vendre, <i>to sell.</i>
5th.	<i>re</i> preceded by <i>ai</i>		traduire, <i>to translate.</i>
6th.	<i>re</i> preceded by <i>ind</i>		joindre, <i>to join.</i>

### TERMINATIONS of the PRIMITIVE TENSES, of the REGULAR VERBS.

	Infinitive.	Participle Present.	Participle Passive	Present of the Indic. M. F.	Preterperfect of the Indic.	
1st. conj.	aim-	<i>er</i>	<i>-ant</i>	<i>-é ée</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-ai</i>
2d. conj.	pun-	<i>ir</i>	<i>-issant</i>	<i>-i ie</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>-is</i>
3d. conj.	d-	<i>avoir</i>	<i>-evant</i>	<i>-u ue</i>	<i>-ais</i>	<i>-us</i>
4th. conj.	vend-	<i>re</i>	<i>-ant</i>	<i>-u ue</i>	<i>-s</i>	<i>-is</i>
5th. conj.	trad-	<i>uire</i>	<i>-uisant</i>	<i>-uit uite</i>	<i>-ais</i>	<i>-uisis</i>
6th. conj.	jo-	<i>indre</i>	<i>-ignant</i>	<i>-int inte</i>	<i>-ins</i>	<i>-ignis</i>

### Unvariable TERMINATIONS in all the CONJUGA- TIONS.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.		Present Tense.		PLURAL.	
A	Variable		<i>-ons</i>	<i>-ez</i>	<i>-ent.</i>
Imperfect.					
B	<i>-ais -ais</i>	<i>-ait</i>	<i>-ions</i>	<i>-iez</i>	<i>-aient.</i>
Preterperfect.					
C	1. } <i>-ai -as</i>	<i>-a</i>	<i>-âmes</i>	<i>-âtes</i>	<i>-érent</i>
	2. } <i>-is -is</i>	<i>-it</i>	<i>-îtes</i>	<i>-îtes</i>	<i>-irent</i>
	3. } <i>-us -us</i>	<i>-ut</i>	<i>-ûmes</i>	<i>-ûtes</i>	<i>-ûrent</i>
	4. } <i>-ins -ins</i>	<i>-int</i>	<i>-înmes</i>	<i>-întes</i>	<i>-îrent</i>

#### Future.

D	<i>-rai</i>	<i>-ras</i>	<i>-ra</i>	<i>-rons</i>	<i>-rez</i>	<i>-ront</i>
---	-------------	-------------	------------	--------------	-------------	--------------

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

##### Present Tense.

E	<i>-e</i>	<i>-es</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-ions</i>	<i>-iez</i>	<i>-ent</i>
---	-----------	------------	-----------	--------------	-------------	-------------

##### Imperfect.

F	<i>-rais</i>	<i>-rais</i>	<i>-rait</i>	<i>-rions</i>	<i>-riez</i>	<i>-raient.</i>
---	--------------	--------------	--------------	---------------	--------------	-----------------

		Preterperfect.					
G	1.	-asse	-asses	-ât	-assions	-assiez	-assent
	2.	-isse	-isses	-ît	-issions	-issiez	-issent
	3.	-usse	-usses	-ût	-ussions	-ussiez	-ussent
	4.	-insse	-inssez	-înt	-inssions	-inssiez	-inssent

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Participle Present.

H. -ant

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

K Variable. -ons -ez ent

First Conjugation.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

AIM-ER to love.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Aim-ant, *loving*.

PAST.

| Aim-é, *loved*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

J'aime, *I love*,\*  
tu aimes, *thou lovest*,  
il aime, *he loves*.

PLURAL.

Nous aimons, *we love*,  
vous aimez, *ye love*,  
ils aiment, *they love*.

Imperfect.

J'aimais, *I did love*,†  
tu aimais, *thou didst love*,  
il aimait, *he did love*.

Nous aimions, *we did love*,  
vous aimiez, *ye did love*,  
ils aimaient, *they did love*.

Preterperfect.

J'aimai, *I loved*,  
tu aimas, *thou lovedst*,  
il aima, *he loved*.

Nous aimâmes, *we loved*,  
vous aimâtes, *ye loved*,  
ils aimèrent, *they loved*.

\* Or, *I do love, I am loving*, which is to be observed in all other verbs.  
† Or, *I was loving, or, I was used to love, or, I used to love*. It is the same in all other verbs.

## Future.

J'aimerai, <i>I shall or will love,</i>	Nous aimerons, <i>we shall l.</i>
tu aimeras, <i>thou shalt love,</i>	vous aimerez, <i>ye shall love,</i>
il aimera, <i>he shall love.</i>	ils aimeront, <i>they shall love.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Aime, *love thou,\**  
 qu'il aime, *let him love,*  
 qu'elle aime, *let her love.*

## PLURAL.

Aimons, *let us love,*  
 aimez, *love ye,*  
 qu'ils aiment, *let them love.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.	que PLURAL.
J'aime, <i>that I may love,</i>	Nous aimions, <i>we may love,</i>
tu aimes, <i>thou mayest love,</i>	vous aimiez, <i>ye may love,</i>
il aime, <i>he may love.</i>	ils aiment, <i>they may love.</i>

## Imperfect.

## SINGULAR.

J'aimerais, *I should love,*  
 tu aimerais, *thou sh. love,*  
 il aimerait, *he sh. love.*

## PLURAL.

Nous aimerions, *we sh. love,*  
 vous aimeriez, *ye sh. love,*  
 ils aimeraient, *they sh. love.*

## Preterperfect.

que	
J'aimasse, <i>that I might l.</i>	Nous aimassions, <i>we m. love,</i>
tu aimasses, <i>thou might l.</i>	vous aimassiez, <i>ye m. love,</i>
il aimât, <i>he might love.</i>	ils aimassent, <i>they might l.</i>

## Second Conjugation.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PUN-IR, *to punish.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Pun-issant, *punishing.*

## PAST.

Pun-i, *punished.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je punis, *I punish,*  
 tu punis, *thou punishest,*  
 il punit, *he punishes.*

## PLURAL.

Nous punissons, *we punish,*  
 vous punissez, *ye punish,*  
 ils punissent, *they punish.*

\* Or, *doest thou love;* and likewise in all other verbs.

# FRENCH TONGUE.

## Imperfect.

Je punissais, <i>I did punish,</i>	Nous punissions, <i>we did</i>	} <i>punish.</i>
tu punissais, <i>thou d. pun.</i>	vous punissiez, <i>ye did</i>	
il punissait, <i>he did punish.</i>	ils punissaient, <i>they did</i>	

## Preterperfect.

Je punis, <i>I punished,</i>	Nous punîmes, <i>we punished,</i>	} <i>punish.</i>
tu punis, <i>thou punishedst,</i>	vous punîtes, <i>ye punished,</i>	
il punit, <i>he punished.</i>	ils punirent, <i>they punished.</i>	

## Future.

Je punirai, <i>I shall punish,</i>	Nous punirons, <i>we shall</i>	} <i>punish.</i>
tu puniras, <i>thou shalt pun.</i>	vous punirez, <i>ye shall</i>	
il punira, <i>he shall punish.</i>	ils puniront, <i>they shall</i>	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### SINGULAR.

Punis, *punish thou,*  
qu'il punisse, *let him punish,*  
qu'elle punisse, *let her pun.*

### PLURAL.

Punissons, *let us punish,*  
punissez, *punish ye,* [*pun.*  
qu'ils punissent, *let them*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.	que PLURAL.	} <i>punish.</i>
Je punisse, <i>that I may</i>	Nous punissions, <i>we m.</i>	
tu punisses, <i>thou mayest</i>	vous punissiez, <i>ye may</i>	
il punisse, <i>he may</i>	ils punissent, <i>they may</i>	

### Imperfect.

Je punirais, <i>I should</i>	Nous punirions, <i>we sh.</i>	} <i>punish.</i>
tu punirais, <i>thou sh'dst</i>	vous puniriez, <i>ye sh.</i>	
il punirait, <i>he should</i>	ils puniraient, <i>they sh.</i>	

### Preterperfect.

Je punisse, <i>that I might</i>	Nous punissions, <i>we m.</i>	} <i>punish.</i>
tu punisses, <i>thou mi'tst</i>	vous punissiez, <i>ye m.</i>	
il punit, <i>he might</i>	ils punissent, <i>they m.</i>	

## Third Conjugation.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

### DE-VOIR, to owe.

### PARTICIPLES.

#### PRESENT.

*D-avant, owing.*

#### PAST.

*D-û, owed.*

## A GRAMMAR OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je dois, *I owe*,  
tu dois, *thou owest*,  
il doit, *he owes*.

## PLURAL.

Nous devons, *we owe*,  
vous devez, *ye owe*,  
ils doivent, *they owe*.

### Imperfect.

## SINGULAR.

Je devais, *I did owe*,  
tu devais, *thou didst owe*,  
il devait, *he did owe*.

## PLURAL.

Nous devions, *we did owe*,  
vous deviez, *ye did owe*,  
ils devaient, *they did owe*.

### Preterperfect.

Je dus, *I owed*,  
tu dus, *thou owedst*,  
il dû, *he owed*.

Nous dûmes, *we owed*,  
vous dûtes, *ye owed*,  
ils dûrent, *they owed*.

### Future.

Je devrai, *I shall owe*,  
tu devras, *thou shalt owe*,  
il devra, *he shall owe*.

Nous devrons, *we shall owe*,  
vous devrez, *ye shall owe*,  
ils devront, *they shall owe*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Dois, *owe thou*,  
qu'il doive, *let him owe*,  
qu'elle doive, *let her owe*.

## PLURAL.

Devons, *let us owe*,  
devez, *owe ye*,  
qu'ils doivent, *let them owe*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

## que SINGULAR.

Je doive, *that I may owe*,  
tu doives, *thou mayest owe*,  
il doive, *he may owe*.

## que PLURAL.

Nous devions, *we may owe*,  
vous deviez, *ye may owe*,  
ils doivent, *they may owe*.

### Imperfect.

Je devrais, *I should owe*,  
tu devrais, *thou shouldst owe*,  
il devrait, *he should owe*.

Nous devrions, *we sh. owe*,  
vous devriez, *ye should owe*,  
ils devraient, *they sh. owe*.

### Preterperfect.

*Je dusse, I might owe,*  
*tu dusses, thou mightest owe,*  
*il dû, he might owe.*

Nous dussions, *we mgt. owe*,  
vous dussiez, *ye might owe*,  
ils dussent, *they might owe*.

Fourth Conjugation.  
INFINITIVE MOOD.

VEN-DRE, *to sell.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Ven-dant, *selling.*

| Ven-du, *sold.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je vends, *I sell,*  
tu vends, *thou sellest,*  
il vend, *he sells.*

| Nous vendons, *we sell,*  
vous vendez, *ye sell,*  
ils vendent, *they sell.*

Imperfect.

Je vendais, *I did sell,*  
tu vendais, *thou didst sell,*  
il vendait, *he did sell.*

| Nous vendions, *we did sell,*  
vous vendiez, *ye did sell,*  
ils vendaient, *they did sell.*

Preterperfect.

Je vendis, *I sold*  
tu vendis, *thou soldest,*  
il vendit, *he sold.*

| Nous vendîmes, *we sold,*  
vous vendîtes, *ye sold,*  
ils vendirent, *they sold.*

Future.

Je vendrai, *I shall sell,*  
tu vendras, *thou shalt sell,*  
il vendra, *he shall sell.*

| Nous vendrons, *we sh. sell,*  
vous vendrez, *ye shall sell,*  
ils vendront, *they shall sell.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Vends, *sell thou,*  
qu'il vende, *let him sell,*  
qu'elle vende, *let her sell.*

| Vendons, *let us sell,*  
vendez, *sell ye,*  
qu'ils vendent, *let them sell.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

que PLURAL.

Je vende, *that I may sell,*  
tu vendes, *thou mayest sell,*  
il vende, *he may sell.*

| Nous vendions, *we may sell,*  
vous vendiez, *ye may sell,*  
ils vendent, *they may sell.*

## Imperfect.

Je vendrais, <i>I should sell,</i>	Nous vendrions, <i>we sh. sell,</i>
tu vendrais, <i>thou sh. sell,</i>	vous vendriez, <i>ye sh. sell,</i>
il vendrait, <i>he should sell.</i>	ils vendraient, <i>they sh. sell.</i>

que

## Preterperfect.

Je vendisse, <i>that I mi. sell,</i>	Nous vendissions, <i>w. mi. sell,</i>
tu vendisse, <i>thou mi. sell,</i>	vous vendissiez, <i>ye mi. sell,</i>
il vendit, <i>he might sell.</i>	ils vendissent, <i>they mi. sell.</i>

## Fifth Conjugation.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

TRAD-UIRE, *to translate.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

Traduisant, <i>translating.</i>	Traduit, <i>translated.</i>
---------------------------------	-----------------------------

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Je traduis, <i>I translate,</i>	Nous traduisons, <i>we trans.</i>
tu traduis, <i>thou translatest,</i>	vous traduisez, <i>ye translate,</i>
il traduit, <i>he translates.</i>	ils traduisent, <i>they translate.</i>

## Imperfect.

Je traduisais, <i>I did</i>	} <i>translate.</i>	Nous traduisions, <i>we d.</i>	} <i>translate.</i>
tu traduisais, <i>thou didst</i>		vous traduisiez, <i>ye did</i>	
il traduisait, <i>he did</i>		ils traduisaient, <i>they did</i>	

## Preterperfect.

Je traduisis, <i>I translated,</i>	} <i>translated.</i>	Nous traduisîmes, <i>we</i>	} <i>translated.</i>
tu traduisis, <i>thou translated,</i>		vous traduisites, <i>ye</i>	
il traduisit, <i>he translated.</i>		ils traduisirent, <i>they</i>	

## Future.

Je traduirai, <i>I shall</i>	} <i>translate.</i>	Nous traduirons, <i>we sh.</i>	} <i>translate.</i>
tu traduiras, <i>thou shalt</i>		vous traduirez, <i>ye shall</i>	
il traduira, <i>he shall</i>		ils traduiront, <i>they shall</i>	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Traduis, <i>translate thou,</i>	} <i>translate.</i>	Traduisons, <i>let us translate,</i>	} <i>translate.</i>
qu'il traduise, <i>let him transl.</i>		traduisez, <i>translate ye,</i>	
qu'elle traduise, <i>let her tran.</i>		qu'ils traduisent, <i>let them tr.</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.	que PLURAL.
Je traduise, <i>that I may</i> } translate.	Nous traduisions, <i>we m.</i> } translate.
tu traduisés, <i>thou may'st</i> }	vous traduisiez, <i>ye may</i> }
il traduise, <i>he may</i> }	ils traduisent, <i>they may</i> }

Imperfect.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Je traduirais, <i>I should</i> } translate.	Nous traduirions, <i>we sh.</i> } translate.
tu traduirais, <i>th. sh'dst</i> }	vous traduiriez, <i>ye sh.</i> }
il traduirait, <i>he should</i> }	ils traduiraient, <i>they sh.</i> }

Preterperfect.

que	
Je traduisisse, <i>I might</i> } translate.	Nous traduisissions, <i>w.m</i> } translate.
tu traduisisses, <i>thou m.</i> }	vous traduisissiez, <i>ye m.</i> }
il traduisît, <i>he might</i> }	ils traduisissent, <i>they m.</i> }

Sixth Conjugation.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

JO-INDRE, *to join.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Joignant, <i>joining.</i>	Jo-int, <i>joined.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Je joins, <i>I join,</i>	Nous joignons, <i>we join,</i>
tu joins, <i>thou joinest,</i>	vous joignez, <i>ye join,</i>
il joint, <i>he joins.</i>	ils joignent, <i>they join.</i>

Imperfct.

Je joignais, <i>I did join,</i>	Nous joignons, <i>we did join,</i>
tu joignais, <i>thou didst join,</i>	vous joigniez, <i>ye did join,</i>
il joignait, <i>he did join.</i>	ils joignaient, <i>they did join.</i>

Preterperfect.

Je joignis, <i>I joined,</i>	Nous joignîmes, <i>we joined,</i>
tu joignis, <i>thou joinedst,</i>	vous joignîtes, <i>ye joined,</i>
il joignit, <i>he joined.</i>	ils joignirent, <i>they joined.</i>

Future.

Je joindra, <i>I shall join,</i>	Nous joindrons, <i>we sh. join,</i>
tu joindras, <i>thou shalt join,</i>	vous joindrez, <i>ye shall join.</i>
il joindra, <i>he shall join.</i>	ils joindront, <i>they shall join.</i>



## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Joins, <i>join thou,</i> qu'il joigne, <i>let him join,</i> qu'elle joigne, <i>let her join.</i>	Joignons, <i>let us join,</i> joignez, <i>join ye,</i> qu'ils joignent, <i>let them join.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.	que PLURAL.
Je joigne, <i>that I may join,</i> tu joignes, <i>thou mayest join,</i> il joigne, <i>he may join.</i>	Nous joignons, <i>we may join,</i> vous joigniez, <i>ye may join,</i> ils joignent, <i>they may join.</i>

## Imperfect.

Je joindrais, <i>I should join,</i> tu joindrais, <i>th. shouldst join,</i> il joindrait, <i>he should join.</i>	Nous joindrions, <i>we sh. join,</i> vous joindriez, <i>ye sh. join,</i> ils joindraient, <i>they sh. join.</i>
--	---

que

## Preterperfect.

Je joignisse, <i>that I mi. join,</i> tu joignisses, <i>th. might join,</i> il joignît, <i>he might join.</i>	Nous joignissions, <i>we m. join</i> vous joignissiez, <i>ye m. join,</i> ils joignissent, <i>they m. join.</i>
---	---

## Conjugation of Reflected Verbs.

A reflected verb, as I have hinted before, has always *se* before its infinitive ; as *se repentir*, to repent ; but it is generally an active verb, whose action returns upon the agent that produces it. The following example of the first conjugation, will be sufficient to learn how to conjugate any reflected verb.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

SE LEVER, *to rise.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST
Se levant, <i>rising.</i>	Levé, <i>risen.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Je me lève, <i>I rise,</i> tu te lèves, <i>thou risest,</i> il se lève, <i>he rises.</i>	Nous nous levons, <i>we rise,</i> vous vous levez, <i>ye rise,</i> ils se lèvent, <i>they rise.</i>

## Imperfect.

me levais, <i>I did rise,</i>	Nous nous levions, <i>we d. rise</i>
te levais, <i>thou didst rise,</i>	vous vous leviez, <i>ye did rise,</i>
se levait, <i>he did rise.</i>	ils se levaient, <i>they did rise.</i>

## Preterperfect.

me levai, <i>I rose,</i>	Nous nous levâmes, <i>we rose,</i>
te levais, <i>thou didst rise,</i>	vous vous levâtes, <i>ye rose,</i>
se leva, <i>he did rise.</i>	ils se levèrent, <i>they rose.</i>

## Future.

me leverai, <i>I shall rise,</i>	Nous nous leverons, <i>we s. rise</i>
te leveras, <i>thou shalt rise,</i>	vous vous leverez, <i>ye s. rise,</i>
se levera, <i>he shall rise.</i>	ils se leveront, <i>they sh. rise.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

ève-toi, *rise thou,*  
 r'il se lève, *let him rise,*  
 r'elle se lève, *let her rise.*

## PLURAL.

Levons-nous, *let us rise,*  
 levez-vous, *rise ye,*  
 qu'ils se lèvent, *let them rise.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

ie  
 me lève, *that I may rise,*  
 te lèves, *thou mayest rise,*  
 se lève, *he may rise.*

## PLURAL.

que [rise,  
 Nous nous levions, *we may*  
 vous vous leviez, *ye may rise,*  
 ils se lèvent, *they may rise.*

## Imperfect.

me leverais, <i>I should rise,</i>	Nous nous leverions, <i>we sh. [rise,</i>
te leverais, <i>thou shouldst r.</i>	vous vous leveriez, <i>ye sh. ri.</i>
se leverait, <i>he should rise.</i>	ils se leveraient, <i>th. sh. rise.</i>

## Preterperfect.

ie	[rise,
me levasse, <i>that I mi. ri.</i>	Nous nous levassions, <i>we m.</i>
te levasses, <i>th. mightest r.</i>	vous vous levassiez, <i>ye mi. ri.</i>
se levât, <i>he might rise.</i>	ils se levassent, <i>they mi. rise.</i>

There are neuter verbs which become reflected by the addition of the particle *en* immediately after the double pronouns, *s'en aller*, to go away ; *s'enfuir*, to run away ; *en retourner*, to return.

A reciprocal verb, which is by no means to be confounded with a reflected one, is used in the plural only, and conjugated like reflected verbs with a double pronoun.

*Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs Alphabetically.\**

**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

**ABSOUUDRE, to absolve.**

**PARTICIPLES.**

**PRESENT.**

**Absolvant, *absolving.***

**PAST.**

**Absous, *absolved.***

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

**SINGULAR.**

**J'absous, *I absolve,***  
**tu absous, *thou absolvest,***  
**il absout, *he absolves.***

**PLURAL.**

**Nous absolvons, *we absolve,***  
**vous absolvez, *ye absolve,***  
**ils absolvent, *they absolve.***

**Imperfect.**

**SINGULAR.**

**J'absolvais, *I did***  
**tu absolvais, *thou didst***  
**il absolvait, *he did***

} *absolve.*

**PLURAL.**

**Nous absolvions, *we did***  
**vous absolviez, *ye did***  
**ils absolvaient, *they did***

} *absolve.*

**Future.**

**J'absoudrai, *I shall***  
**tu absoudras, *thou shalt***  
**il absoudra, *he shall***

} *absolve.*

**Nous absoudrons, *we sh.***  
**vous absoudrez, *ye sh.***  
**ils absoudront, *they sh.***

} *absolve.*

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

**SINGULAR.**

**Absous, *absolve thou,***  
**qu'il absolve, *let him absolve.***

**PLURAL.**

**Absolvons, *let us absolve,***  
**absolvez, *absolve ye,***  
**qu'ils absolvent, *let th. ab.***

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

**que SINGULAR.**

**J'absolve, *that I may***  
**tu absolves, *thou mayest***  
**il absolve, *he may***

} *absolve.*

**que PLURAL.**

**Nous absolvions, *we m.***  
**vous absolviez, *ye may***  
**ils absolvent, *they may***

} *absolve.*

**Imperfect.**

**J'absoudrais, *I should***  
**tu absoudrais, *thou sh.***  
**il absoudrait, *he should***

} *absolve.*

**Nous absoudrions, *we s.***  
**vous absoudriez, *ye sh.***  
**ils absoudraient, *they s.***

} *absolve.*

\* When a tense will not be conjugated at length, you will find a reference to the proper tense in the table of terminations, p. 86.

Accueillir, *to receive*, like *cueillir*.

Accourir, *to run to*, like *courir*.

# INFINITIVE MOOD.

ACQUERIR, *to acquire*.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

acquérant, *acquiring*.

| Acquis, *acquired*.

# INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

acquiens, *I acquire*,  
acquiens, *thou acquirest*,  
acquiert, *he acquires*.

| Nous acquérons, *we acquire*,  
vous acquérez, *ye acquire*,  
ils acquièrent, *they acquire*.

## Imperfect.

acquérais, *I did acquire*,  
acquérais, *thou didst acquire*,  
acquerrait, *he did acquire*.

| Nous acquérions, *we d. acquire*,  
vous acquériez, *ye did acquire*,  
ils acquerraient, *they d. acquire*.

## Preterperfect.

acquis, *I acquired*,  
acquis, *thou acquiredst*,  
acquît, *he acquired*.

| Nous acquîmes, *we acquired*,  
vous acquîtes, *ye acquired*,  
ils acquîrent, *they acquired*.

## Future.

acquerrai, *I shall acquire*. See p. 86. D.

# IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

acquies, *acquire thou*,  
r'il acquière, *let him acqu.*  
r'elle acquière, *let her acqu.*

| Acquérons, *let us acquire*,  
acquérez, *acquire ye*,  
qu'ils acquièrent, *let th. ac.*

# SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

acquière, *I may acquire*,  
acquières, *th. mayest acquire*,  
acquière, *he may acquire*.

| Nous acquérions, *we m. acquire*,  
vous acquériez, *ye may acquire*,  
ils acquièrent, *th. may acquire*.

## Imperfect.

acquerrais, *I should acquire*. See p. 86. F.

que

Preterperfect.

J'acquisse, <i>I might</i>	} <i>acquiesce</i>	Nous acquisitions, <i>we m.</i>	} <i>acquiesce</i>
tu acquisses, <i>thou mi.</i>		vous acquissiez, <i>ye mi.</i>	
il acquît, <i>he might</i>		ils acquissent, <i>th. might</i>	

Admettre, *to admit*, like *mettre*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

ALLER, *to go*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Allant, *going*.

PAST.

| Allé, *gone*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je vais, *I go*,  
tu vas, *thou goest*,  
il va, *he goes*.

PLURAL.

Nous allons, *we go*,  
vous allez, *ye go*,  
ils vont, *they go*.

Imperfect.

J'allais, *I did go*,  
tu allais, *thou didst go*,  
il allait, *he did go*.

Nous allions, *we did go*,  
vous alliez, *ye did go*,  
ils allaient, *they did go*.

Preterperfect.

J'allai,\* *I went*,  
tu allas, *thou wentest*,  
il alla, *he went*.

Nous allâmes, *we went*,  
vous allâtes, *ye went*,  
ils allèrent, *they went*.

Future.

J'irai, *I shall go*,  
tu iras, *thou shalt go*,  
il ira, *he shall go*.

Nous irons, *we shall go*,  
vous irez, *ye shall go*,  
ils iront, *they shall go*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Va, *go thou*,  
qu'il aille, *let him go*.

PLURAL.

Allons, *let us go*,  
allez, *go ye*,  
qu'ils aillent, *let them go*.

\* Or, *je fus, tu fus, il fut. Nous fumes, vous fûtes, ils furent.*

# FRENCH TONGUE.

39.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

#### SINGULAR.

e, *I may go,*  
lles, *thou mayest go,*  
le, *he may go.*

#### PLURAL.

Nous allions, *we may go,*  
vous alliez, *ye may go,*  
ils aillent, *they may go.*

### Imperfect.

is, *I should go,*  
ais, *thou shouldst go,*  
it, *he should go.*

Nous irions, *we should go,*  
vous iriez, *ye should go,*  
ils iraient, *they should go.*

### Preterperfect.

asse, *I might go,*  
lasses, *thou mightest go,*  
ât, *he might go.*

Nous allassions, *we mig. go,*  
vous allassiez, *ye might go,*  
ils allassent, *they might go.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

### PARTICIPLES.

#### S'ASSEOIR, to sit down.

#### PRESENT.

seyant, *sitting down.*

#### PAST.

Assis, *sat down.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

#### SINGULAR.

n'assieds, *I sit down,*  
assieds, *thou sittest do.*  
assied, *he sits down.*

#### PLURAL.

[down,  
Nous nous asseyons, *we sit*  
vous vous asseyez, *ye sit do.*  
ils s'asseyent, *they sit down.*

### Imperfect.

n'asseyais, *I did sit do.*  
asseyais, *thou didst s. d.*  
asseyait, *he did sit do.*

[sit down,  
Nous nous asseyions, *we did*  
vous vous asseyiez, *ye d. s. d.*  
ils s'asseyaient, *they di. s. d.*

### Preterperfect.

n'assis, *I sat down,*  
assis, *thou satest down,*  
assit, *he sat down.*

Nous nous assimes, *we sat d.*  
vous vous assites, *ye sat d.*  
ils s'assirent, *they sat down.*

493966

## Future.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Je m'assiérai,\* *I sh. sit down,*  
 tu t'assiéras, *thou sh. sit down*  
 il s'assiéra, *he shall sit down.*

[*sit down,*  
 Nous nous assiérons, *we shall*  
 vous vous assiérez, *ye sh. s.d.*  
 ils s'assiéront, *th. sh. s. down.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Assied-toi, *sit thou down,*  
 qu'il s'asseye, *let him sit do.*

Asseyons-nous, *let us sit do.*  
 asseyez-vous, *sit (ye) down,*  
 qu'ils s'asseyent, *let th. s. d.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

que  
 Je m'asseye, *I may sit down,*  
 tu t'asseyes, *th. may sit do.*  
 il s'asseye, *he may sit down.*

[*sit down,*  
 Nous nous asseyions, *we may*  
 vous vous asseyez, *ye m.s.d.*  
 ils s'asseyent, *they m. sit d.*

## Imperfect.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

[*down,*  
 J'm'assiérais,† *I should sit*  
 tu t'assiérais, *thou wo. sit d.*  
 il s'assiérait, *he wo. s. down.*

[*sit down.*  
 Nous nous assiérions, *we sh.*  
 vous vous asseyriez, *y. s. s.d.*  
 ils s'assiéraient, *th. sh. s. do.*

## Preterperfect.

que  
 Je m'assisseye, *I might sit*  
 tu t'assisseyes, *th. might sit d.*  
 il s'assisseye, *he might sit down.*

[*sit down.*  
 Nous nous assisseyions, *we mi.*  
 vous vous assisseyiez, *y. m. s.d.*  
 ils s'assisseyent, *th. m. sit do.*

Observe this manner of conjugating the verb *asseoir*, is very puzzling for learners. To avoid these difficulties, the best way is to follow the advice of *Vaugelas*, and instead of that verb, to make use of *se placer*, *prendre place*, *se reposer*, *se mettre sur un siège*, according to the sense.

Apprendre, *to learn*, like *prendre*.

Assaillir, *to assault*, like *tressaillir*.

\* Or, *Je m'assiérai*, according to the FRENCH ACADEMY.

† Or *je m'assiérais*, *ibid.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

BATTRE, *to beat.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Battant, *beating.*

## PAST.

| Battu, *beaten.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je bats, *I beat,*  
tu bats, *thou beatest,*  
il bat, *he beats.*

## PLURAL.

Nous battons, *we beat,*  
vous battez, *ye beat,*  
ils battent, *they beat.*

## Imperfect.

Je batt-ais, *I did beat.* See p. 86. B.

## Preterperfect.

Je battis, *I beat,*  
tu battis, *thou beatest,*  
il battit, *he beat.*Nous battîmes, *we beat,*  
vous battîtes, *ye beat,*  
ils battîrent, *they beat.*

## Future.

Je batt-rai, *I shall beat.* See p. 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Bats, *beat thou,*  
qu'il batte, *let him beat.*

## PLURAL.

Battons, *let us beat,*  
battez, *beat ye,*  
qu'ils battent, *let them beat.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## que SINGULAR.

Je batte, *I may beat,*  
tu battes, *thou mayest beat,*  
il batte, *he may beat.*

## PLURAL.

Nous battions, *we may beat,*  
vous battiez, *ye may beat,*  
ils battent, *they may beat.*

## Imperfect.

Je batt-raïs, *I should beat.* See p. 86. F.

## que

## Preterperfect.

Je battisse, *I might beat,*  
tu battisses, *thou might beat,*  
il battit, *he might beat.*Nous batissions, *we mi. beat,*  
vous battissiez, *ye mig. beat,*  
ils battissent, *they mi. beat.*



# A GRAMMAR OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

**BOIRE, to drink.**

## PARTICIPLES.

### PRESENT.

Buvant, *drinking.*

### PAST.

| Bu, *drank or drunk.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

#### SINGULAR.

Je bois, *I drink,*  
tu bois, *thou drinkest,*  
il boit, *he drinks.*

#### PLURAL.

| Nous buvons, *we drink,*  
vous buvez, *ye drink,*  
ils boivent, *they drink.*

### Imperfect.

Je buv-ais, *I did drink.* See page 86. B.

### Préterperfect.

Je bus, *I drank,*  
tu bus, *thou drankest,*  
il but, *he drank.*

| Nous bûmes, *we drank,*  
vous bûtes, *ye drank,*  
ils burent, *they drank.*

### Future.

Je boi-rai, *I shall drink.* See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

#### SINGULAR.

Bois, *drink thou,*  
qu'il boive, *let him drink.*

#### PLURAL.

| Buvons, *let us drink,*  
Buvez, *drink ye,*  
qu'ils boivent, *let them drink.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je boive, *I may drink,*  
tu boives, *thou mayest drink,*  
il boive, *he may drink.*

PLURAL.

| Nous buvions, *we may drink,*  
vous buviez, *ye may drink,*  
ils boivent, *they may drink.*

### Imperfect.

Je boi-rai-s, *I should drink.* See page 86. F.

### Preterperfect.

que SINGULAR.

Je busse, *I might drink,*  
tu busses, *thou mi. drink,*  
il bût, *he might drink.*

PLURAL.

| Nous bussions, *we mi. drink,*  
vous bussiez, *ye mi. drink,*  
ils bussent, *they might drink.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

BOUILLIR, *to boil*.

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Bouillant, *boiling*.

## PAST.

| Bouilli, *boiled*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je bous, *I boil*,  
tu bous, *thou boilest*,  
il bout, *he boils*.

## PLURAL.

| Nous bouillons, *we boil*,  
vous bouillez, *ye boil*,  
ils bouillent, *they boil*.

## Imperfect.

Je bouilli-ais, *I did boil*. See p. 86. B.

## Preterperfect.

Je bouillis, *I boiled*,  
tu bouillis, *thou boiledst*,  
il bouillit, *he boiled*.| Nous bouillimes, *we boiled*,  
vous bouillites, *ye boiled*,  
ils bouillirent, *they boiled*.

## Future.

Je bouilli-rai, *I shall boil*. See p. 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Bous, *boil thou*,  
qu'il bouille, *let him boil*.

## PLURAL.

| Bouillons, *let us boil*,  
bouillez, *boil ye*,  
qu'ils bouillent, *let them boil*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## que SINGULAR.

Je bouille, *I may boil*,  
tu bouilles, *thou may boil*,  
il bouille, *he may boil*.

## PLURAL.

| Nous bouillons, *we may boil*,  
vous bouilliez, *ye may boil*,  
ils bouillent, *they may boil*.

## Imperfect.

Je bouilli-raïs, *I should boil*. See p. 86. F.

## que

## Preterperfect.

Je bouillisse, *I might boil*,  
tu bouillisses, *thou mi. boil*,  
il bouillît, *he might boil*.| Nous bouillissions, *w. m. bo*.  
vous bouillissiez, *ye m. boil*,  
ils bouillissent, *they mi. boil*.

This verb is seldom used, except in the third person singular and plural; and instead of *bouillir de la viande*, to boil meat, we say, *faire bouillir de la viande*.

CIRCONCIRE, *to circumcise*.

This verb is not of great use. It is conjugated like *lire*, to read, except in both the preter tenses, and in the participle past where it makes *circoncis*, *circoncise*, *circoncis*.

Comprendre, *to understand*, like *prendre*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

CONCLURE, *to conclude*.

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Concluant, *concluding*.

## PAST.

Conclu, *concluded*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je conclus, *I conclude*,  
tu conclus, *thou concludest*,  
il conclut, *he concludes*.

## PLURAL.

Nous concluons, *we conclude*,  
vous concluez, *ye conclude*,  
ils concluent, *they conclude*.

## Imperfect.

## SINGULAR.

Je conclu-ais, *I did conclude*. See page 86. B.

## PLURAL.

## Preterperfect.

Je conclus, *I concluded*,  
tu conclus, *thou concludedst*,  
il conclut, *he concluded*.

Nous conclûmes, *we con-*  
vous conclûtes, *ye conclude*,  
ils conclurent, *they conclu*.

## Future.

Je conclu-rai, *I shall conclude*. See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Conclus, *conclude thou*,  
qu'il conclut, *let him conclu*.

## PLURAL.

Concluons, *let us conclude*,  
concluez, *conclude ye*,  
qu'ils concluent, *let th. con*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

que  
Je conclue, *I may conclude*,  
tu conclues, *tho. mayst con*.  
il conclue, *he may conclude*.

## PLURAL.

[conclude,  
nous concluions, *we may*  
vous concluiez, *ye may con*.  
ils concluent, *they may con*.

Imperfect.

Je conclu-raï, *I should conclude.* See page 86. F.

Preterperfect.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

que	
Je conclusse, <i>I might con.</i>	[conclude,
tu conclusses, <i>thou mi. con.</i>	Nous conclusions, <i>we might</i>
il conclût, <i>he might conclu.</i>	vous conclussiez, <i>ye mi. con.</i>
	ils conclussent, <i>they mi. con.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

CONFIRE, *to pickle.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Confisant, <i>pickling.</i>	Confit, <i>pickled.</i>
-----------------------------	-------------------------

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je confis, <i>I pickle,</i>	Nous confisons, <i>we pickle,</i>
tu confis, <i>thou picklest,</i>	vous confisez, <i>ye pickle,</i>
il confit, <i>he pickles.</i>	ils confisent, <i>they pickle.</i>

Imperfect.

Je confis-ais, *I did pickle.* See page 86. B.

Preterperfect.

Je confis, <i>I pickled,</i>	Nous confîmes, <i>we pickled,</i>
tu confis, <i>thou pickledst,</i>	vous confîtes, <i>ye pickled,</i>
il confit, <i>he pickled.</i>	ils confirent, <i>they pickled.</i>

Future.

Je confi-rai, *I shall pickle.* See page 86. D.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Confis, <i>pickle thou,</i>	Confisons, <i>let us pickle,</i>
qu'il confise, <i>let him pickle.</i>	Confisez, <i>pickle ye,</i>
	qu'ils confisent, <i>let them pic.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je confise, <i>I may pickle,</i>	Nous confisions, <i>we may pic.</i>
tu confises, <i>they mayst pic.</i>	vous confisiez, <i>ye may pic.</i>
il confise, <i>he may pickle.</i>	ils confisent, <i>they may pick.</i>

## Imperfect.

Je confi-raï, *I should pickle.* See page 86. F.

## Preterperfect.

<p>que Je confis-se, <i>I might pickle,</i> tu confis-ses, <i>thou might. pi.</i> il confit, <i>he might pickle.</i></p>	<p>Nous confis-sions, <i>we might</i> vous confis-siez, <i>ye mi. pic.</i> ils confis-sent, <i>they mi. pick.</i></p>
--	---

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

CONNOITRE, *to know.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Connaissant, *knowing.*

## PAST.

Connu, *known.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je connais, *I know,*  
tu connais, *thou knowest,*  
il connaît, *he knows.*

## PLURAL.

Nous connaissons, *we know,*  
vous connaissez, *ye know,*  
ils connaissent, *they know.*

## Imperfect.

Je connoiss-ais, *I did know.* See page 86. B.

## Preterperfect.

<p>Je connus, <i>I knew,</i> tu connns, <i>thou knewest,</i> il connut, <i>he knew.</i></p>	<p>Nous connûmes, <i>we knew,</i> vous connûtes, <i>ye knew,</i> ils connurent, <i>they knew.</i></p>
---	---

## Future.

<p>Je connaîtrai, <i>I shall know,</i> tu connaîtras, <i>thou sh. kno.</i> il connaîtra, <i>he shall know.</i></p>	<p>Nous connaîtrons, <i>we shall</i> vous connaîtrez, <i>ye shall kn.</i> ils connaîtront, <i>they shall k.</i></p>
--	---

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Connais, *know thou,*  
*qu'il connaisse, let him kno.*

## PLURAL.

Connaissez, *let us know,*  
*connaissez, know ye,*  
*qu'ils connaissent, let th. kn.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
que Je connaisse, <i>I may know,</i> tu connaises, <i>thou may kn.</i> il connaisse, <i>he may know.</i>	[ <i>know,</i> Nous connaissions, <i>we may</i> vous connaissiez, <i>ye may k.</i> ils connaissent, <i>they may k.</i>

Imperfect.

Je connaîtrais, <i>I should kn.</i> tu connaîtrais <i>thou sh. kn.</i> il connaîtrait, <i>he should kn.</i>	[ <i>know,</i> Nous connaîtrions, <i>we should</i> vous connaîtriez, <i>ye sh. kn.</i> ils connaîtraient, <i>th. sh. kn.</i>
---	---

Preterperfect.

que Je connusse, <i>I might know,</i> tu connusses, <i>thou mi. kno.</i> il connût, <i>he might know.</i>	[ <i>know,</i> Nous connussions, <i>we might</i> vous connussiez, <i>ye mi. kn.</i> ils connussent, <i>they mi. kn.</i>
--	--

CONQUERIR, *to conquer.*

This verb is conjugated like *acquérir*, and is not commonly used, except in the infinitive, in both the preter tenses, and participle past, and consequently in the compound tenses.

Contenir, *to contain*, like *tenir*.

Contrevenir, *to infringe*, like *venir*.

Consentir, *to consent*, like *sentir*.

CONTREDIRE, *to gainsay.*

This verb is conjugated like *dire*, except in the second person plural, where it makes *vous contredisez*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

CONVAINCRE, *to convince.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Convainquant, <i>convincing.</i>	Convaincu, <i>convinced.</i>

# A GRAMMAR OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

### SINGULAR.

Je convains, *I convince*,  
tu convains, *thou convincest*,  
il convainc, *he convinces*.

### PLURAL.

[*vince*,  
Nous convainquons, *we convince*,  
vous convainquez, *ye convince*,  
ils convainquent, *they convince*.

## Imperfect.

[*vince*,  
Je convainquais, *I did convince*,  
tu convainquais, *th. did convince*,  
il convainquait, *he did convince*.

[*convince*,  
Nous convainquions, *we did convince*,  
vous convainquiez, *ye d. convince*,  
ils convainquaient, *th. d. convince*.

## Preterperfect.

Je convainquis, *I convinced*,  
tu convainquis, *thou convinced*,  
il convainquit, *he convinced*.

[*convinced*,  
Nous convainquimes, *we convinced*,  
vous convainquites, *ye convince*,  
ils convainquirent *they convince*.

## Future.

[*vince*,  
Je convaincrai, *I shall convince*,  
tu convaincras, *th. shall convince*,  
il convaincra, *he shall convince*.

[*convince*,  
Nous convaincrons, *we shall convince*,  
vous convaincrez, *ye sh. convince*,  
ils convaincront, *they sh. convince*.

# IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### SINGULAR.

Convains, *convince thou*,  
qu'il convainque, *let him convince*.

### PLURAL.

Convainquons, *let us convince*,  
convainquez, *convince ye*,  
qu'ils convainquent, *let th. convince*.

# SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

### SINGULAR.

que [*convince*,  
Je convainque, *that I may convince*,  
tu convainques, *th. may convince*,  
il convainque, *he may convince*.

### PLURAL.

[*convince*,  
Nous convainquions, *we may convince*,  
vous convainquiez, *ye m. convince*,  
ils convainquent, *they m. convince*.

## Imperfect.

### SINGULAR.

[*convince*,  
Je convaincrais, *I should convince*,  
tu convaincrais, *th. sh. convince*,  
il convaincrait, *he sh. convince*.

### PLURAL.

[*convince*,  
Nous convaincristions, *we sh. convince*,  
vous convaincriez, *ye sh. convince*,  
ils convaincraient, *th. sh. convince*.

Preterperfect.

que	[convince,		[mi. convince,
Je convainquisse, <i>that I mi.</i>		Nous convainquissions, <i>we</i>	
tu convainquisses, <i>th. m. co.</i>		vous convainquissiez, <i>ye m. c.</i>	
il convainquit, <i>he might co.</i>		ils convainquissent, <i>th. m. c.</i>	

Convenir, *to agree*, like *venir*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

COUDRE, *to sew*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
Cousant, <i>sewing</i> .	Consu, <i>sewed</i> .

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Je couds, <i>I sew</i> ,	Nous cousons, <i>we sew</i> ,
tu couds, <i>thou sewest</i> ,	vous cousez, <i>ye sew</i> ,
il coud, <i>he sews</i> .	ils cousent, <i>they sew</i> .

Imperfect.

Je cous-ais, *I did sew*. See page 86. B.

Preterperfect.

Je cousis,* <i>I sewed</i> ,	Nous cousîmes, <i>we sewed</i> ,
tu cousis, <i>thou sewedst</i> ,	vous cousîtes, <i>ye sewed</i> ,
il cousit, <i>he sewed</i> .	ils cousirent, <i>they sewed</i> .

Future.

Je coud-rai, *I shall sew*. See page 86. D.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Couds, <i>sew thou</i> ,	Cousons, <i>let us sew</i> ,
qu'il couse, <i>let him sew</i> .	cousez, <i>sew ye</i> ,
	qu'ils cousent, <i>let them sew</i> .

\* Some grammarians have *je cousus*, and the subjunctive mood *je coususse*; but the FRENCH ACADEMY write in these two tenses as above.



## A GRAMMAR OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

que

Present Tense.

Je couse, <i>that I may sew,</i>	Nous cousions, <i>we may sew,</i>
tu couses, <i>thou mayest sew,</i>	vous cousiez, <i>ye may sew,</i>
il couse, <i>he may sew.</i>	ils cousent, <i>they may sew.</i>

Imperfect.

Je coud-raï, *I should sew.* See page 86. F.

Preterperfect.

que

Je cousisse, <i>that I might sew,</i>	Nous cousissions, <i>we might sew,</i>
tu cousisses, <i>thou mi. sew,</i>	vous cousissiez, <i>ye mig. sew.</i>
il cousît, <i>he might sew.</i>	ils cousissent, <i>they mi. sew.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

COURIR, *to run.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Courant, *running.*

PAST.

| Couru, *run.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je cours, *I run,*  
tu cours, *thou run'st,*  
il court, *he runs.*

PLURAL.

Nous courons, *we run,*  
vous courez, *ye run,*  
ils courent, *they run.*

Imperfect.

Je cour-ais, *I did run.* See page 86. B.

Preterperfect.

Je courus, *I ran,*  
tu courus, *thou ran'st,*  
il courut, *he ran.*

Nous courûmes, *we ran,*  
vous courûtes, *ye ran,*  
ils coururent, *they ran.*

Future.

Je cour-rai, *I shall run.* See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Cours, *run thou,*  
qu'il coure, *let him run.*

PLURAL.

Courons, *let us run,*  
courez, *run ye,*  
qu'ils courent, *let them run.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je coure, *that I may run,*  
 tu courres, *thou may'st run,*  
 il coure, *he may run.*

que PLURAL.

Nous courions, *we may run,*  
 vous couriez, *ye may run,*  
 ils courent, *they may run.*

## Imperfect.

Je cour-raïs, *I should run.* See page 86. F.

## Preterperfect.

que

Je courusse, *I might run,*  
 tu courusses, *thou mi. run,*  
 il courût, *he might run.*

[run,

Nous courussions, *we might*  
 vous courussiez, *ye mi. run,*  
 ils courussent, *they mi. run.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

COUVRIR, *to cover.*

## PARTICIPLES.

Couvrant, *covering.*Couvert, *covered.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je couvre, *I cover,*  
 tu couvres, *thou coverest,*  
 il couvre, *he covers.*

PLURAL.

Nous couvrons, *we cover,*  
 vous couvrez, *ye cover,*  
 ils couvrent, *they cover.*

## Imperfect.

Je couvr-ais, *I did cover.* See page 86. B.

## Preterperfect.

Je couvris, *I covered,*  
 tu couvris, *thou cover'dst,*  
 il couvrit, *he covered.*

Nous couvrîmes, *we covered,*  
 vous couvrites, *ye covered,*  
 ils couvrirent, *they covered.*

## Future.

Je couvri-rai, *I shall cover.* See page 86. D.

## IMPERITIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Couvre, *cover thou,*  
 qu'il couvre, *let him cover.*

PLURAL.

Couvrons, *let us cover,*  
 couvrez, *cover ye,*  
 qu'ils couvrent, *let them cover.*

## A GRAMMAR OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

que SINGULAR.

Je couvre, *that I may cover*,  
tu couvres, *thou mayest co.*  
il couvre, *he may cover.*

que PLURAL.

Nous couvrions, *we may co.*  
vous couvriez, *ye may co.*  
ils couvrent, *they may cover.*

Imperfect.

Je couvri-rai, *I should cover.* See page 86. F.

Preterperfect.

que

Je couvrisse, *I might cover*,  
tu couvrisse, *thou mi. cov.*  
il couvrit, *he might cover.*

[cover,

Nous couvrissions, *we might*  
vous couvrisseriez, *ye mi. cov.*  
ils couvrirent, *they mi. cov.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

CROIRE, *to believe.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Croyant, *believing.*

PAST.

Cru, *believed.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je crois, *I believe*,  
tu crois, *thou believest*,  
il croit, *he believes.*

PLURAL.

Nous croyons, *we believe*,  
vous croyez, *ye believe*,  
ils croient, *they believe.*

Imperfect.

Je croy-ais, *I did believe.* See page 86. F.

Preterperfect.

Je crus, *I believed*,  
tu crus, *thou believedst*,  
il crut, *he believed.*

Nous crûmes, *we believed*,  
vous crûtes, *ye believed*,  
ils crurent, *they believed.*

Future.

Je croi-rai, *I shall believe.* See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

*Crois, believe thou,*  
*qu'il croie, let him believe.*

PLURAL.

*Croyons, let us believe,*  
*croyez, believe ye,*  
*qu'ils croient, let them believe.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je croie, *I may*  
 tu croies, *thou mayest*  
 il croie, *he may*

PLURAL.

Nous croyons, *we may*  
 vous croyez, *ye may*  
 ils croient, *they may*

## Imperfect.

Je croi-rai, *I should believe.* See page 86. F.

que

## Preterperfect.

Je crusse, *that I might*  
 tu crusses, *thou might*  
 il crût, *he might*

Nous crussions, *we mi.*  
 vous crussiez, *ye mig.*  
 ils crussent, *they mig.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

CROÎTRE, *to grow.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Croissant, *growing.*

PAST.

Cru, *grown.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je crois, *I grow,*  
 tu crois, *thou growest,*  
 il croît, *he grows.*

PLURAL.

Nous croissons, *we grow,*  
 vous croissez, *ye grow,*  
 ils croissent, *they grow.*

## Imperfect.

Je croiss-ois, *I did grow.* See page 86. B.

## Preterperfect.

Je crus, *I grew,*  
 tu crus, *thou grewest,*  
 il crut, *he grew.*

Nous crûmes, *we grew,*  
 vous crûtes, *ye grew,*  
 ils crurent, *they grew.*

## Future.

Je croit-rai, *I shall grow.* See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Crois, *grow thou,*  
 qu'il croisse, *let him grow.*

PLURAL.

Croissons, *let us grow,*  
 croissez, *grow ye,*  
 qu'ils croissent, *let them g*

## A GRAMMAR OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

**Je** croisse, *that I may grow,*  
**tu** croisses, *thou mayst gr.*  
**il** croisse, *he may grow.*

PLURAL.

**Nous** crossions, *we may gr.*  
**vous** crossiez, *ye may grow,*  
**ils** crossent, *they may grow.*

### Imperfect.

**Je** croit-rai, *I should grow.* See page 86. F.

### Preterperfect.

que

**Je** crusse, *that I may grow,*  
**tu** crusses, *thou mightest gr.*  
**il** crût, *he might grow.*

[grow,

**Nous** crussions, *we might*  
**vous** crussiez, *ye might gro.*  
**ils** crussent, *they might gro.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

CUEILLIR, *to gather.*

### PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

**Cueillant**, *gathering.*

PAST.

**Cueilli**, *gathered.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

**Je** cueille, *I gather,*  
**tu** cueilles, *thou gatherest,*  
**il** cueille, *he gathers.*

PLURAL.

**Nous** cueillons, *we gather,*  
**vous** cueillez, *ye gather,*  
**ils** cueillent, *they gather.*

### Imperfect.

**Je** cueill-ois, *I did gather.* See page 86. B.

### Preterperfect.

**Je** cueillis, *I gathered,*  
**tu** cueillis, *thou gatheredst,*  
**il** cueillit, *he gathered.*

**Nous** cueillîmes, *we gather.*  
**vous** cueillîtes, *ye gathered,*  
**ils** cueillirent, *they gathered.*

### Future.

**Je** cueille-rai, *I shall gather.* See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

**Cueille**, *gather thou,*  
**qu'il** cueille, *let him gather.*

PLURAL.

**Cueillons**, *let us gather,*  
**cueillez**, *gather ye,*  
**qu'ils** cueillent, *let th. gath.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Je cueille, <i>that I may</i>	} <i>gather.</i>	Nous cueillions, <i>we m.</i>	} <i>gather.</i>
tu cueilles, <i>thou mayest</i>		vous cueilliez, <i>ye may</i>	
il cueille, <i>he may</i>		ils cueillent, <i>they may</i>	

Imperfect.

Je cueille-rai, *I should gather.* See page 86. F.

Preterperfect.

que			
Je cueillisse, <i>that I might g.</i>	}	Nous cueillions, <i>we might</i> [ <i>gather,</i>	
tu cueillisse, <i>thou might ga.</i>		vous cueillissiez, <i>ye mi. ga.</i>	
il cueillît, <i>he might gather.</i>		ils cueillissent, <i>they mig. ga.</i>	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

DECHOIR, *to decay, to decline.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	PAST.
wanting.	} Déchu, <i>decayed.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Je déchois, <i>I decay,</i>	Nous déchoyons, <i>we decay,</i>
tu déchois, <i>thou decayest,</i>	vous déchoyez, <i>ye decay,</i>
il déchoit, <i>he decays.</i>	ils déchoient, <i>they decay.</i>

Preterperfect.

Je déchus, <i>I decayed,</i>	Nous déchûmes, <i>we decay,</i>
tu déchus, <i>thou decayedst,</i>	vous déchûtes, <i>ye decayed,</i>
il déchut, <i>he decayed.</i>	ils déchurent, <i>they decayed.</i>

Future.

Je déchér-rai, *I shall decay.* See page 86. D.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.		que PLURAL.
Je déchoie, <i>that I may,</i>	} <i>decay.</i>	Nous déchoyions, <i>w. m. d.</i>
tu déchoies, <i>thou may'st</i>		vous déchoyiez, <i>ye m. de.</i>
il déchoie, <i>he may.</i>		ils déchoient, <i>they ma. de.</i>

## Imperfect.

Je décher-raïs, *I should decay.* See page 86. F.

que

## Preterperfect.

Je déchusse, <i>that I might de.</i>	Nous déchussions, <i>we m. d.</i>
tu déchusse, <i>thou might de.</i>	vous déchussiez, <i>ye mi. de.</i>
il déchut, <i>he might decay.</i>	ils déchussent, <i>they mi. de.</i>

Découvrir, *to discover*, like *couvrir*.

Démettre, *to remove*, like *mettre*.

Désapprendre, *to unlearn*, like *prendre*.

Désservir, *to take away*, like *servir*.

Détenir, *to detain*, like *tenir*.

Devenir, *to become*, like *venir*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

DIRE, *to say*, or *tell*.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Disant, *saying*.| Dit, *said*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je dis, *I say*,  
tu dis, *thou sayest*,  
il dit, *he says*.

Nous disons, *we say*,  
vous disez, *ye say*,  
ils disent, *they say*.

## Imperfect.

Je dis-ais, *I did say.* See page 86. B.

## Preterperfect.

Je dis, *I said*,  
tu dis, *thou saidst*,  
il dit, *he said*.

Nous dûmes, *we said*,  
vous dîtes, *ye said*,  
ils dirent, *they said*.

## Future.

Je di-rai, *I shall say.* See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

*Dis, say thou,*  
*qu'il dise, let him say.*

*Disons, let us say,*  
*dites, say ye,*  
*qu'ils disent, let them say.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je dise, *that I may say*,  
 tu dises, *thou mayest say*,  
 il dise, *he may say*.

que PLURAL.

Nous disions, *we may say*,  
 vous disiez, *ye may say*,  
 ils disent, *they may say*.

## Imperfect.

Je di-raïs, *I should say*. See page 86. F.

que

## Preterperfect.

Je disse, *that I may say*,  
 tu disses, *thou might say*,  
 il dît, *he might say*.

Nous dissions, *we might say*,  
 vous dissiez, *ye might say*,  
 ils dîssent, *they might say*.

*Redire*, is conjugated after the same manner.

*Disconvenir*, to disagree, like *venir*.

*Discourir*, to converse, like *courir*.

## DISSOUDRE, to dissolve.

This verb is conjugated like *absoudre*. The two preter tenses are likewise wanting.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

DORMIR, to sleep.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Dormant, *sleeping*.

PAST.

| Dormi, *slept*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je dors, *I sleep*,  
 tu dors, *thou sleepest*,  
 il dort, *he sleeps*.

PLURAL.

Nous dormons, *we sleep*,  
 vous dormez, *ye sleep*,  
 ils dorment, *they sleep*.

## Imperfect.

Je dorm-ais, *I did sleep*. See page 86. B.

## Preterperfect.

Je dorm-is, *I slept*. See page 86. C, 2.

## Future.

*Je dormi-rai*, *I shall sleep*. See page 86. D.



## A GRAMMAR OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Dors, *sleep thou,*  
qu'il dorme, *let him sleep.*

Dormons, *let us sleep,*  
dormez, *sleep ye,*  
qu'ils dorment, *let them sleep.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

que PLURAL.

Je dorme, *that I may*  
tu dormes, *thou mayest*  
il dorme, *he may*

Nous dormions, *we may*  
vous dormiez, *ye may*  
ils dorment, *they may*

Imperfect.

Je dormi-raïs, *I should sleep.* See page 86. F.

que

Preterperfect.

Je dorm-isse, *that I might sleep.* See page 87. G, 2.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Ecrire, *to write.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Ecrivant, *writing.*Ecrit, *written.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

J'écris, *I write,*  
tu écris, *thou writest,*  
il écrit, *he writes.*

Nous écrivons, *we write,*  
vous écrivez, *ye write,*  
ils écrivent, *they write.*

Imperfect.

J'écriv-ais, *I did write.* See page 86. B.

Preterperfect.

J'écriv-is, *I wrote.* See page 86. C, 2.

Future.

J'écri-rai, *I shall write.* See page 86. D.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Ecris, *write thou,*  
qu'il écrive, *let him write,*

Ecrivons, *let us write,*  
écrivez, *write ye,*  
qu'ils écrivent, *let them write.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

J'écrive, *that I may write*,  
 tu écrives, *thou may write*,  
 il écrive, *he may write*.

que PLURAL.

Nous écrivions, *we m. write*,  
 vous écriviez, *ye may write*,  
 ils écrivent, *they may write*,

## Imperfect.

J'écri-rai, *I should write*. See p. 86. F.

que

## Preterperfect.

J'écriv-isse, *I might write*. See p. 87. G, 2.Emouvoir, *to stir up*, like *mouvoir*.Encourir, *to incur*, like *courir*.Endormir, *to lull asleep*, like *dormir*.S'enquérir, *to inquire*, like *acquérir*.S'entremettre, *to intermeddle*, like *mettre*.Entreprendre, *to undertake*, like *prendre*.Entretenir, *to entertain*, like *tenir*.Entrouvrir, *to open a little*, like *couvrir*.ENVOYER, *to send*.

This verb is irregular in two tenses only, viz.

## Future.

J'enver-rai, *I shall send*. See p. 86. D.

## Imperfect of the Subjunctive Mood.

J'enver-rai, *I should send*. See p. 86. F.

The other tenses are regular. Its compound *renvoyer*,  
 to send back, is likewise irregular only in the two above  
 tenses.

Equivaloir, *to be of equal value*, like *valoir*.EXCLURE, *to exclude*.

This verb is conjugated like *conclure*, except in the  
 participle past, where it is spelled *exclus*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

EXTRAIRE, *to extract*.

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

wanting.

## PAST.

| Extrait, extracted.

## A GRAMMAR OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

#### SINGULAR.

J'extrais, *I extract*,  
tu extrais, *thou extractest*,  
il extrait, *he extracts*.

#### PLURAL.

Nous extrayons, *we extract*,  
vous extrayez, *ye extract*,  
ils extraient, *they extract*.

### Future.

J'extrairai, *I shall*  
tu extrairas, *thou shalt*  
il extraira, *he shall*

} *extract.*

Nous extrairons, *we sh.*  
vous extrairez, *ye sha.*  
ils extrairont, *they sha.*

} *extract.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

#### SINGULAR.

J'extrairais, *I should*  
tu extrairais, *thou sho.*  
il extrairait, *he should*

} *extract.*

#### PLURAL.

Nous extrairions, *w. sh.*  
vous extrairiez, *ye sh.*  
ils extrairaient, *they s.*

} *extract.*

Observe : *abstraire*, *distraindre*, and *soustraire*, are conjugated after the same manner, and want the same tenses : Moreover they are seldom used in many of their simple tenses. Even instead of *extraire*, and *soustraire*, we frequently make use of *faire un extrait*, *faire une soustraction*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

FAIRE, *to do*, or *to make*.

### PARTICIPLES.

#### PRESENT.

Faisant, (*pr. fesant*) *doing*.

#### PAST.

Fait, *done*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

#### SINGULAR.

Je fais, *I do*,  
tu fais, *thou doest*,  
il fait, *he does*.

#### PLURAL.

Nous faisons, (*pron. fesons*)  
vous faites, *ye do*, [*we do*,  
ils font, *they do*.

### Imperfect.

*Je fais-ais*, (*pron. fes-ois*) *I did do*. See page 28. B.

Preterperfect.

Je fis, *I did,*  
tu fis, *thou didst,*  
il fit, *he did.*

Nous fimes, *we did,*  
vous fites, *ye did,*  
ils firent, *they did.*

Future.

Je fe-rai, *I shall do.* See page 86. D.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Fais, *do thou,*  
qu'il fasse, *let him do.*

PLURAL.

Faisons, *let us do,*  
faites, *do ye,*  
qu'ils fassent, *let them do.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je fasse, *that I may do,*  
tu fasses, *thou mayest do,*  
il fasse, *he may do.*

PLURAL.

Nous fassions, *we may do,*  
vous fassiez, *ye may do,*  
ils fassent, *they may do.*

Imperfect.

Je fe-rai*s* *I should do.* See page 86. F.

que

Preterperfect.

Je fissse, *that I might do,*  
tu fissses, *thou mightest do,*  
il fît, *he might do.*

Nous fissions, *we might do,*  
vous fissiez, *ye might do,*  
ils fissent, *they might do.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

FUIR, *to fly.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Fuyant, *flying.*

PAST.

Fui, *fled.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je fuis, *I fly,*  
tu fuis, *thou flyest,*  
il fuit, *he flies.*

PLURAL.

Nous fuyons, *we fly,*  
vous fuyez, *ye fly,*  
ils fuient, *they fly.*

## Imperfect.

*Je fuy-ais, I did fly.* See page 86. B.

## Future.

*Je fui-rai, I shall fly.* See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

*Fui, fly thou,*  
*qu'il fuie, let him fly.*

## PLURAL.

*Fuyons, let us fly,*  
*fuyez, fly ye,*  
*qu'ils fuient, let them fly.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

que

## Present Tense.

*Je fuie, that I may fly,*  
*tu fuies, thou mayest fly,*  
*il fuie, he may fly.*

*Nous fuyions, we may fly,*  
*vous fuyiez, ye may fly,*  
*ils fuient, they may fly.*

## Imperfect.

*Je fui-rai, I should fly.* See page 86. F.

This verb is seldom used in the preterperfect tenses of the indicative mood and subjunctive mood : instead of them we say, *Je pris la fuite, Je prisse la fuite*—when that verb is neuter ; and *J'évitasse*, when it is active.

## HAÏR, to hate.

This verb is regular : its irregularity falls only upon the pronunciation of the first, second, and third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood, and of the second person of the singular in the imperative mood. Thus we write and pronounce in one syllable, *Je hais, I hate, tu hais, thou hatest, il hait, he hates, hais, hate thou ;* whereas, in all other tenses, *a* is pronounced separately from the following *i*, and makes a syllable by itself, as *nous haïssons, we hate ; vous haïssez, ye hate ; ils haïssent, they hate.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*LIRE, to read.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

*Lisant, reading.*

## PAST.

*Lus, read.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je lis, *I read*,  
tu lis, *thou readest*,  
il lit, *he reads*.

PLURAL.

Nous lisons, *we read*,  
vous lisez, *ye read*,  
ils lisent, *they read*.

Imperfect.

Je li-raï, *I did read*. See page 86. B.

Preterperfect.

Je lus, *I read*,  
tu lus, *thou readedst*,  
il lut, *he read*.

Nous lûmes, *we read*,  
vous lûtes, *ye read*,  
ils lurent, *they read*.

Future.

Je li-rai, *I shall read*. See page 86. D.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Lis, *read thou*,  
qu'il lise, *let him read*.

PLURAL.

Lisons, *let us read*,  
lisez, *read ye*,  
qu'ils lisent, *let them read*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je lise, *that I may read*,  
tu lises, *thou mayest read*,  
il lise, *he may read*.

PLURAL.

Nous lisions, *we may read*,  
vous lisiez, *ye may read*,  
ils lisent, *they may read*.

Imperfect.

Je li-raï, *I should read*. See page 86. F.

que

Preterperfect.

Je lusse, *that I might read*,  
tu lusses, *th. mightest read*,  
il lût, *he might read*.

Nous lussions, *we mig. read*,  
vous lussiez, *ye might read*,  
ils lussent, *they might read*.

Maintenir, *to maintain*, like *tenir*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

MENTIR, *to lie*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Menant, *lying*.

PAST.

[ Menti, *lied*.

# A GRAMMAR OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

### SINGULAR.

Je mens, *I lie*,  
tu mens, *thou liest*,  
il ment, *he lies*.

### PLURAL.

Nous mentons, *we lie*,  
vous mentez, *ye lie*,  
ils mentent, *they lie*.

## Imperfect.

Je ment-ais, *I did lie*. See page 86. B.

## Preterperfect.

Je ment-is, *I lied*. See page 86. C. 2.

## Future.

Je ment-rai, *I shall lie*. See page 86. D.

# IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### SINGULAR.

Mens, *lie thou*,  
qu'il mente, *let him lie*.

### PLURAL.

Mentons, *let us lie*,  
mentez, *lie ye*,  
qu'ils mentent, *let them lie*.

# SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

### que SINGULAR.

Je mente, *that I may lie*,  
tu mentes, *thou mayest lie*,  
il mente, *he may lie*.

### PLURAL.

Nous mentions, *we may lie*,  
vous mentiez, *ye may lie*,  
ils mentent, *they may lie*.

## Imperfect.

Je menti-rai, *I should lie*. See page 86. F.

### que

## Preterperfect.

Je ment-isse, *that I might lie*. See page 86. G. 2.

## ME'DIRE, to slander.

This verb is conjugated like *contredire*.

Se méprendre, to mistake, like *prendre*.

Mésosfrir, to underbid, like *offrir*.

## MAUDIRE, to curse.

This verb is likewise conjugated like *contredire*, except in the second person plural, where it doubles the *s*; as, *vous maudissez*, you curse; also in the other tenses and person, and in the participle present.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

METTRE, *to put.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Mettant, *putting.*

PAST.

Mis, *put.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je mets, *I put,*  
tu mets, *thou puttest,*  
il met, *he puts.*

PLURAL.

Nous mettons, *we put,*  
vous mettez, *ye put,*  
ils mettent, *they put.*

Imperfect.

Je mett-ais, *I did put.* See page 86. B.

Preterperfect.

Je mis, *I put,*  
tu mis, *thou puttest,*  
il mit, *he put.*

Nous mîmes, *we put,*  
vous mîtes, *ye put.*  
ils mirent, *they put.*

Future.

Je mett-rai, *I shall put.* See page 86. D.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Mets, *put thou,*  
qu'il mette, *let him put.*

PLURAL.

Mettons, *let us put,*  
mettez, *put ye,*  
qu'ils mettent, *let them put.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je mette, *that I may put,*  
tu mettes, *thou mayest put,*  
il mette, *he may put.*

PLURAL.

Nous mettions, *we may put,*  
vous mettiez, *ye may put,*  
ils mettent, *they may put.*

Imperfect.

Je mett-rais, *I should put.* See page 86. F.

que

Preterperfect.

Je misse, *that I might put,*  
tu misses, *thou mightest put,*  
il mît, *he might put.*

Nous missions, *we might put,*  
vous missiez, *ye might put,*  
ils missent, *they might put.*



# A GRAMMAR OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

**MOUDRE, to grind.**

## PARTICIPLES.

**PRESENT.**

**Moulant, grinding.**

**PAST.**

**Moulu, ground.**

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

**SINGULAR.**

**Je mouds, I grind,**  
**tu mouds, thou grindest,**  
**il moud, he grinds.**

**PLURAL.**

**Nous moulons, we grind,**  
**vous moulez, ye grind,**  
**ils moulent, they grind.**

### Imperfect.

**Je moul-ais, I did grind. See page 86. B.**

### Preterperfect.

**Je moul-us, I ground. See page 86. C. 3.**

### Future.

**Je moud-rai, I shall grind. See page 86. D.**

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

**SINGULAR.**

**Mouds, grind thou,**  
**qu'il moule, let him grind.**

**PLURAL.**

**Moulons, let us grind,**  
**moulez, grind ye,**  
**qu'ils moulent, let them gri.**

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

**que**

**SINGULAR.**

**Je moule, that I may grind,**  
**tu moules, thou mayest gri.**  
**il moule, he may grind.**

**PLURAL.**

**Nous moulions, we may gr.**  
**vous mouliez, ye may grind,**  
**ils moulent, they may grind.**

### Imperfect.

**Je moud-rai, I should grind. See page 86. F.**

**que**

### Preterperfect.

**Je moul-usse, that I might grind. See page 86. G. 3.**

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

**MOURIR, to die.**

## PARTICIPLES.

**PRESENT.**

**Mourant, dying.**

**PAST.**

**Mort, dead.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je meurs, *I die*,  
tu meurs, *thou diest*,  
il meurt, *he dies*.

PLURAL.

Nous mourons, *we die*,  
vous mourez, *ye die*,  
ils meurent, *they die*.

Imperfect.

Je mour-ais, *I did die*. See page 86. B.

Preterperfect.

Je mour-us, *I died*. See page 86. C. 3.

Future.

Je mour-rai, *I shall die*. See page 86. D.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Meurs, *die thou*,  
qu'il meure, *let him die*.

PLURAL.

Mourons, *let us die*,  
mourez, *die ye*,  
qu'ils meurent, *let them die*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je meure, *that I may die*,  
tu meures, *thou mayest die*,  
il meure, *he may die*.

que PLURAL.

Nous mourions, *we may die*,  
vous mouriez, *ye may die*,  
ils meurent, *they may die*.

Imperfect.

Je mour-rais, *that I should die*. See page 86. F.

que

Preterperfect.

Je mour-usse, *I might die*. See page 86. G. 3.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

MOUVOIR, *to move*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Mouvant, *moving*.

PAST.

Mu, *moved*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je meurs, *I move*,  
tu meurs, *thou movest*,  
il meut, *he moves*.

PLURAL.

Nous mouvons, *we move*,  
vous mouvez, *ye move*,  
ils meuvent, *they move*.

## Imperfect.

Je mouv-ais, *I did move.* See page 86. B.

## Preterperfect.

Je m-us, *I moved.* See page 86. C. 3.

## Future.

Je mouv-rai, *I shall move.* See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Meus, *move thou,*  
qu'il meuve, *let him move.*

## PLURAL.

Mouvons, *let us move,*  
mouvez, *move ye,*  
qu'ils meuvent, *let them mov.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je meuve, *that I may move,*  
tu meuves, *thou mayest move,*  
il meùve, *he may move.*

PLURAL.

Nous mouvions, *we may mo.*  
vous mouviez, *ye may move,*  
ils meuvent, *they may move.*

## Imperfect.

Je mouv-rai, *I should move.* See page 86. F.

que

## Preterperfect.

Je m-usse, *I might move.* See page 87. G. 3.

This verb, according to the FRENCH ACADEMY, is seldom used; instead of which we make use of *remuer*, or *mettre en mouvement*, *faire aller d'un lieu à un autre*, *faire changer de place.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

NAÎTRE, *to be born.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Naissant, *being born.*

## PAST.

Né, *born.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je nais, *I am born,*  
tu nais, *thou art born,*  
naît, *he is born.*

## PLURAL.

Nous naissons, *we are born,*  
vous naissez, *ye are born,*  
ils naissent, *they are born.*

Imperfect.

Je naiss-ais, *I was born.* See page 86. B.

Preterperfect.

Je naquis, <i>I was born,</i>		Nous naquîmes, <i>we w. born,</i>
tu naquis, <i>thou wast born,</i>		vous naquîtes, <i>ye were born,</i>
il naquit, <i>he was born.</i>		ils naquîrent, <i>they were born.</i>

Future.

Je naît-rai, *I shall be born.* See page 86. D.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Nais, *be thou born,*  
qu'il naisse, *let him be born.*

PLURAL.

Naissons, *let us be born,*  
naissiez, *be ye born,*  
qu'ils naissent, *let th. be bor.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

que  
Je naisse, *that I may be born,*  
tu naisses, *thou may be born,*  
il naisse, *he may be born.*

PLURAL.

[born.  
Nous naissions, *we may be*  
vous naissiez, *ye may be born,*  
ils naissent, *they may be born.*

Imperfect.

Je naît-raïs, *I should be born.* See page 86. F.

Preterperfect.

que		[be born.
Je naquisse, <i>that I m. be bor.</i>		Nous naquissions, <i>we might</i>
tu naquisses, <i>thou m. be born,</i>		vous naquissiez, <i>ye m. be bor.</i>
il naquît, <i>he might be born.</i>		ils naquissent, <i>they m. be bor.</i>

Obtenir, *to obtain,* like *tenir.*

Offrir, *to offer,* like *couvrir.*

Omettre, *to omit,* like *mettre.*

Ouvrir, *to open,* like *couvrir.*

OUIR, *to hear.*

This verb is very seldom used, except in the participle past, and before *dire*; as, *Je l'ai ouï dire*, I heard it. In this case it is conjugated by the help of *avoir*, through all its tenses. Instead of the verb *ouïr*, we make use of *entendre*.

PAÎTRE, *to graze.*

This verb is conjugated like *naître*, but the two preter tenses, and the participle past, are wanting, whereas *re-paître*, its compound, though little used, has them all. See *Repaître*.

Parcourir, *to run over*, like *courir*.

PARAÎTRE, *to appear.*

This verb and its compounds are conjugated like *con-naître*.

PARTIR, *to go away.*

This verb is conjugated like *mettir*.

Parvenir, *to attain*, like *venir*.

Permettre, *to permit*, like *mettre*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PLAIRE, *to please.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Plaisant, *pleasing.*

## PAST.

Plu, *pleased.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je plais, *I please*,  
tu plais, *thou pleasest*,  
il plaît, *he pleases*.

## PLURAL.

Nous plaisons, *we please*,  
vous plaisez, *ye please*,  
ils plaisent, *they please*.

## Imperfect.

Je plais-ais, *I did please*. See page 86. B.

## Preterperfect.

Je plus, *I pleased*,  
tu plus, *thou pleasedst*,  
il plut, *he pleased*.

Nous plûmes, *we pleased*,  
vous plûtes, *ye pleased*,  
ils plurent, *they pleased*.

## Future.

Je plai-rai, *I shall please*. See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Plais, *please thou*,  
*'il plaise, let him please.*

## PLURAL.

Plaisons, *let us please*,  
plaisez, *please ye*,  
qu'ils plaisent, *let them please*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

que

Present Tense.

Je plais, *that I may please,*tu plaises, *thou mayest plea.*il plaise, *he may please.*Nous plaissions, *we m. please,*vous plaisiez, *ye may please,*ils plaisent, *they may please.*

Imperfect.

Je plai-rai, *I should please.* See page 86. F.

que

Preterperfect.

Je plusse, *that I might plea.*tu plusses, *th. mightest plea.*il plût, *he might please.*Nous plussions, *we m. pleas.*vous plussiez, *ye might plea.*ils plussent, *they mi. please.*POURVOIR, *to provide.*

This verb is conjugated like *prévoir*, except in both the preter tenses, where it makes *Je pourvus—Je pourvusse.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

POUVOIR, *to be able.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Pouvant, *being able.*

PAST.

Pu, *been able.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je puis,\* or je peux, *I am*tu peux, *thou art able, [able,*il peut, *he is able.*

PLURAL.

Nous pouvons, *we are able,*vous pouvez, *ye are able,*ils peuvent, *they are able.*

Imperfect.

Je pouv-ais, *I was able.* See page 86. B.

Preterperfect.

Je pus, *I was able,*tu pus, *thou wast able,*il put, *he was able.*Nous pûmes, *we were able,*vous pûtes, *ye were able,*ils purent, *they were able.*

Future.

Je pour-rai, *I shall be able.* See page. 86. D.

\* According to the French Academy, *je puis*, or *je peux*, is indiscriminately used. T. W.

# A GRAMMAR OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je puisse, *that I may be able,*  
tu puisses, *thou may be able,*  
il puisse, *he may be able.*

que PLURAL.

Nous puissions *we m. be a*  
vous puissiez, *ye ma. be al*  
ils puissent, *they may be al*

### Imperfect.

que

Je pusse, *that I mig. be able,*  
tu pusses, *th. might be able,*  
il pût, *he might be able.*

Nous puissions, *we might* [al  
vous puissiez, *ye m. be al*  
ils pussent, *they m. be abl*

### PRÉDIRE, to foretell.

This verb is conjugated like *confire*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

### PRENDRE, to take.

#### PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Prenant, *taking.*

PAST.

| Pris, *taken.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je prends, *I take,*  
tu prends, *thou takest,*  
il prend, *he takes.*

PLURAL.

Nous prenons, *we take,*  
vous prenez, *ye take,*  
ils prennent, *they take.*

### Imperfect.

Je pren-ais, *I did take.* See p. 86. B.

### Preterperfect.

Je pris, *I took,*  
tu pris, *thou tookest,*  
il prit, *he took.*

Nous primes, *we took,*  
vous prîtes, *ye took,*  
ils prirent, *they took.*

### Future.

*Je prend-rai, I shall take.* See page 86. D.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

**Prends, take thou,**  
**qu'il prenne, let him take.**

**Prenons, let us take,**  
**prenez, take ye,**  
**qu'ils prennent, let th. take.**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

**Je prenne, that I may take,**  
**tu prennes, thou mayest tak.**  
**il prenne, he may take.**

**Nous prennon, we may take**  
**vous preniez, ye may take,**  
**ils prennent, they may take.**

Imperfect.

**Je prend-rais, I should take.** See page 86. F.

que

Preterperfect.

**Je pris, that I might take,**  
**tu prisses, thou mightst take,**  
**il prit, he might take.**

**Nous prissions, we mi. take,**  
**vous prissiez, ye might take,**  
**ils prissent, they might take.**

**Pressentir, to foresee, like sentir.**

**Prévaloir, to prevail, like valoir.**

**Prévenir, to prevent, like venir.**

INFINITIVE MOOD.

**PRÉVOIR, to foresee.**

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

**Prévoyant, foreseeing.**

**Prévu, foreseen.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

**Je prévois, I foresee,**  
**tu prévois, thou foreseest,**  
**il prévoit, he foresees.**

**Nous prévoyons, we foresee,**  
**vous prévoyez, ye foresee,**  
**ils prévoient, they foresee.**

Imperfect.

**Je prévoy-ais, I did foresee.** See page 86. B.

Preterperfect.

**Je prév-is, I foresaw.** See page 86. C. 2.



## A GRAMMAR OF THE

## Future.

**Je prévoi-rai, I shall foresee.** See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

**Prévois, foresee thou,**  
**qu'il prévoie, let him foresee.**

**Prévoyons, let us foresee,**  
**prévoyez, foresee ye,**  
**qu'ils prévoient, let th. fore.**

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

**que**  
**Je prévoie, that I may fore.**  
**tu prévoies, th. may foresee,**  
**il prevoie, he may foresee.**

**[foresee,**  
**Nous prévoyions, we may**  
**vous prévoyiez, ye m. fores.**  
**ils prévoient, th. m. foresee.**

## Imperfect.

**Je prévoi-rais, I should foresee.** See page 86. F.

que

## Preterperfect.

**Je prév-isse, that I might foresee.** See page 86. G. 2.

**Promettre, to promise, like mettre.**

**Provenir, to proceed, like venir.**

**Se rasseoir, to sit down again, like asseoir.**

**Recourir, to have recourse, like courir.**

**Recouvrir, to cover again, like couvrir.**

**Recueillir, to reap, like cueillir.**

**Remettre, to place again, like mettre.**

## REPAÎTRE, to feed.

This verb is conjugated like *naitre*, except in both the preter tenses, and in the participle past, wherein it makes *Je repus,—Je repusse,—repu.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

**REPENTIR, (SE,) to repent.**

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

**Se repentant, repenting.** | **Repenti, repented.**

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

**Je me repens, I repent,**  
**tu te repens, thou repentest,**  
**il se repent, he repents.**

**[repent,**  
**Nous nous repentons, we**  
**vous vous repentez, ye rep.**  
**ils se repentent, they repent.**

## FRENCH TONGUE.

### Imperfect.

Je me repent-ais, *I did repent.* See page 86. B.

### Preterperfect.

Je me repent-is, *I repented.* See page 86. C. 2.

### Future.

Je me repenti-rai, *I shall repent.* See p. 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### SINGULAR.

Repens-toi, *repent thou,*  
qu'il se repente, *let him rep.*

### PLURAL.

Repentons-nous, *let us repe.*  
repentez-vous, *repent ye,*  
qu'ils se repentent, *let th. re.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Præsent Tense.

#### SINGULAR.

que  
Je me repente, *that I may re.*  
tu te repentes, *thou mayst re.*  
il se repente, *he may repent.*

#### PLURAL.

que [may repent,  
Nous nous repentions, *we*  
vous vous repentiez, *ye m. r.*  
ils se repentent, *they m, re.*

### Imperfect.

Je me repenti-rai, *I should repent.* See page 86. F.

que Preterperfect.

Je me repent-isse, *that I might repent.* See p. 86. G. 2.

Reprendre, *to take again,* like *prendre.*

Requérir, *to request,* like *acquérir.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

RÉSoudre, *to resolve.*

### PARTICIPLES.

#### PRESENT.

Résolvant, *resolving.*

#### PAST.

| Résolu,\* *resolved.*

\* We say likewise *résous*, speaking of things which may be resolved into others. It is never used in the feminine gender, according to the FRENCH ACADEMY: thus we say, un brouillard *résous en pluie*, a fog resolved into rain.

## A GRAMMAR OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

#### SINGULAR.

**Je** résous, *I resolve,*  
**tu** résous, *thou resolvest,*  
**il** résout, *he resolves.*

#### PLURAL.

**Nous** résolvons, *we resolve,*  
**vous** résolvez, *ye resolve,*  
**ils** résolvent, *they resolve.*

### Imperfect.

**Je** résol-ais, *I should resolve.* See page 86. B.

### Preterperfect.

**Je** résol-us, *I resolved.* See page 86. C. 3.

### Future.

**Je** résoud-rai, *I shall resolve.* See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

#### SINGULAR.

**Résous**, *resolve thou,*  
**qu'il** résolve, *let him resolve.*

#### PLURAL.

**Résolvons**, *let us resolve,*  
**résolvez**, *resolve ye,*  
**qu'ils** résolvent, *let them re.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

#### que SINGULAR.

**Je** résolve, *that I may res.*  
**tu** résolves, *thou mayest re.*  
**il** résolve, *he may resolve.*

#### que PLURAL.

**Nous** résolvions, *we may re.*  
**vous** résolviez, *ye may reso.*  
**ils** résolvent, *they may reso.*

### Imperfect.

**Je** résoud-rais, *I should resolve.* See page 86. F.

que

### Preterperfect.

**Je** résol-usse, *that I might resolve.* See page 87. G. 2.

**Resentir**, *to feel*, like *sentir*.

**Retenir**, *to retain*, like *tenir*.

**Revenir**, *to return*, like *venir*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

**REVÊTIR**, *to invest.*

### PARTICIPLES.

#### PRESENT.

**vétant**, *investing.*

#### PAST.

**Revêtu**, *invested.*

# FRENCH TONGUE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

Je revêts, <i>I invest,</i>	Nous revêtons, <i>we invest,</i>
tu revêts, <i>thou investest,</i>	vous revêtez, <i>ye invest,</i>
il revêt, <i>he invests.</i>	ils revêtent, <i>they invest.</i>

### Imperfect.

Je revêt-ais, *I did invest.* See page 86. B.

### Preterperfect.

Je revêt-is, *I invested.* See page 86. C. 2.

### Future.

Je revêti-rai, *I shall invest.* See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### SINGULAR.

### PLURAL.

Revêts, <i>invest thou,</i>	Revêtons, <i>let us invest,</i>
qu'il revête, <i>let him invest.</i>	revêtez, <i>invest ye,</i>
	qu'ils revêtent, <i>let th. invest.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
Je revête, <i>that I may invest,</i>	Nous revêtions, <i>we ma.</i>	} <i>invest.</i>
tu revêtes, <i>th. mayest invest,</i>	vous revétiez, <i>ye may</i>	
il revête, <i>he may invest.</i>	ils revêtent, <i>they may</i>	

### Imperfect.

Je revêti-raïs, *I should invest.* See page 86. F.

### Preterperfect.

Je revêt-isse, *that I might invest.* See page 87. G. 2.

REVOIR, *to see again, like voir.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

RIRE, *to laugh.*

### PARTICIPLES.

### PRESENT.

### PAST.

Riant, <i>laughing.</i>	Ri, <i>laughed.</i>
-------------------------	---------------------

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Je ris, <i>I laugh,</i>	Nous rions, <i>we laugh,</i>
tu ris, <i>thou laughest,</i>	vous riez, <i>ye laugh,</i>
il rit, <i>he laughs.</i>	ils rient, <i>they laugh.</i>

## Imperfect.

**Je ri-ais, I did laugh.** See page 86. B.

## Preterperfect.

<b>Je ris, I laughed,</b>	<b>Nous rîmes, we laughed,</b>
<b>tu ris, thou laughedst,</b>	<b>vous rîtes, ye laughed,</b>
<b>il rit, he laughed.</b>	<b>ils rirent, they laughed.</b>

## Future.

**Je ri-rai, I shall laugh.** See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

<b>Ris, laugh thou,</b>	<b>Rions, let us laugh,</b>
<b>qu'il rie, let him laugh.</b>	<b>riez, laugh ye,</b>
	<b>qu'ils rient, let them laugh.</b>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<b>que SINGULAR.</b>	<b>que PLURAL.</b>
<b>Je rie, that I may laugh,</b>	<b>Nous riions, we may laugh,</b>
<b>tu ries, thou mayest laugh,</b>	<b>vous riiez, ye may laugh,</b>
<b>il rie, he may laugh.</b>	<b>ils rient, they may laugh.</b>

## Imperfect.

**Je ri-raïs, I should laugh.** See page 86. F.

<b>que</b>	<b>Preterperfect.</b>
<b>Je risse, that I might laugh,</b>	<b>Nous rissions, we mi. laugh,</b>
<b>tu risses, thou mightest lau.</b>	<b>vous rissiez, ye might laugh,</b>
<b>il rit, he might laugh.</b>	<b>ils rissent, they might laugh.</b>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## ROMPRE, to break.

## PARTICIPLES.

<b>PRESENT.</b>	<b>PAST.</b>
<b>Rompant, breaking.</b>	<b>Rompu, broken.</b>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

<b>SINGULAR.</b>	<b>PLURAL.</b>
<b>Je romps, I break,</b>	<b>Nous rompons, we break,</b>
<b>tu romps, thou breakest,</b>	<b>vous rompez, ye break,</b>
<b>ils rompt, he breaks.</b>	<b>ils rompent, they break.</b>

**Imperfect.**

**Je romp-ais, I did break.** See page 86. B.

**Preterperfect.**

**Je romp-is, I broke.** See page 86. C. 3.

**Future.**

**Je romp-rai, I shall break.** See page 86. D.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

**SINGULAR.**

**Romps, break thou,**  
**qu'il rompe, let him break.**

**PLURAL.**

**Rompons, let us break,**  
**rompez, break ye,**  
**qu'ils rompent, let them bre.**

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

**Present Tense.**

**que SINGULAR.**

**Je rompe, that I may break,**  
**tu rompes, th. mayest break,**  
**il rompe, he may break.**

**que PLURAL.**

**Nous rompons, we may br.**  
**vous rompiez, ye may break,**  
**ils rompent, th. may break.**

**Imperfect.**

**Je romp-ais, I should break.** See page 86. F.

**que**

**Preterperfect.**

**Je romp-isse, that I might break.** See page 87. G. 2.

**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

**SAVOIR, to know.**

**PARTICIPLES.**

**PRESENT.**

**Sachant, knowing.**

**PAST.**

**| Su, known.**

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

**Present Tense.**

**SINGULAR.**

**Je sais, I know,**  
**tu sais, thou knowest,**  
**il sait, he knows.**

**PLURAL.**

**Nous savons, we know,**  
**vous savez, ye know,**  
**ils savent, they know.**

**Imperfect.**

**Je sav-ais, I did know.** See page 86. B.

## Preterperfect.

Je sus, *I knew*,  
tu sus, *thou knewest*,  
il sut, *he knew*.

Nous sûmes, *we knew*,  
vous sûtes, *ye knew*,  
ils surent, *they knew*.

## Future.

Je saurai, *I shall know*,  
tu sauras, *thou wilt know*,  
il saura, *he will know*.

Nous saurons, *we shall know*,  
vous saurez, *ye will know*,  
ils sauront, *they will know*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Sache, *know thou*,  
qu'il sache, *let him know*.

## PLURAL.

Sachons, *let us know*,  
sachez, *know ye*,  
qu'ils sachent, *let th. know*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je sache, *that I may know*,  
tu saches, *th. mayest know*,  
il sache, *he may know*.

PLURAL.

Nous sachions, *we may know*,  
vous sachiez, *ye may know*,  
ils sachent, *they may know*.

## Imperfect.

Je saurais, *I should know*,  
tu saurais, *thou wouldst know*,  
il saurait, *he would know*.

Nous saurions, *we sh. know*,  
vous sauriez, *ye would know*,  
ils sauraient, *they wo. know*.

que

## Preterperfect.

Je susse, *that I might know*,  
tu susses, *th. mightest know*,  
il sût, *he might know*.

Nous sussions, *we mi. know*,  
vous sussiez, *ye might know*,  
ils sussent, *they might know*.

Secourir, *to succour*, like *courir*.

SENTIR, *to feel*.

SERVIR, *to serve*.

*Je sers, tu sers, il sert*, imperative mood second person singular, *sert*—in other tenses follow the same variation as *ir* in *mentir*.

SORTIR, *to go out*.

*These three verbs are conjugated like mentir. See D. 123.*

Souffrir, *to suffer*, like *couvrir*. See p. 110.

Soutenir, *to support*, like *tenir*.

Se souvenir, *to remember*, like *venir*.

SUFFIRE, *to suffice*.

This verb is conjugated like *lire*, except in the two preter tenses, and the participle past, where it makes *Je suffis*,—*Je suffisse*—*suffi*.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

SUIVRE, *to follow*.

#### PARTICIPLES.

##### PRESENT.

Suivant, *following*.

##### PAST.

| Suivi, *followed*.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Present Tense.

##### SINGULAR.

Je suis, *I follow*,  
tu suis, *thou followest*,  
il suit, *he follows*.

##### PLURAL.

Nous suivons, *we follow*,  
vous suivez, *ye follow*,  
ils suivent, *they follow*.

#### Imperfect.

Je suiv-ais, *I did follow*. See page 86. B.

#### Preterperfect.

Je suiv-is, *I followed*. See page 86. C. 2.

#### Future.

Je suiv-rai, *I shall follow*. See page 86. D.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

##### SINGULAR.

Suis, *follow thou*,  
qu'il suive, *let him follow*.

##### PLURAL.

Suivons, *let us follow*,  
suivez, *follow ye*,  
qu'ils suivent, *let them follow*.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### Present Tense.

##### SINGULAR.

Je suive, *that I may follow*,  
tu suives, *th. mayest follow*,  
il suive, *he may follow*.

##### PLURAL.

Nous suivions, *we m. follow*,  
vous suiviez, *ye may follow*,  
ils suivent, *they may follow*.



## Imperfect.

Je suiv-rais, *that I should follow.* See page 86. F.

## Preterperfect.

Je suiv-isse, *that I might follow.* See page 87. G. 2.

Surprendre, *to surprise*, like *prendre*.

Surseoir, *to adjourn*, like *asseoir*.

TAIRE, (SE,) *to hold one's tongue.*

This verb is conjugated like *plaire*. See page 13

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

TENIR, *to hold.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Tenant, *holding.*

## PAST.

Tenu, *held.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je tiens, *I hold,*  
tu tiens, *thou holdest,*  
il tient, *he holds.*

## PLURAL.

Nous tenons, *we hold,*  
vous tenez, *ye hold,*  
ils tiennent, *they hold.*

## Imperfect.

Je ten-ais, *I did hold.* See page 86. B.

## Preterperfect.

Je tins, *I held,*  
tu tins, *thou heldest,*  
il tint, *he held.*

Nous tinmes, *we held,*  
vous tintes, *ye held,*  
ils tinrent, *they held.*

## Future.

Je tiend-rai, *I shall hold.* See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Tiens, *hold thou,*  
qu'il tienne, *let him hold.*

## PLURAL.

Tenons, *let us hold,*  
tenez, *hold ye,*  
qu'ils tiennent, *let them hold.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## que SINGULAR.

Je tienne, *that I may hold,*  
tu tiennes, *thou mayest hold,*  
il tienne, *he may hold.*

## que PLURAL.

Nous tenions, *we may hold,*  
vous teniez, *ye may hold,*  
ils tiennent, *they may hold.*

Imperfect.

Je tiend-ram, *I should hold.* See page 86. F.

que

Preterperfect.

Je tinsse, <i>that I might hold,</i>	Nous tinssions, <i>we might ho.</i>
tu tinsses, <i>thou mightest ho.</i>	vous tinssiez, <i>ye mi. hold,</i>
il tint, <i>he might hold.</i>	ils tinssent, <i>they might hold.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

TRAIRE, *to milk.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Trayant, *milking.*

| Trait, *milked.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je traie, *I milk,*  
tu traies, *thou milkest,*  
il traie, *he milks.*

Nous trayons, *we milk,*  
vous trayez, *ye milk,*  
ils traient, *they milk.*

Imperfect.

Je tray-ais, *I did milk.* See page 86. B.

Preterperfect.

Je trai-rai, *I shall milk.* See page 86. D.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Traie, *milk thou,*  
qu'il traie, *let him milk.*

Trayons, *let us milk,*  
trayez, *milk ye,*  
qu'ils traient, *let them milk.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

que PLURAL.

Je traie, *that I may milk,*  
tu traies, *thou mayest milk,*  
il traie, *he may milk.*

Nous trayions, *we may milk,*  
vous trayiez, *ye may milk,*  
ils traient, *they may milk.*

Imperfect.

Je trai-raie, *I should milk.* See page 86. F.

## A GRAMMAR OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

**TRESSALLIR, to start.**

### PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

**Tressaillant, starting.**

PAST.

**Tressailli, started.**

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

**Je tressaille, I start,**  
**tu tressailles, thou startest,**  
**il tressaille, he starts.**

**Nous tressaillons, we start,**  
**vous tressaillez, ye start,**  
**ils tressaillent, they start.**

### Imperfect.

**Je tressaill-ais, I did start.** See page 86. B.

### Preterperfect.

**Je tressaill-is, I started.** See page 86. C. 2.

### Future.

**Je tressailli-rai, I shall start.** See page 86. D.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

**que**  
**Je tressaille, that I may start,**  
**tu tressailles, th. mayest sta.**  
**il tressaille, he may start.**

**[start]**  
**Nous tressaillions, we m.**  
**vous tressaillez, ye may st.**  
**ils tressaillent, they m. start.**

### Imperfect.

**Je tressailli-rai, I should start.** See page 86. F.

**que**

### Preterperfect.

**Je tressaill-isse, that I might start.** See page 87. G. 2.

**N. B.** The FRENCH ACADEMY say *tressaillir de peur, de crainte*, to start out of fear; *tressaillir de joye*, to leap for joy.

## VAINCRE, to vanquish.

This verb is conjugated like *convaincre*; but it is seldom used in some tenses, never in the singular of the present tense of the indicative mood. Instead of this verb, we often make use of *triompher, surmonter, être victorieux*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

VALOIR, *to be worth.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Valant, *being worth.*

PAST.

| Valu, *been worth.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je vaux, *I am worth,*  
tu vaux, *thou art worth*  
il vaut, *he is worth.*

PLURAL.

Nous valons, *we are worth,*  
vous valez, *ye are worth,*  
ils valent, *they are worth.*

Imperfect.

Je val-ais, *I was worth.* See page 86. B.

Preterperfect.

Je val-us, *I was worth.* See page 86. C. 3.

Future.

Je vaud-rai, *I shall be worth.* See page 86. D.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Vaux, *be thou worth,*  
qu'il vaille, *let him be worth.*

PLURAL.

Valons, *let us be worth.*  
valez, *be ye worth,*  
qu'ils vaillent, *let them be worth.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

que  
Je vaille, *that I may be worth.*  
tu vailles, *th. mayest be worth.*  
il vaille, *he may be worth.*

PLURAL.

[worth,  
Nous valions, *we may be*  
vous valiez, *ye may be worth,*  
ils vaillent, *th. may be worth.*

Imperfect.

Je vaud-rais, *I should be worth.* See page 86.

que

Preterperfect.

Je val-usse, *that I might be worth.* See page 87. G. 3.

*Prévaloir*, to prevail, is conjugated in the same manner, except that in the third person singular of the imperative mood it makes *prévale*; and in the present tense

of the subjunctive mood, it makes in the singular, *Je prévale, tu prévaies, il prévale.*

VENIR, *to come.*

This verb is conjugated like *tenir*. See page 142.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

VIVRE, *to live.*

#### PARTICIPLES.

##### PRESENT.

Vivant, *living.*

##### PAST.

Vécu, *lived.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Present Tense.

##### SINGULAR.

Je vis, *I live,*  
tu vis, *thou livest,*  
il vit, *he lives.*

##### PLURAL.

Nous vivons, *we live,*  
vous vivez, *ye live,*  
ils vivent, *they live.*

#### Imperfect.

Je viv-ais, *I did live.* See page 86. B.

#### Preterperfect.

Je vécus, *I live,*  
tu vécus, *thou livedst,*  
il vécut, *he lived.*

Nous vécûmes, *we lived,*  
vous vécûtes, *ye lived,*  
ils vécurent, *they lived.*

#### Future.

Je viv-rai, *I shall live.* See page 86. D.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

##### SINGULAR.

Vis, *live thou,*  
qu'il vive, *let him live.*

##### PLURAL.

Vivons, *let us live,*  
vivez, *live ye,*  
qu'ils vivent, *let them live.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### Present Tense.

##### SINGULAR.

Je vive, *that I may live,*  
tu vives, *thou mayest live,*  
il vive, *he may live.*

##### PLURAL.

Nous vivions, *we may live,*  
vous viviez, *ye may live,*  
ils vivent, *they may live.*

#### Imperfect.

Je viv-rais, *I should live.* See page 86. F.

**que**                      **Preterperfect.**  
**Je vécusse, that I mig. live,** | **Nous véussions, we mi. live,**  
**tu véusses, thou might. live,** | **vous véussiez, ye mi. live,**  
**il vécut, he might live.** | **ils véussent, they might live.**

**VOIR, to see.**

This verb is conjugated like *prévoir*, see page 133, except in the future, and in the imperfect tense of the subjunctive mood, where it makes *Je verrai, Je verrais*.

**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

**VOULOIR, to be willing.**

**PARTICIPLES.**

**PRESENT.**                      **PAST.**  
**Voulant, being willing.** | **Voulu, been willing.**

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

**Present Tense.**

**SINGULAR.**                      **PLURAL.**  
**Je veux, I am willing,** | **Nous voulons, w. are willing,**  
**tu veux, thou art willing,** | **vous voulez, ye are willing,**  
**il veut, he is willing.** | **ils veulent, they are willing.**

**Imperfect.**

**Je voul-ais, I was willing.** See page 86. B.

**Preterperfect.**

**Je voul-us, I was willing.** See page 86. C. 3.

**Future.**

**Je vould-rai, I shall be willing.** See page 86. D.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.**

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

**Present Tense.**

**SINGULAR.**                      **PLURAL.**  
**que**                      [*willing,* | [*willing,*  
**Je veuille, that I may be** | **Nous voulions, we may be**  
**tu veuilles, thou may. be will.** | **vous vouliez, ye may be will.**  
**il veuille, he may be willing.** | **ils veuillent, they may be wil.**

**Imperfect.**

**Je vould-rai, I should be willing.** See page 86. F.

**que**                      **Preterperfect.**  
**Je vould-usse, that I might be willing.** See page 87. G.

*Particular Observations upon some Verbs, chiefly Defective, and their manner of being conjugated and used, in Alphabetical order.*

**ASSORTIR**, *to suit, to match*; this verb is regular, and conjugated like *punir*: so is *resortir*, when it signifies to be under the jurisdiction of a court; but when it signifies to go out again, it is irregular, and conjugated like *partir*.

**BRAIRE**, *to bray*: this verb is used only in the following tenses, *il brail, il braira, il brairait*.

**BRUIRE**, *to bluster*: this verb is used only in the infinitive, and in the third person of the imperfect tense, indicative mood, both singular and plural, *il bruyait, ils bruyaient*, as, *les vents bruyaient*, the winds blustered.

*Bruyant*, having both genders and numbers, is by no means the participle of this verb, but an adjective; as, *les flots bruyants*, the blustering waves.

**CHOIR**, *to fall*: this verb is hardly used, but in the infinitive mood, and in the participle past *chu*. Instead of the feminine *chue*, we formerly made use of *chute*, which is still used in these proverbial manners of speaking, *chercher chape-chute, trouver chape-chute*, to look for, to find some occasion to make an advantage of the negligence, or misfortune of somebody.

**CLORE**, *to close*: this verb is used only in the three persons singular of the present tense, indicative mood, *je clos, tu clos, il clôt*: in the future, *je clorrai*; in the imperfect tense of the subjunctive mood, *je clorrais*, and in the participle past, *clos*. This verb is sometimes neuter in the third person singular: as, *la porte ne clôt pas bien, il y faut mettre de la lisère, elle clorra mieux*; the door does not shut well, you must put some list to it; it will shut better.

**DEFAILLIR**, *to decay, to grow faint and weak*; this verb is used only in the plural number of the indicative mood, present tense, *nous defaillons, vous défaillez, ils défont*; in the imperfect and preterperfect tenses, both singular and plural, of the same mood, *je defaillis, &c.* in all its compound tenses, *j'ai defailli, &c.* and in the infinitive mood: *Instead of this verb, it is always better to make use of tomber en défaillance.* This verb likewise signifies

to fail, to want : as, *toutes choses commencent à leur défailir*, they begin to want every thing : but in this sense it grows obsolete ; it has no participle active in either sense.

DEMOUVOIR, *to make desist*, (a law term :) this verb is used only in the infinitive mood : as, *rien ne l'a pu démolir de ses prétensions* ; nothing could make him give up his pretensions.

ECHOIR, *to fall out, to chance* ; this verb is conjugated like *déchoir*, see page 115 ; but it is only used in the third person singular of the indicative mood present tense, in the preterperfect and future tenses of the said mood, in the imperfect and preterperfect tenses of the subjunctive mood, in the participle past, and the participle of the present, wherein it makes *échéant*.

ÉCLORE, *to be hatched* : this verb is used only in the third person singular and plural of the present tense, indicative mood, *il éclot, ils éclosent* ; in the future, *il eclora, ils ecloront* ; in the present tense, subjunctive mood, *il éclore, ils eclosent* ; in the imperfect tense of the same mood, *il éclorait, ils écloraient* : and in the participle past wherein it makes *éclos*. This verb, in its compound tenses is conjugated with the auxiliary verb *être*, and is sometimes used in a figurative sense, speaking of one's thoughts, designs, &c. which begin to be discovered, after having been some time hidden : as, *ses desseins écloront quelque jour* ; his designs will one day come to light.

EMOUVOIR, *to stir up, to move* : this verb is conjugated like *mouvoir*, see page 127 ; it is used both in a proper and figurative sense ; in the first it is said of the most subtle parts of the body, as humours, vapours, blood, &c. : as, *le soleil émeit les vapeurs*, the sun stirs up the vapours ; in the second, it is applied to whatever may cause a motion, or excite a passion, &c. : as, *c'est un homme que rien n'émeut*, he is a man whom nothing moves. This verb is likewise used in a reflective sense : as, *il s'émeut une grande tempête*, there arose a great tempest.

ENCLORE, *to enclose*, is conjugated like *clorre*, and used in the same tenses.

S'ENSUIVRE, *to ensue, to follow* : this verb is conjugated like *suiivre*, in all its tenses and moods, only in the third person singular and plural. See page 141.



**FAILLIR, to fail:** this verb is conjugated in the present tense, indicative mood, *je faux, tu faux, il faut, nous faillons, vous failliez, ils faillent*; in the preterperfect tense, of the same mood, *je faillis, &c.* and in the participle active, *faillant*; as, *arriver à jour faillant*, to arrive at the close of the day. This verb is seldom used; however, we still make use of the participle past: as, *s'il a failli, il faut qu'il soit puni*, if he has done amiss, he must be punished. We likewise say in conversation, *le cœur me faut*, I am fainting.\*

**FALLOIR, sometimes signifies to want, to come short, to be far from:** as, *il s'en faut beaucoup*, there wants a great deal, it comes infinitely short: in this sense, it is preceded by *s'en*, and conjugated only in the third person singular, both in its simple and compound tenses: as, *il s'en faut, fulloit, fullut, faudra, faille faudroit, fallût; il s'en est fallu, &c.*

**FERIR, to strike:** this verb is used in the infinitive mood, only in this phrase, *sans coup férir*, without striking a blow. The participle past, *fêru*, is still used in the two following expressions, speaking in a jest: as, *il est fêru contre un tel*; he is indisposed against such a one; *il est fêru de cette femme*: he is smitten with this woman.

**FRIRE, to fry:** this verb is used only in the three persons singular of the present tense, indicative mood, *je fris, tu fris, il frit*: in the future tense singular and plural, *je frirai, &c.* in the imperative mood, second person singular, *fris*: in the imperfect tense, subjunctive mood, singular and plural, *je frirais, &c.* and in the participle past *frit*.

**GESIR, to lie:** this verb is quite obsolete, even in the infinitive mood; however, we still say, *git, nous gisons, ils, gisent, il gisait*; as, *tout git en cela*; the whole business lies in that point; *ci git*, here lies.

**LUIRE, to shine:** this verb is conjugated like *traduire*, see page 92, except in the participle past, where it makes *lui*; and so is its compound *reluire*: moreover, these

\* The authors of the dictionary of Trévoux have *il faillira* in the future tense: they seem to be in the right; however, we say, *son ami ne lui faudra pas au besoin*, his friend will not be wanting to him in time of need; "but then it is rather the future of the verb *falloir*; which, though different from the verb *faillir*, has sometimes the same signification." *DICTIONNAIRE DE TRÉVOUX.*

two verbs want the preterperfect tense of the indicative and subjunctive moods.

**NUIRE**, *to hurt* : this verb, in all its tenses and moods, is conjugated like *traduire*, except in the participle past where it makes, *nui*.

**PLEUVOIR**, *to rain* : this verb is used only in the third person singular, and sometimes in the plural,—*il pleut, il pleuvait, il plut, il pleuvra, il pleuve, il pleuvrait, il plut, plu*.

**PROMOUVOIR**, *to promote* : this verb is used only in the infinitive mood, and in the participle past *promu*.

**QUERIR**, *to fetch* : this verb is used only in the infinitive mood, with the verbs *aller, venir, and envoyer* : as, *allez quérir, go and fetch*.

**RAVOIR**, *to have again* : this verb is used only in the infinitive mood.

**REPARTIR** : when this verb signifies either to go away again, to set out again, or to reply, it takes no accent upon the first syllable, is irregular, and conjugated like *partir* ; but when it signifies to share, to divide, it takes an acute accent upon the first syllable, is regular, conjugated like *punir*, and scarcely used, but in a few expressions speaking of an estate, money, &c. : as, *répartir une somme d'argent, to divide a sum of money*.

**RESORTIR**, see **ASSORTIR**, page 149.

**SAILLIR** : when this verb signifies to gush out, it is regular, and conjugated like *punir* ; but when it signifies to jut out, it is irregular, wants the participle past, is used only in the infinitive mood, and in the third person of some tenses : as, *ce balcon, cette corniche, saille trop, saillera trop, sailleroit trop*. In this sense it likewise wants the participle of the present, though we say in Fortification, *angle saillant*, and in Architecture, *corniche saillante*, but then *saillant* is an adjective.

**SEOIR**, *to fit well, to become* : this verb is never used in the infinitive mood, but only in the third person singular and plural of the following tenses : *il sieds, ils sièent ; il seyait, ils seyaient ; il siéra, il siéront ; il siéroit, ils siérarent*. This verb is still used in the participle of the present : as, *cette couleur vous seyant si bien, vous auriez tort d'en porter d'autre*, since this colour becomes you so well, you would be in the wrong to wear any other : but it is better to avoid it. This verb is sometimes impersonally

used : as, *il sieds mal à un homme de—* ; it does not become a man to—. This verb, in the sense of *to sit down*, is obsolete ; however, in Chancery or Law, we still make use of the participle of the present, *séant*, and the participle of the past *sis* : the former is applied to a person or persons who are sitting or residing : as, *le Roi séant en son lit de justice*, the King sitting on his throne ; *le Parlement est séant*, the Parliament is sitting ; the latter signifies situated ; as, *un héritage sis à—*, an estate situated at— ; *une maison sise rue St. Paul*, a house situated in St. Paul street.

**SORTIR** : when this verb is used in law, and signifies to get, to obtain, it is regular, and conjugated like *punir*, but it is used in a few tenses ; as, *cette sentence sortira son plein et entier effet* ; this sentence will take effect : *j'entends que cette clause sortisse son plein et entier effet*, I expect this clause should take effect.

**SOUDRE** (une question) *to solve or resolve* (a question.) This verb is used only in the infinitive mood, but it is obsolete, and we make use of *résoudre*.

## PART III.

---

THEORY JOINED TO PRACTICE:  
 THE FORMER CONTAINING THE  
**RULES OF THE FRENCH SYNTAX,**  
 WITH MANY  
 NEW OBSERVATIONS,  
 THE LATTER, THE  
 RULES AND OBSERVATIONS,  
 EXEMPLIFIED SEPARATELY,  
 FOR THE  
 SCHOLAR'S PRACTICE,  
 AFTER EACH PART OF SPEECH.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### *Rules and Observations upon Articles.*

1. THE definite article is used before the common nouns, denoting an individual distinction, or a totality of objects: as, the spring is an agreeable season, *le printemps est une saison agréable*; men are mortal, *les hommes sont mortels*.

2. The indefinite article is used before nouns taken in an indefinite and indeterminate sense, or in a sense which does not denote either an individual distinction, or a specific totality: as, learned people have approved his work, *des savans ont approuvé son ouvrage*. See Rule 18.

3. All common nouns or substantives take the definite article; also names of kingdoms, rivers, provinces, mountains, &c. unless in the sense of remaining in, going to, or coming from; in this case we make use of the prepositions *en* and *de*: as, I am going to France; *je vais en France*: he is arrived from Flanders, *il est arrivé de Flandre*. They live in Italy, *ils demeurent en Italie*.

4. Obs. Proper names in the plural take the definite article, though they have none in the singular, as, les Homeres, les Virgiles, &c.

5. When a superlative follows immediately its substantive, the definite article is always put before the superlative in the first case, and agrees with the substantive in gender and number; as, he is the most learned man, c'est l'homme, le plus savant: you speak of the most learned man, vous parlez de l'homme le plus savant.

Except when *un* or *une* are followed by a substantive; in this case the definite article is commonly used in the second case plural, as, he is one of the most learned men, c'est un homme des plus savans, or, c'est un des hommes les plus savans, or, c'est un des plus savans hommes.

6. Adjectives used substantively take the article: as, idle people are despised, les paresseux sont méprisés.

Nouns of measure, weight, &c. of things bought or sold, take the definite article, rendered in English by *a* or *an*; as, ten crowns a bushel, à dix écus le boisseau.

7. When a substantive having the definite article before it, is preceded by *tout*, the article is kept, in the first case, through all the cases of *tout*: as, all the world, tout le monde; of all the world, de tout le monde; to all the world, à tout le monde.

8. Some adverbs or prepositions, used substantively, require the article: as, the inside, le dedans; the outside, le dehors; the upper part, le dessus; the under part, le dessous.

9. Obs. The definite article is put before the names of the Italian authors according to their syntax, as, Tasso, le Tasse; except Raphaël, Michel-Ange, Pétrarque, Bocace, Sannazar, &c. and those who have written in Latin, as Sadolet, Manuce, Baronius, &c.

10. Obs. After the verb *jouer*, to play, we make use of the definite article in the second case, speaking of musical instruments, as, jouer du violon, de la guitarre; and speaking of games at cards, or some bodily exercises, we make use of the same article as in the third case, as, jouer aux cartes, à la paume; and after *joueur*, a player, we make use of the preposition *de* in both instances, as, un joueur de violon, de guitarre, de cartes, de paume.

11. Obs. The adverb *bien*, taken for *beaucoup*, much, takes after it the definite article in the second case, as, he has much money, il a bien de l'argent, whereas *beaucoup*, takes the preposition *de*, as, il a beaucoup d'argent, unless it be determined and specified by a relative pronoun that follows it, as, il a dépensé beaucoup, de l'argent que vous lui aviez donné, he has spent a great deal of the money that you gave him: but *beaucoup* being the proper word, it is better never to make use of *bien*.

12. Obs. Some names of countries, contrary to the exceptions of the third rule, retain their article even in the sense of remaining in, coming to, or going from. These nouns are particularly those of remote countries, viz. of America, Asia, or Africa, to which we may join le Maroc, le Perse, &c.

Maine, &c. provinces in France; le Mans, le Catelet, la Fère, la Ferté, le Havre de Grâce, la Rochelle, le Quesnoy, &c. cities in France, le Mantouan, le Milanais, le Parmesan, &c. divisions of Italy: to which add, la Haye, the Hague.

13. Obs. No article is used before cardinal numbers, except first, when the nouns to which they are joined have a fixed number, either by themselves, as *les quatre saisons*, the four seasons; or by a relation to something else expressed by the circumstances of the discourse, as, *les deux lettres que je vous ai écrites*; the two letters which I wrote to you. Secondly, speaking of cards or the day of the month, as, *ledix, le neuf—de Janvier, de Février—de cœur, de pique, &c.*

14. No article is used before proper names, particular places, towns or villages, &c.

Except some nouns, when they denote an individual distinction, or a particular appellation: as, *l'Athalie* de RACINE, *la Mérope* de VOLTAIRE, speaking of two plays of these two authors.

15. No article is used before nouns immediately following certain verbs, or prepositions, with which they form a kind of adverb: as, *avec amitié*, with friendship; *sans delay*, without disdain; *par dépit*, through spite; *avoir envie*, to have a mind to.

Except, first, when these nouns are followed by the relative pronouns, *qui, que, lequel, &c.* Secondly, by a superlative. Thirdly, by a noun in the second case.

16. No article is used after the preposition *en*, except in a very few cases, which will be taken notice of in the observations about prepositions; whereas *dans* always requires an article after it, unless it be followed by a conjunctive possessive pronoun: as, *dans ma chambre*; in my room.

17. No article is used before a noun which follows immediately the name of a particular place, to which it belongs: as, I was born in London, the capital city of England: *Je suis né à Londres, ville capitale d'Angleterre.* Neither is the article used after the verb *être*: as, *il est médecin*, he is a physician, and not *il est un medecin*: unless in the exception of the 15th observation, and unless the verb be preceded by *ce*: as, *c'est un medecin.*

18. The indefinite and partitive articles *des, de, du, de*

*la, à des, à de, à de la*, are used according to the second observation, and answer to *some*, either expressed or understood before a substantive.

19. Obs. When the adjective goes before its substantive, instead of the foregoing indefinite articles, we make use of *de* for the first case, *à de* for the third case, as, *voilà de bon pain*, there is good bread; *voilà de belles dames*, there are fine ladies; and not *du bon pain*, *des belles dames*.

N. B. There are some substantives in the plural, though preceded by their adjectives, where we make use of *des*, and not *de*: it happens when the adjective and substantive make but one idea, and the adjective is only used to render the signification of the substantive complete; such are *belles-lettres*, *beaux-esprits*, *grands-seigneurs*, which signify *belles-lettres*, men of learning, people of great quality.

20. The articles *un, une*, are used when they signify only a kind of indeterminate individuality, or an individuality in an indeterminate manner: as, a king ought to be the father of his people, *un roi doit être le père de son peuple*. However, these articles may sometimes be resolved into the definite article: as, a wise man rules his passions, *un homme sage règle ses passions*, or *l'homme sage*, &c. The articles *un* and *une* are expressed in English by *a* or *an*.

21. Articles are repeated before each substantive, though synonymous: as, *les faveurs et les grâces que nous recevons du ciel*, the favours and kindnesses which we receive from heaven.

22. Obs. When two adjectives, positively used, are joined together by conjunction, and have the same substantive, the article is only put before the first of them, if they are synonymous, or very near alike, as, *les riches et magnifiques présents*, the rich and magnificent presents. If they are not synonymous, the article must be repeated, as, *les riches et les pauvres*; the rich and the poor.

---

### *Rules and Observations upon Articles, exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1.] There are nine parts of Il y a neuf parties d'oraison; speech: *the*\* article, *the* l'\* article, *le nom, le pronoun, the* pronoun, *the* nom, *le verbe, le* participle, *the* cipe, *l'adverbe, la* prépo-

\* The words which are the objects of the rules are printed in *Italic*, both in French and English examples, if there be any expressed in the last, throughout the rules and observations exemplified, to the end of the *FRENCH SYNTAX*.

adverb, *the* preposition, *the* conjunction, *the* interjection.

sition, *la* conjunction, *l'*interjection.

*The* article shows *the* object or thing.

*L'*article montré *l'*objet ou *la* chose.

*The* noun names *the* thing.

*Le* nom nomme *la* chose.

*The* pronoun supplies *the* place of *the* noun.

*Le* pronom tient *la* place *du* nom.

*The* verb shows *the* action or passion of *the* object.

*Le* verbe montre *l'*action, ou *la* passion de *l'*objet.

*The* participle partakes of *the* nature of *the* verb and noun; it is used in *the* conjugation of passive verbs, and for that of *the* compound tenses of *the* other verbs.

*Le* participe tient de *la* nature *du* verbe, & *du* nom; il sert à *la* conjugaison des verbes passifs, et à celle des temps composés des autres verbes.

*The* adverb marks *the* difference and circumstances of *the* action or passion.

*L'*adverbe marque *la* différence et les circonstances de *l'*action ou de *la* passion.

*The* preposition is an indeclinable word, placed before *the* nouns, pronouns, and verbs which it governs.

*La* préposition est un mot indéclinable, placé devant les noms, les pronoms, & les verbes, qu'elle régit.

*The* conjunction joins words and phrases.

*La* conjonction joint les mots & les phrases.

*The* interjection expresses *the* motions or passions of *the* soul.

*L'*interjection exprime les mouvements, ou les passions de *l'*ame.

Summer is an agreeable season.

*L'*été est une saison agréable.

Idleness is despicable.

*La* paresse est méprisable.

Shut *the* door.

Fermez *la* porte.

Open *the* window.

Ouvrez *la* fenêtre.

Draw *the* curtains.

Tirez les rideaux.

Bring *the* mustard.

Apportez *la* moutarde.

Give me *the* loaf.

Donnez-moi le pain.

Cut *the* meat.

Coupez *la* viande.

Emulation is a noble passion.

*L'*émulation est une noble passion.



Virtue and beauty are estimable.	<i>La vertu &amp; la beauté sont estimables.</i>
Virtue is preferable to riches.	<i>La vertu est préférable aux richesses.</i>
The heart often betrays the mind.	<i>Le cœur trompe souvent l'esprit.</i>
I like fruit.	<i>J'aime le fruit.</i>
[1.] France is a large country.	<i>La France est un pays considérable.</i>
I speak of France.	<i>Je parle de la France.</i>
Let us speak of England.	<i>Parlons de l'Angleterre.</i>
He only talks of Holland.	<i>Il ne parle que de la Hollande.</i>
Touraine is the garden of France.	<i>La Touraine est le jardin de la France.</i>
The Thames is a fine river.	<i>La Tamise est une belle rivière.</i>
The Rhine is a rapid river.	<i>Le Rhin est une rivière rapide.</i>
Parnassus, Pindus, and Helicon, are the mountains of the poets.	<i>Le Parnasse, le Pinde, et l'Hélicon, sont les montagnes des poètes.</i>
My brother is come from the Indies.	<i>Mon frère est arrivé des Indes.</i>
My sister lives in France.	<i>Ma sœur demeure en France.</i>
I shall go to Italy next spring.	<i>J'irai en Italie au printemps prochain.</i>
I am going to Spain.	<i>Je vais en Espagne.</i>
I come from Portugal.	<i>Je viens de Portugal.</i>
He lives in England.	<i>Il demeure en Angleterre.</i>
[5.] It is the custom of the most barbarous people.	<i>C'est la coutume des peuples les plus barbares.</i>
He speaks of the most unhappy man.	<i>Il parle de l'homme le plus malheureux.</i>
He is the best educated child.	<i>C'est l'enfant le mieux élevé.</i>
He is the most presumptuous man.	<i>C'est l'homme le plus présomptueux.</i>
She is the most beautiful and amiable lady.	<i>C'est la demoiselle la plus belle &amp; la plus aimable.</i>
I am writing upon the nicest matter, though the least shining.	<i>J'écris sur la matière la plus délicate, quoique la moins brillante.</i>

- \*It is one of the most barbarous customs. C'est *une des coutumes les plus barbares.*
- He speaks of one of the most unhappy men. Il parle d'un des hommes les plus malheureux.
- He is one of the best educated children. C'est un des enfans les mieux élevés.
- He is one of the most presumptuous men. C'est un des hommes les plus présomptueux.
- She is one of the most beautiful and amiable ladies. C'est une des demoiselles les plus belles & les plus aimables.
- I am writing upon one of the nicest matters, though the least shining. J'écris sur une matière des plus délicates, quoique des moins brillantes.
- [6.] Coals are sold for a shilling a bushel. Le charbon se vend un chéling le boisseau.
- Eggs have been sold for one pound a hundred; it is more than four shillings a quarter. Les œufs ont été vendus une livre sterling le cent; c'est plus de quatre chélings le quarteron.
- Candles are sold for ninepence a pound. Les chandelles se vendent neuf sous la livre.
- Butter is sold for ten pence a pound. Le beurre se vend dix sous la livre.
- This lace cost one guinea a yard. Cette dentelle coûte une guinée la verge.
- The politicians dissemble. Les politiques dissimulent.
- The ambitious sacrifice every thing to fortune. Les ambitieux sacrifient tout à la fortune.
- Every body knows it. Tout le monde le sait.
- One ought, in learned works, to join profit to pleasure. On doit, dans les ouvrages d'esprit, joindre l'utile à l'agréable.
- [7.] It is every body's custom. C'est la coutume de tout le monde.
- He tells the same story to every body. Il raconte la même histoire à tout le monde.

\* I make use, on purpose, of the same six foregoing examples, to make the exception to the fifth observation more sensible to the learner. In this last example the article immediately following *un* or *une*, may be omitted; in this case the substantive is put in the singular; as C'est une coutume des plus barbares; Je parle d'un homme des plus malheureux.

- She speaks ill of *all* men. Elle parle mal de *tous les* hommes.
- All* men are not liars. *Tous les* hommes ne sont pas menteurs.
- All* women are not proud. *Toutes les* femmes ne sont pas fières.
- He slanders *all* women. Il médit de *toutes les* femmes.
- He paid *all* the expenses. Il paya *tous les* dépens.
- All* fashions are not ridiculous. *Toutes les* modes ne sont pas ridicules.
- I learn *every* day. J'apprends *tous les* jours.
- It is the report of *the whole* city. C'est le bruit de *toute la* ville.
- [8.] *The* inside of the house is very fine. Le dedans de la maison est très beau.
- The* outside of the church is majestic. Le dehors de l'église est majestueux.
- The* upper part is quite spoiled. Le dessus est tout gâté.
- [10.] My sister plays upon the guitar, and my brother upon the violin. Ma sœur joue de la guitare, & mon frère joue du violon.
- He is a good player at billiards, at tennis, &c. C'est un bon joueur de billard, de paume, &c.
- We played yesterday at piquet. Nous jouâmes hier au piquet.
- [11.] He has much money. Il a bien de l'argent, ou beaucoup d'argent.
- I have read many books. J'ai lu beaucoup de livres.
- She has many friends. Elle a beaucoup d'amis.
- You take a great deal of pains. Vous prenez beaucoup de peine.
- They give themselves much trouble. Ils se donnent beaucoup de peine.
- He has spent a great deal of money. Il a dépensé beaucoup d'argent.
- [12.] I shall go to China next year. J'irai à la Chine l'année prochaine.
- He is arrived at Mexico. Il est arrivé au Mexique.
- He is come back from Japan, Mogul, the Indies, Florida, Canada, &c. Il est revenu du Japon, du Mogol, des Indes, de la Floride, du Canada, &c.

He lives *at the* Hague.

Il demeure *à la* Haye.

[13.] Here are *the two* roses  
you gave me to-day.

Voici *les deux* roses que  
vous m'avez données au-  
jourd'hui.

Of *the four* seasons of the  
year, the summer pleases  
me more than *the three*  
others.

*Des quatre* saisons de l'an-  
née l'été me plaît plus  
que *les trois* autres.

I lost *the two* letters you  
wrote to me.

J'ai perdu *les deux* lettres  
que vous m'avez écrites.

[14.] I come *from* London,  
Greenwich, Chelsea, Ken-  
sington, &c.

Je viens *de* Londres, *de*  
Greenwich, *de* Chelsea,  
*de* Kensington, &c.

*Athalie* is famous in sacred  
history, *Merope* in pro-  
fane history.

*Athalie* est fameuse dans  
l'histoire sacrée, *Méropé*  
dans l'histoire profane.

Racine's *Athalie* and Vol-  
taire's *Merope* are drama-  
tic master-pieces.

*L'Athalie* de Racine, & *la*  
*Méropé* de Voltaire, sont  
des chefs-d'œuvre drama-  
tiques.

*Milton's Paradise Lost* is a  
fine poem.

*Le Paradis perdu* de Milton  
est un beau poème.

[15.] She received me *kindly*.  
He did it *through spite*.

Elle me reçut *avec amitié*.  
Il le fit *par dépit*.

Speak to him *without dis-  
dain*.

Parlez lui *sans dédain*.

I have a *mind* to go thither.

J'ai envie d'y aller.

She received me with *the*  
greatest friendship.

Elle me reçut avec *la* plus  
grande amitié.

He did it through *the* spite  
he had for her.

Il le fit par *le* dépit qu'il  
avait pour elle.

She spoke to him with *the*  
contempt he deserved.

Elle lui parla avec *le* mépris  
qu'il méritait.

He submitted to it with *the*  
greatest patience.

Il s'y soumit avec *la* plus  
grande patience.

[16.] He is in a furnished  
lodging.

Il est logé en chambre gar-  
nie.

You will find it in *the* box.

Vous le trouverez dans *la*  
boîte.

Is there any ink in *the* bottle?

Y a-t-il de l'encre dans *la*  
bouteille.

*Here is some in the ink-  
stand.*

En voici dans l'écritoire.

[17.] Paris is *the* capital city Paris est *la* ville capitale de  
of France. la France.

Helives in Paris, the capital Il demeure à Paris, *ville* capi-  
city of France. tale de la France.

London is *the* capital city of Londres est *la* ville capitale  
England. d'Angleterre.

He was born in London, the Il est né à Londres, *ville* capi-  
capital city of England. tale d'Angleterre.

George III. *king* of England George trois, *roi* d'Anglerre,  
and *elector* of Hanover, & *électeur* d'Hanovre, *pet-*  
*grandson* to George II. *it-fils* de George second,  
has married the princess a épousé la princesse  
Charlotte, *daughter* to the Charlotte, *fil*le du prince  
prince of Mecklenburgh- de Mecklenbourg-Stre-  
Strelitz. litz.

He is a merchant.\* Il est marchand, ou *c'est* un  
marchand.

He is a physician. Il est médecin, ou *c'est* un  
médecin.

She is a milliner. Elle est coiffeuse, ou *c'est*  
*une* coiffeuse.

He is *the* merchant *whom* Il est le marchand *que* vous  
you look for. cherchez.

He is *the* physician *whom* Il est le médecin *que* vous  
you ask for. demandez.

He is *the* most upright mer- Il est le marchand le plus  
chant. intègre.

He is *the* most skilful physi- Il est le médecin le plus ex-  
cian. pert.

She is *the* most accustomed Elle est la coiffeuse la plus  
milliner. achalandée.

[18.] Give me some bread, Donnez-moi *du* pain, *de* la  
some meat, some wine, viande, *du* vin, *de* la bière,  
some beer, &c. &c.

Bring some salt, pepper, Apportez *du* sel, *du* poivre,  
mustard, &c. *de* la moutarde, &c.

There is wine and water. Voilà *du* vin & *de* l'eau.

Do you choose beer or cider? Souhaitez-vous *de* la bière  
ou *du* cidre ?

Bread and water are suffi- Du pain & *de* l'eau lui suffi-  
cient for him. sent.

\* This word is seldom used except for a shop-keeper. The word *shop-*  
*keeper* is generally used to denote a whole or ship-marchant. T. W.

- You must lay this fruit in straw. Il faut mettre ce fruit dans *de la paille*.
- Lend me some paper and ink. Prêtez-moi *du papier & de l'encre*.
- Have you thread or silk? Avez-vous *du fil, ou de la soie* ?
- Mend my stocking with cotton. Raccommodez mes bas avec *du coton*.
- I spend my money in ware. J'ai employé mon argent à *de la marchandise*.
- This thread is like silk. Ce fil ressemble à *de la soie*.
- [18.] He compares this stuff to velvet. Il compare cette étoffe à *du velours*.
- She will not trust such corrupted men. Elle ne veut pas se fier à *des hommes si corrompus*.
- This cider is like wine. Ce cidre ressemble à *du vin*.
- A fine discourse often displeases ignorant people. Un beau discours déplaît souvent à *des ignorans*.
- Give me some apples, pears, oranges, nuts, &c. Donnez-moi *des pommes, des poires, des oranges, des noix, &c.*
- [19.] There are fine flowers. Voilà de très belles fleurs.
- I have bought fine lace. J'ai acheté *de belle dentelle*.
- To write well, one must make use of good paper, ink, and pens. Pour bien écrire, il faut se servir *de bon papier, de bonne encre, & de bonnes plumes*.
- Here are some fine ladies. Voici *de belles demoiselles*.
- There are some fine houses and streets in London. Il y a *de belles maisons & de belles rues* dans Londres.
- This lord has fine lands, and gardens. Ce seigneur a *de belles terres & de beaux jardins*.
- This lady has a great estate. Cette dame a *de grands biens*.
- This writing-master makes fine letters. Ce maître à écrire forme *de belles lettres*.
- Frederick II. King of Prussia, took a particular delight in having tall soldiers. Frederick second, Roi de Prusse, prenait un plaisir particulier à avoir *de grands soldats*.
- His brother applies himself to the belles-lettres. Son frère s'applique aux *belles-lettres*.

I know people of wit. Je connais *des* beaux-esprits.  
 I saw last week great lords Je vis la semaine passée *des*  
 in the Park. grands seigneurs dans le  
 Parc.

[20] A child ought to obey Un enfant doit obéir à son  
 his father and mother. père & à sa mère.

A king ought to be the father Un roi doit être le père de  
 of his people. son peuple.

It is a thing unheard of. C'est *une* chose inouïe.

It is an uncommon friend- C'est *une* rare amitié.  
 ship.

A prudent man ought to Un homme prudent, ou l'  
 know how to keep a se- homme prudent, doit sa-  
 cret. voir garder un secret.

The last two observations have been sufficiently exem-  
 plified in all the foregoing examples.

## CHAPTER II.

### *Rules and Observations upon Nouns.*

1. Two substantives coming together in English, and signifying different things, without a comma between them, that expressed by *of* in English is put in the second case in French: as, the top of the mountain; *le sommet de la montagne*.

When *of* is not expressed, the last must be the first case in French, and placed at the beginning: as, my father's house; *la maison de mon père*. Likewise, in the English compound words, the first in English is commonly the second in French: as, a sea-port; *un port de mer*.

2. Adjectives follow the same gender and number as their substantives; as, a good book: *un bon livre*: a good pen; *une bonne plume*: good books; *des bons livres*: good pens; *des bonnes plumes*.

*Except*,—*first*, *feu*, late, deceased, before the article or pronoun, *nu*, bare, before *tête*, *pieds*, *jambes*, &c. *demi*, half, before a substantive—Secondly, *tout*, followed by an article, or by an

adjective ending with an *e* mute in its masculine gender, before the vowel *gens*, which is feminine ; as, all people of probity ; tous les gens de probité : all honest people ; tous les honnêtes gens. But if the word *tout* be either followed by *gens*, or if *gens* be preceded by an adjective, not ending with an *e* mute in its masculine, then the word *tout* follows the rule, and is put in the feminine :\* as, all old people ; toutes les vieilles gens—Thirdly, adjectives following *gens* : as, they are polite people ; ce sont des gens polis.

3. When two or more substantives of different genders, and not separated by a disjunction, are the first case of the verb *être*, the adjective or participle that follows, ought to be in the masculine plural : as, the trunk, the closet, and the room, are open ; *le coffre, le cabinet, & la chambre sont ouverts*.

4. Two or more substantives of different genders, immediately followed by an adjective or participle, require commonly that the adjective, or participle, should agree in gender and number with the last substantive : as, she found the trunk, the closet, and the room open ; *elle trouva le coffre, le cabinet, et la chambre ouverte*.

Except when an adjective or a participle past implies an union, or a collection, such as, *joint, uni, reuni* : as, the children, father, and mother united or joined together, *les enfans, le père, et la mère réunis ou joints ensemble*.

5. Adjectives are put in French after their substantives.

6. Some adjectives are put before their substantives ; as, *beau, bon, grand, gros, jeune, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, petit, vieux*.

There are some adjectives which are to be placed sometimes before, and sometimes after the substantive. See page 33.

7. Obs. Adjectives of number are placed before their substantives ; except when they are used as a surname, without an article : as, Charles *premier*, Jacques *second*, GEORGE *trois*.

8. Some adjectives govern the following noun in the second case, that is, require the preposition *de* before it : such are adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, remembrance, ignorance, forgetting, care, fear, guilt, fulness, emptiness, plenty, want, &c.*

\* The French Academy.



9. Some adjectives govern the following noun, in the third case, that is, require the preposition *à* before it; such are adjectives signifying *submission, relation, pleasure, or displeasure, due resistance, difficulty, likeness, inclination, aptness, fitness, advantage, profit, &c.*

10. Adjectives signifying dimension : as, *long, thick, high, deep, big, wide or broad*, which come after the word of measure in English, come before it in French, and are followed by the preposition *de* : as, a window three feet broad ; *une fenêtre large de trois pieds*. Or, which is more generally used, the adjective is turned into its substantive with the word of measure before it ; in this case the word of measure, or dimension, is preceded by the preposition *de* : as, *fenêtre de trois pieds de largeur*. When in this construction the verb *to be*, happens to precede the word of measure or dimension, it is commonly changed into the verb *avoir*, and the preposition *de*, which is before the quantity of measure, is left out : as, *une fenêtre qui a trois pieds de largeur* ; a window which is three feet broad.

---

*Rules and Observations upon Nouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1.] The love of *life* is nat- L'amour *de la vie*, est natu-  
 ral to men. rel aux hommes.

The study of *languages* is L'étude *des langues* est très  
 very entertaining. amusante.

Here is my father's house. Voici *la maison* de mon père.

I saw the king's *horses*. J'ai vu *les chevaux* du roi.

Have you not seen the king's N'avez-vous pas vu *le palais*  
*palace*? du roi?

The queen's *apartments* are *Les appartemens* de la reine  
 very fine. sont très beaux.

It is my brother's *book*. C'est *le livre* de mon frère.

She wears a *straw-hat* with Elle porte un chapeau de  
 a *silk-riband*. *paille* avec un ruban *de soie*

Is the *chamber door* shut? La porte *de la chambre* est  
 elle fermée?

We passed over *London-bridge* to go to *Green-* Nous passâmes sur le pont  
*wich*. de Londres, pour aller à  
*Greenwich*.

I bought a fine <i>silver</i> tankard.	J'ai acheté un beau pot d' <i>argent</i> .
He is gone to his <i>country</i> -house.	Il est allé à sa maison de <i>campagne</i> .
[2.] He spoke to her <i>bare</i> -headed.	Il lui parla <i>nu</i> tête ou tête <i>nue</i> .
He goes <i>bare</i> -footed, <i>bare</i> -legged.	Il va <i>nu</i> -pieds, <i>nu</i> -jambes ou il va les pieds <i>nus</i> , les jambes <i>nues</i> .
The <i>late</i> queen was an accomplished woman.	<i>Feu</i> la reine, ou la <i>feue</i> reine, était une femme accomplie.
I shall go out in <i>half</i> an hour.	Je sortirai dans une <i>demi</i> -heure.
It is half an hour past one.	Il est une heure & <i>demie</i> .
All people of honour.	<i>Tous les gens</i> d'honneur.
It is the opinion of all people of probity.	C'est l'opinion de <i>tous les gens</i> de probité.
All honest people have blamed him.	<i>Tous les honnêtes gens</i> l'ont blâmé.
Almost all young people like play.	Presque <i>tous les jeunes gens</i> aiment le jeu.
All sorts of people do for him.	Il s'accommode de <i>toutes sortes</i> de gens.
All old people disapproved of it.	<i>Toutes les vieilles gens</i> l'ont désapprouvé.
He withdrew from all the bad people of his neighbourhood.	Il se retira de <i>toutes les mauvaises gens</i> de son voisinage.
They are <i>polite</i> people.	Ce sont des gens <i>polis</i> .
They are <i>prudent</i> people.	Ce sont des gens <i>prudents</i> .
You must not trust <i>indiscreet</i> people.	Il ne faut pas vous fier à des gens <i>indiscrets</i> .
Our maid and man-servant are very <i>diligent</i> .	Notre servante & notre valet sont très <i>diligents</i> .
His brother and consin are very <i>idle</i> .	Son frère & son cousin sont <i>paresseux</i> .
The window and the door are <i>open</i> .	La fenêtre & la porte sont <i>ouvertes</i> .
Her body and mind are well <i>framed</i> .	Elle a le corps & l'esprit bien faits.

- He found beauty, youth, riches, wisdom, and even virtue *united* in her person. Il trouva la beauté, la jeunesse, les richesses, la sagesse, & même la vertu réunies dans sa personne.
- [3.] My father and mother are *sick*. Mon père & ma mère sont *malades*.
- My brother and sister have *caught cold*. Mon frère & ma sœur sont *enrhumés*.
- [4.] Her eyes, mouth and neck, are very *pretty*. Elle a les yeux, la bouche, & la gorge, très *belle*.
- She sings with a charming and delicate air. Elle chante avec un goût & une délicatesse *charmante*.
- Why do you leave the windows and the door *open*? Pourquoi laissez-vous les fenêtres & la porte *ouverte*?
- He had his eyes and mouth *open*. Il avait les yeux & la bouche *ouverte*.
- It is exceedingly *hot* and foggy in that country. Il fait dans ce pays-là des chaleurs et des brouillards *excessifs*.
- The children, father, and mother *united*. Les enfans, le père, et la mère, *réunis*.
- Health, honours, and fortune, *joined* together, are not able to satisfy the heart of man. La santé, les honneurs, & la fortune, *jointes* ensemble, ne peuvent satisfaire le cœur de l'homme.
- [5.] I have a *greensnuff-box*. J'ai une tabatière *verte*.
- The *English* tongue is *copious, strong, and harmonious*. La langue *Anglaise* est *copieuse, forte, et harmonieuse*.
- The *French* tongue is very *smooth*. La langue *Française* est très *lisse*.
- She is a *handsome, rich, and virtuous* woman. C'est une femme *belle, riche, et vertueuse*.
- Give me a *clean* shirt. Donnez-moi une chemise *blanche*.
- A *black* hat, a *green* suit, *white* stockings, *red* shoes. Un chapeau *noir*, un habit *vert*, des bas *blancs*, des souliers *rouges*.
- There is a very *fine* coach. Voilà un carrosse *magnifique*.
- He follows the *English* fashion. Il suit la mode *Anglaise*.
- Sing an *Italian* air. Chantez un air *Italien*.

People enjoy *pure* air in France. On jouit d'un air *pur* en France.

Why do not you wear your *black stockings* ? Pourquoi ne portez vous pas vos bas *noirs* ?

She is a *charming* woman. C'est une femme *charmante*.  
C'est une *charmante* femme.

She reprimanded him *severely*. Elle lui a fait de *sévères* réprimandes, ou des réprimandes *sévères*.

[6.] He is a *naughty* boy. C'est un *méchant* garçon.  
*Bad* weather is tiresome to me. Le *mauvais* temps m'ennuie.

He dwells in a *large* house. Il demeure dans une *grande* maison.

London is a *fine* city. Londres est une *belle* ville.

He is a man of *distinguished* merit. C'est un homme d'un *grand* mérite.

He is a *tall* fair man. C'est un *grand* homme.

[7.] The *first* man was the *first* sinner. Le *premier* homme fut le *premier* pécheur.

George III. king of England and Louis XVI. king of France. George *Trois*, roi d'Angleterre, & Louis *Seize*, roi de France.

[8.] I am contented *with* my condition. Je suis content *de* ma condition.

It is a praise-worthy action. C'est une action digne *de* louanges.

He is unworthy *of* your friendship. Il est indigne *de* votre amitié.

She is incapable *of* a lie. Elle est incapable *de* mensonge.

Few people are satisfied *with* their fortune. Peu de gens sont contents *de* leur fortune.

I am free *from* fear and danger. Je suis exempt *de* crainte & *de* danger. ●.

I was overjoyed *at* that news. Je fus ravi *de* cette nouvelle.

She is not contented *with* her maid. Elle n'est pas contente *de* sa servante.

He is discontented *with* his wife. Il est mécontent *de* sa femme.

He is accused *of* murder. Il est accusé *de* meurtre.

- He was loaded *with* praises. Il fut comblé *de* louanges.  
 They are greedy *of* glory Ils sont avides *de* gloire &  
 and riches. *de* richesses.
- I am tired *of* your discourses. Je suis las *de* vos discours.  
 They are enraged *at* his Ils sont enragés *de* son suc-  
 cess. cès.
- He is deep *in* debt. Il est chargé *de* dettes.
- [9.] That is good *for* some- Cela est bon à quelque chose.  
 thing.
- It is a fruit hurtful *to* health. C'est un fruit nuisible à *la*  
 santé.
- He is too much addicted *to* Il est trop adonné à l'étude.  
 study.
- She is unfit *for* any thing. Elle n'est propre à rien.  
 You are insensible *to* all the Vous êtes insensible à toutes  
 remonstrances of your les remonstrances de vos  
 friends. amis.
- He is fit *for* any thing. Il est propre à tout.  
 She is not to be compared Elle n'est pas comparable à  
*with* you. vous.
- That is conformable *to* Cela est conforme à la vé-  
 rité.
- Yours is like mine. Le vôtre est semblable *au*  
*mien*.
- I am ready *for* your orders. Je suis prêt à vos ordres.  
 I am very sensible *of* cold. Je suis très sensible *au* froid.  
 That cloth is like yours. Ce drap est pareil *au* vôtre.
- [10.] A carpet six yards *long* Un tapis long *de* six verges,  
 and two *wide*. & large *de* deux ; ou un  
 tapis *de* six verges *de* lon-  
 gueur, & *de* deux *de* lar-  
 geur.
- Our house is forty fathoms Notre maison a quarante  
*high*, and the foundation toises *de* hauteur & les  
 is two fathoms *deep*. fondemens ont deux toises  
*de* profondeur.
- This lawn is a yard *wide*. Ce linon a une verge *de* lar-  
 geur.
- A wall two feet *thick*. Une muraille épaisse *de*  
 deux pieds, ou une mura-  
 ille *de* deux pieds d'épais-  
 seur.

A street ten fathoms <i>wide</i> .	Une rue large <i>de dix toises</i> , <i>ou</i> une rue <i>de dix toises de</i> <i>largeur</i> .
Our garden is a hundred feet <i>long</i> .	Notre jardin <i>a cent pieds de</i> <i>longueur</i> .
That river is forty feet <i>deep</i> .	Cette rivière <i>a quarante</i> <i>pieds de profondeur</i> .
A well forty feet <i>deep</i> .	Un puits <i>de quarante pieds</i> <i>de profondeur</i> .
There are fine walks in St. James' Park ; they are at least four hundred fathoms <i>long</i> .	Il y a de belles allées dans le Parc de St. James ; elles ont au moins quatre cens toises <i>de longueur</i> .
Have you ever seen a man eight feet <i>high</i> ?	Avez-vous jamais vu un homme <i>de huit pieds de</i> <i>hauteur</i> ?
A book two inches <i>thick</i> .	Un livre <i>de deux pouces</i> <i>d'épaisseur</i> .

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### RULES AND OBSERVATIONS UPON PRONOUNS.

##### SECTION I.

##### *Personal Pronouns.*

1. A GOVERNING personal pronoun, in the first case, must always be put before a verb which has no other noun, or pronoun for a first case ; as, *I speak ; je parle, &c.*

Except the second person singular, and the first and second person plural of the imperative mood, which are used without a pronoun personal.

2. Obs. There are some places where the pronoun personal is put after the verb ; when in the middle of a sentence they are joined like a parenthesis, with these seven verbs : *dire*, to say ; *répondre*, to answer ; *répliquer*, to reply ; *répartir*, to answer again ; *continuer*, to continue ; *poursuivre*, to pursue ; and *s'écrier*, to cry out—as, I have none, *answered he* ; je n'en ai point, *répondit-il*.

Except when one of these verbs is preceded by the conjunction *mais*, and some others followed by *que*, signifying that, as, *but you say that you are sick, mais vous dites que vous êtes ma-*

lade. But when *que* signifies *what*, then the pronoun takes again its place after the verb, as, *but* you say, *what* avail riches without health ? *mais, dites vous, que servent les richesses sans la santé ?*

3. Obs. The personal pronoun must be put after these words, *dussiez-vous*, though you should, *fussiez-vous*, though you were ; *puissiez*, or *puissiez-vous*, may you ; or after any other such expressions, which express what grammarians call the optative mood ; as, though you were rich, *fussiez-vous riche* ; though you should write to him, *dussiez-vous lui écrire* ; may you see him in good health, *puissiez-vous le voir en bonne santé*.

4. Obs. It is more elegant to put the personal pronoun, even followed by *que*, signifying *that*, after the verb preceded by one of these conjunctions ; *aussi*, but then ; *peut-être*, perhaps ; *du moins, au moins*, at least ; *en vain*, in vain ; *à peine*, scarcely, &c. as, but then he received his reward, *aussi reçut-il sa récompense*.

5. The personal pronoun is always put after the verb, in simple tenses, in an interrogation, either affirmative or negative : as, do you eat ? *mangez-vous ?* do you not write ? *n'écrivez-vous pas ?* In compound tenses it is put immediately after the auxiliary, either in the affirmative or negative question ; as, did you eat ? *avez-vous mangé ?* did not you write ? *n'avez-vous pas-écrit ?*

6. Obs. When, in an interrogation, we make use of a verb of the first conjugation, as the verb, in such a case, ending with an *e* mute, would make an harsh sound with the following pronoun *je*, we put an acute accent upon the last *e* of the verb ; as, do I speak ? *parlé-je ?* and not *parle-je ?*

However, in this instance, I would advise to make use of the easy way of asking a question by these words, *est ce que*, as it must be done for some other verbs : as, do I sleep ? *est-ce que je dors ?* In this case the pronoun is put before the verb.

7. When a verb, interrogatively used, ends with a vowel, we always put a *t* between the verb and the pronoun, as in the following example : does he eat ? *mange-t-il ?* has she eaten ? *a-t-elle mangé ?*

8. Obs. What we have said in the second rule, must be said likewise, when after those verbs comes another noun instead of a pronoun ; as, all men are fools, says Boileau, *tous les hommes sont fous, dit Boileau*.

The same is to be said, when *autre* is joined to *chose* to show the mere difference between two objects ; as, to understand

French is another thing than to speak it; *autre chose est de comprendre le Français*, autre chose est de le parler.

Likewise after these pronouns, *se, que, le, ce, que*, it is sometimes more elegant to put the noun after the verb; as, at first a large parlour presented itself before our eyes; *d'abord se présenta devant nous un grand salon*. What reason dictates is not always true; *ce que dicte la raison, n'est pas toujours vrai*. It is thus the parliament would have it. *C'est ainsi que le voulut le parlement*.

9. A governing personal pronoun is superfluous when any noun whatsoever is the first case of a verb: as, George III. is a good king; *George III. est un bon roi*. But in an interrogation, besides the noun, we put the pronoun after the verb: as, does your brother write? *votre frère écrit-il?*

Except when in asking a question we make use of this idiom, *est-ce-que*; in this case the pronoun is left out, as in the foregoing example; *est ce que votre frère écrit?*

10. Personal pronouns of the first and second person plural are commonly put before the verb, if the verb has for its nominative several personal pronouns or only one personal pronoun, in the first or second person of either number, joined with one or more nouns: as, you and I are idle: *vous & moi nous sommes paresseux*; your brother and I were present, *votre frère & moi nous étions présents*.

Except when there is a noun substantive joined with *toi* or *elle*, the personal pronoun is left out, and the verb is put in the third person plural; as, your brother and he are idle; *votre frère & lui sont paresseux*.

11. Governing personal pronouns are put before the verb in French, though after it in English: as, he told to me; *il me dit*. Foreigners should attend to this rule, against which they are very apt to offend.

Except 1st, in the second person singular, and first and second plural of the imperative, in an affirmation: as, tell me, *dites-moi*—Observe, that *me* is always put instead of *moi*, when it comes before the verb, unless it be separated from the verb by a conjunction: as, it is to me he gives it: *c'est à moi qu'il le donne*; 2dly, after the verb *être*, when it signifies to belong to, and after the verb *se fier*, to trust: as, you trust to me, *vous vous fiez à*



*moi* : this house *belongs to me* ; *cette maison est à moi* : 3dly, after the verbs *songer*, *penser*, *parler*, when the last signifies *to direct one's discourse to*, and a very few others.

12. The supplying pronouns *le*, *la*, and *les*, are always put before the verbs by which they are governed, and are placed before *lui* and *leur* ; as, you give *them to him* ; *vous les lui donnez* : whereas they are put after the other personal pronouns ; as, I give *it to you* ; *je vous le donne* ; except in the imperative mood in affirmative sentences : as, give *it me* ; *donnez le moi*.

13. The supplying pronouns, *en* and *y*, are also placed before the verb, and are put after all other personal pronouns, and *en* after *y* : as, I have sent *some to them thither* ; *je leur y en ai envoyé*.

Except when *y* and *moi* meet together in the second person of the imperative mood affirmatively used, *y* is put before *moi* —as, carry me thither, *menez-y moi*.

N. B. The last three observations, with their exceptions, are fully exemplified in their proper places, and in the supplying pronouns.

14. *It*, which some wrongly call a personal pronoun in the following examples, is commonly used before adjectives, where the word *thing* is understood ; as, it is glorious to die for one's country ; *il est glorieux de mourir pour sa patrie*.—If the adjective makes a complete sense, *ce* is commonly used ; as, it is true, *c'est vrai*.

*It* is likewise used when we speak of the time and hour ; as, it is eleven o'clock ; *il est onze heures* ; it is bad weather ; *il fait mauvais temps*.

Except when a question is asked with *ce* ; as, *quelle heure est cela ?* the answer is, *c'est une heure*. *Ce* is commonly used in the beginning of a sentence, before a substantive ; as, it is a pity, *c'est dommage*.

15. *Il*, *elle*, singular, *ils*, *elles*, plural, or *ce* are indifferently used ; 1st, before substantives expressing the sex, quality, profession, or trade of a person : as, he is a merchant : *il est marchand*, or *c'est un marchand* ; 2dly, before names of nations : as, they are Frenchmen ; *ils sont Français*, or *ce sont des Français*. Observe, that, in these two foregoing instances, no article is put before the substantive after the personal pronouns, *je*, *tu*, *il*, &c.

16. Personal pronouns, whether conjunctive or disjunctive, in their oblique cases, are always to be repeated.

as, I say and declare to you, *je vous dis, & vous déclare* : take the books and read them ; *prenez les livres, & les lisez* or *lisez les*.

17. Personal pronouns are repeated before each verb : 1st, when they are followed by verbs in different tenses, as, I say, and shall always say ; *je dis & je dirai toujours* : 2dly, when we pass from a negation to an affirmation or from an affirmation to a negation : 3dly, after the conjunctions *mais, même, cependant, néanmoins, nonobstant, malgré, tout cela, aussi, ainsi, ou, &c.* but when the personal pronouns belong to the same tense and person, they are commonly not repeated : as, I say and declare ; *je dis & déclare*. Observe here that the pronoun *on* is always repeated : as, people speak and act ; *on parle & on agit*.

18. The pronouns *lui, eux, elle, elles, leur*, are used at the end of a sentence, only when we are speaking of persons ; as, is it your brother ? It is ; *Est ce votre frère ? C'est-lui*. When we are speaking of inanimate things, we make use of the pronouns *le, la, les* : as, is it your hat ? Yes, it is. *Est ce là votre chapeau ? Oui, ce l'est*, and not, *c'est lui*.\*

19. Obs. The foregoing pronouns, *lui, eux, elle, leur*, when we are speaking of inanimate things, are sometimes used in the middle of a sentence,† sometimes not : there is no other rule for it than custom, and this can be learned only by use ; for, speaking of a sword, I may say, *je lui dois la vie*, I am indebted to it for my life ; and yet we must say, speaking of the same sword, *pendez y cette cerise*, hang that cherry to it ; not *pendez-lui*.

20. *Il, ils ; elle, elles*, in the beginning of a sentence, are used, speaking even of inanimate things : as, when speaking of a house, I say, *elle est belle*.

21. *Lui, leur, elle, &c.* governed by a preposition, are never used, speaking of irrational and inanimate things ; as, you see that house, he lives over against it ; *vous voyez cette maison, il demeure vis-à-vis*, and not *vis-à-vis d'elle*.

In this case the prepositions become adverbs ; but observe,

\* See the third Observation upon supplying pronouns, and the examples thereon. Section VI. N. 3.

† When things are personified, or deified : as, glory, victory, virtue, &c. or when we make use of personal phrases, i. e. which are applied only to persons. *Restent*.

that some prepositions never, or very seldom, become adverbs; as, *avec*, with, *sans*, without, &c. therefore in this, or the like expressions (I cannot do without it, he came with it,) give another turn to the sentence, *je ne puis m'en passer, il l'a apporté*.

It may be observed that *après* and *avec* are sometimes followed by *lui, eux, elle, or elles*; as, when the river overflows, it carries every thing away with it; *lorsque cette rivière se déborde elle entraîne tout après elle*; but as such sentences are as good without *avec elle*, and *après elle*, as with it, and it very often happens, that we cannot make use of these expressions, it is best to avoid them by omitting them absolutely, as in the foregoing example: thus, *lorsque cette rivière se déborde, elle entraîne tout*, is as good French without *après elle*, as with it.

22. Obs. *Lui, elle, and soi*, at the end of a sentence, are not to be used indifferently. *Soi* is very seldom used in the plural. When we speak of things in the masculine gender, *soi* is used; as, the loadstone attracts iron: *l'aimant attire le fer à soi*. *Elle même* may be used in the feminine: as, virtue is lovely by itself; *la vertu est aimable en elle même*.

Speaking of persons in general, *soi* is to be used: as, one ought not to speak of *one's self*, but with great modesty; on ne doit parler de *soi*, qu'avec beaucoup de modestie. When we speak of a particular person, *lui* and *elle* are used instead of *soi*; as, that man speaks of nobody, but *himself*; *cet homme ne parle que de lui*.

N. B. *Même* is often elegantly put after *lui, elle, eux, soi, &c.* and even it must be put after, when it follows a reflected verb.

---

*Personal Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

- [1] I am learning my lesson. *J'apprends ma leçon.*  
 He is writing his exercise. *Il écrit son thème.*  
 She is embroidering. *Elle brode.*  
 We have a holiday. *Nous avons congé.*  
 You are lazy. *Vous êtes paresseux.*  
 They make a noise. *Ils font du bruit.*  
 My mother is in the country. *Ma mère est à la campagne.*  
 She is gone out. *Elle est sortie.*  
 [2] I have none, said he. *Je n'en ai point, dit-il.*  
 But he answered that he had not seen it. *Mais il répondit, qu'il ne l'avait pas vu.*  
 But she replied, why do you concern yourself about it? *Mais, répliqua-t-elle, de quoi vous mêlez-vous?*  
 [3] Though you should blame me. *Dussiez-vous me blâmer.*

- Though you were still more surprised. *Fussiez-vous encore plus surpris.*
- [4] *Perhaps he* will say that he found it. *Peut-être* dira-t il qu'il la trouvé.
- [5] Have you learnt your lesson? *Avez-vous* appris votre leçon?
- [6] Do I tell a lie? *Est-ce-que* je mens?
- [7] Has *he not* been angry with me? *N'a-t-il* pas été fâché contre moi?
- Has *she not* been in the country? *N'a-t-elle* pas été à la campagne?
- Does *she* embroider? *Brode-t-elle*?
- [9] Is your sister at home? *Votre sœur* est-elle au logis?
- Does your brother improve in the French tongue? *Votre frère* fait-il des progrès dans le Français?
- Is your sister sick? *Votre sœur* est-elle malade?
- [10] You and I are good friends. *Vous & moi nous* sommes bons amis.
- She and I went together to the Park. *Elle & moi nous* allâmes ensemble au Parc.
- My brother and I go to the play this evening. *Mon frère & moi nous* allons ce soir à la comédie.
- He* and my brother are partners. *Lui & mon frère* sont associés.
- She* and her sisters learn French. *Elle & sa sœur* apprennent le Français.
- [11] She told *me* that she had written to *him*. *Elle m'a* dit qu'elle *lui* avait écrit.
- Do not fall violently upon them. *Ne leur* faites pas de violence.
- I gave *him* the book which you sent *me*. *Je lui* ai donné le livre que vous *m'avez* envoyé.
- I shall tell *him*. *Je lui* dirai.
- Have you promised *him*? *Lui* avez-vous promis?
- I have not promised *her*. *Je ne lui* ai pas promis.
- When will you send to *him*? *Quand lui* enverrez-vous?
- Give *me*. *Donnez-moi.*
- Bring *me*. *Apportez-moi.*
- Forgive *him*. *Pardonnez-lui.*
- Speak to *her*. *Parlez lui.*
- He has* promised it to *me*. *C'est à moi* qu'il l'a promis.
- Do not* confide in *him*. *Ne vous* fiez pas à *lui*.

You may confide *in me*. Vous pouvez vous fier à *moi*.

This book is *mine*. Ce livre est à *moi*.

This thimble is not *yours*. Ce dé n'est pas à *vous*.

Do not think of *him* any more. Ne songez plus à *lui*.

I am speaking *to him*, and not *to you*. C'est à *lui* que je parle, & non pas à *vous*.

You gave *it to me*. Vous *me* l'avez donné.

[12] Will you give *it to him*? *Le lui* donnerez-vous?

There are fine oranges; will you sell *them to her*? Voilà de belles oranges; *les lui* vendrez-vous?

Show *me* your letter; when will you send *it to her*? Montrez-*moi* votre lettre; quand *la lui* enverrez-vous?

There is a fine book; I gave *it to her*. Voilà un beau livre: je *le lui* ai donné.

When will you give *it to us*? Quand *nous le* donnerez-vous?

You had promised *it to me*. Vous *me* l'aviez promis.

Give *it to me*. Donnez *le moi*.

Bring *it to me*. Apportez-*le moi*.

Show *it to her*. Montrez-*le lui*.

[13] Will you carry *some to them thither*? Leur-*y-en* porterez vous?

I have sent *some to them thither*. Je leur-*y-en* ai envoyé.

I shall send *some to you thither*. Je *vous y-en* enverrai.

When did you send *some to him thither*? Quand *lui y en* avez-vous envoyé?

Why have you not carried *some to her thither*? Pourquoi ne *lui y en* avez-vous pas porté?

Carry *me thither*. Menez *y-moi*.

Give *me some*. Donnez-*m'en*.

Do not carry *me thither*. Ne *m'y* menez pas.

[14] What o'clock is it? Quelle heure est *il*?

*It is* two o'clock. *Il est* deux heures.

*It is* a quarter past two. *Il est* deux heures & un quart.

*It is* half an hour past two. *Il est* deux heures & demie.

*It is* three quarters past two. *Il est* trois heures moins un quart.

y fine weather.	<i>Il fait fort beau temps.</i>
omy.	<i>Il fait sombre.</i>
ry weather.	<i>Il fait un temps pluvieux.</i>
e to rise.	<i>Il est temps de se lever.</i>
; it is cold.	<i>Il fait chaud ; il fait froid.</i>
book.	<i>C'est mon livre.</i>
handkerchief.	<i>C'est mon mouchoir.</i>
ne house.	<i>C'est une belle maison.</i>
e your pens.	<i>Ce sont vos plumes.</i>
e young ladies.	<i>Ce sont de jeunes demoiselles.</i>
ity.	<i>C'est dommage.</i>
e strange people.	<i>Ce sont d'étranges gens.</i>
ugh.	<i>C'est assez.</i>
too much.	<i>Ce n'est pas trop.</i>
without design.	<i>Ce fut sans dessein.</i>
pite of him.	<i>C'est malgré lui.</i>
is a doctor.	<i>Il est docteur, ou c'est un docteur.</i>
goldsmith.	<i>Il est orfèvre, ou c'est un orfèvre.</i>
learned man.	<i>Il est savant, ou c'est un savant homme.</i>
e idle.	<i>Ils sont paresseux, ou ce sont des paresseux.</i>
merchant.	<i>Il est négociant, ou c'est un négociant.</i>
are Englishmen,	<i>Ils sont Anglais, Français ;</i>
hmen.	<i>ou ce sont des Anglais, des Français.</i>
loves me, and has a	<i>Il m'aime &amp; me considère.</i>
d for me.	
aken and kept it.	<i>Je l'ai pris &amp; l'ai gardé.</i>
and see her very	<i>Je la connais &amp; la vois très souvent.</i>
ems and honours you	<i>Il vous estime &amp; vous honore.</i>
nd spoke to her.	<i>Je l'ai vue &amp; lui ai parlé.</i>
ey say and assure	<i>Ils disent et assurent que—</i>
re seen and will al-	<i>Vous avez vu &amp; vous verrez.</i>
see.	<i>toujours.</i>

- He made his exercise ; but** *Il a fait son thème ; mais il*  
*he did not read his rules.* *n'a pas lu ses règles.*
- She speaks to him, though** *Elle lui parle, cependant elle*  
*she does not like him.* *ne l'aime pas.*
- [19] **Self love binds us, it is** *L'amour propre nous aveu-*  
*the cause of the greatest* *gle, c'est lui qui est la*  
*part of our misfortunes.* *cause de la plupart de nos*  
*malheurs.*
- Those flowers want water ;** *Voilà des fleurs qui ont be-*  
*give them some.* *soin d'eau ; donnez-leur-*  
*en.*
- [20] **I saw a fine garden ;** *J'ai vu un beau jardin ; il est*  
*it is enamelled with a* *émaille de mille belles*  
*thousand fine flowers.* *fleurs.*
- These shoes are too narrow ;** *Ces souliers sont trop étroits ;*  
*they hurt me.* *ils me blessent.*
- [21] **Do you know where** *Savez-vous où est la Bourse ?*  
*the Exchange is ? He lives* *il demeure vis-à-vis.*  
*opposite to it.*
- Give me my book, I cannot** *Donnez-moi mon livre ; je*  
*do without it.* *ne puis m'en passer.*
- [22] **A wise man is master** *Le sage est maître de soi.*  
*of himself.*
- We make our own happi-** *On fait sa félicité soi même.*  
*ness.*
- A wise man mistrusts him-** *Le sage se méfie de lui*  
*self.* *même.*
- She is too much conceited** *Elle a trop bonne opinion*  
*of herself.* *d'elle même.*
- We ought not to flatter our-** *On ne doit pas se flatter soi-*  
*selves.* *même.*
- He only loves himself.** *Il n'aime que lui-même.*
- Falsehood is odious in itself.** *La fausseté est odieuse en*  
*elle-même.*
- The loadstone attracts iron.** *L'aimant attire le fer à soi.*
- One ought not to speak of** *On ne doit parler de soi,*  
*one's self but with great* *qu'avec beaucoup de mo-*  
*modesty.* *destie.*
- That man speaks of nobody** *Cet homme ne parle que de*  
*but himself.* *lui-même.*
- I will do it myself.** *Je le veux faire moi-même.*
- She relies too much on her-** *Elle se fie trop à elle même.*  
*self.*

They betray *themselves*. Ils se trahissent *eux-mêmes*.  
 You hurt nobody but *yourself*. Vous ne faites tort qu'à *vous même*.

## SECTION II.

*Possessive Pronouns.*

1. THE conjunctive possessive pronouns come always before the nouns to which they are joined ; as, it is my snuff-box ; *c'est ma tabatière*. In this case, *mon*, *ton*, *son*, are used instead of *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, for the sweetness of sound : as, my sword ; *mon épée* : thy soul ; *ton âme* : his friendship ; *son amitié*. Absolute possessive pronouns are put after the noun with the definite article, *le*, *la*, *les* : as, *le mien*, *la mienne*.

2. When *sake* signifies *amour* in French, the English possessive pronoun is to be rendered into the French by the disjunctive personal pronoun : as, for your sake ; *pour l'amour de vous*, and not *pour votre amour*.

3. When the verb *être* signifies *to belong to*, the English possessive pronoun is rendered in French by the disjunctive personal pronoun : as, that house is *mine* ; *cette maison est à moi*, and not *est la mienne*. But, when the particle *ce* is joined to the verb *être*, the possessive pronoun is commonly used : as, this is my house ; *c'est ma maison* : it is his book, and not yours ; *c'est son livre*, & *non pas le vôtre*.

4. The gender of possessive pronouns does not follow that of the person who speaks, or is spoken of, but agrees with the particular gender of every noun it is joined to : as, *her father is dead* ; *son père est mort*.

5. The possessive conjunctive pronoun is always repeated before a substantive, and after a conjunction : as, my brothers and sisters ; *mes frères & mes sœurs* : his father and mother : *son père & sa mère*.

6. *Le mien*, *le tien*, *le sien*, &c. in the masculine gender and singular number, sometimes signify *one's due* : as, *we must give every one his due* ; *il faut rendre à chacun*



le sien. In the plural number and masculine gender they sometimes signify one's relations ; as, your and his relations ; *les vôtres & les siens*.

7. His, its, theirs, &c. are commonly rendered into French, by *son, sa, ses, leurs* ; as, plants have their properties ; *les plantes ont leurs propriétés*. But, when its, or their belong to a substantive preceding, they are commonly rendered into French by the supplying pronoun *en* : as, these plants are good, I know their qualities ; *ces plantes sont bonnes, j'en connais les qualités*. This happens when the pronoun may be resolved into the substantive to which it relates, as in the foregoing example ; these plants are good, I know the qualities of these plants.

8. The conjunctive possessive pronoun, with the participle *de* before it, is used instead of the absolute possessive pronoun on all such occasions : as, an acquaintance of his ; *une de ses connaissances* ; a friend of mine ; *un de mes amis*.

9. The conjunctive possessive pronoun is used when we call or answer to friends, relations, &c. : as, come, daughter ; *venez, ma fille* ; yes, brother ; *Oui, mon frère*.

10. Obs. Conjunctive possessive pronouns coming, in English, after some verbs not signifying a distemper, are resolved into the conjunctive personal pronoun, and instead of the possessive pronoun, we put the definite article : as, I have pared my nails ; *je me suis rogné les ongles* : he has cut my hair ; *il m'a coupé les cheveux*.

11. Obs. Generally, when in a sentence, a noun or a personal pronoun, sufficiently denotes what thing it is you are speaking of, the possessive pronoun is omitted as useless, and resolved into the definite article : as, I have a pain in my teeth, in my stomach, in my head, in my eyes, &c. *j'ai mal aux dents, à l'estomac, à la tête, aux yeux, &c.* However, when a pain or distemper continues for some time upon us, we may say, speaking to a person acquainted with it, *ma jambe ne guérit pas* : my leg does not heal ; *mon bras me fait toujours mal*. my arm pains me still. This may likewise happen in a few other instances. Generally the last two rules take place, when there is a sort of equivocation or amphibology.

*Possessive Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1] *My house is larger than his.* *Ma maison est plus grande que la sienne.*

Have you seen *my* garden? *Avez-vous vu mon jardin?*

Come and see *my* flowers. *Venez voir mes fleurs.*

Where is *your* book? *Où est votre livre?*

Show me *your* books. *Montrez-moi vos livres.*

Lend me *your* penknife. *Prêtez-moi votre canif.*

*Our* school-fellows are playing in the street. *Nos compagnons d'école jouent dans la rue.*

*Her* apron is quite black. *Son tablier est tout noir.*

*Her* fan is broken. *Son éventail est rompu.*

Give me *my* shoes, *my* stockings, *my* handkerchief, *my* shirt, and *my* hat. *Donnez-moi mes souliers, mes bas, mon mouchoir, ma chemise, & mon chapeau.*

*Your* stockings have holes in them. *Vos bas sont troués.*

[plumes ?]

What is become of *his* pens? *Que sont devenues ses*

How does *your* sister do? *Comment se porte votre sœur ?*

You have *my* needle. *Vous avez mon aiguille.*

Is that *your* hat? *Est ce la votre chapeau ?*

I know *your* sentiments ; and you are no stranger to mine. *Je connais vos sentimens ; & vous n'ignorez pas les miens.*

The Thames got out of *its* channel. *La Tamise est sortie de son lit.* [moi.

[2] Do it for *my* sake. *Faites le pour l'amour de*  
I will do it for *your* sake. *Je le ferai pour l'amour de vous.*

For *her* sake. *Pour l'amour d'elle.*

For *his* sake. *Pour l'amour de lui.*

[3] This pen is not *yours* ; it is *mine*. *Cette plume n'est pas à vous ; elle est à moi.*

Whose book is this? It is not *mine* ; it is *his*, or *hers*. *A qui est ce livre ? Il n'est pas à moi ; il est à lui, ou à elle.*

It is *your* knife, and not *his*. *C'est votre couteau, & non pas le sien.*

- Is this *your* needle ? Cette aiguille est-elle à *vous* ?  
 It is *my* paper, and not *yours*. Ce papier est à *moi*, & non pas à *vous*.  
 [4] It is my opinion and *hers*. C'est mon sentiment & le sien.  
 It is *his* brother. C'est son frère.  
 It is *his* sister. C'est sa sœur.  
 The horse broke *his* bridle and halter. Le cheval a rompu sa bride & son licou.  
 My horse carries *his* head well. Mon cheval porte bien sa tête.  
 Your horse has lost *his* shoes. Votre cheval a perdu ses fers.  
 [5] My father and mother are sick. Mon père & ma mère sont malades.  
*His* brother and sister are in the country. Son frère & sa sœur ; sont à la campagne.  
 Your brother and *my* cousin are very good friends. Votre frère & mon cousin sont très-bons amis.  
*Her* mother and aunt are against it. Sa mère & sa tante s'y opposent.  
 [6] Put *your* books in *their* places again. Remettez vos livres à leurs places. [vaíses.  
*Their* reasons are bad. Leurs raisons sont mauvaises.  
 I saw the chimney of *his* chamber; *its* mantle-piece is of marble. J'ai vu la cheminée de sa chambre ; le manteau en est de marbre.  
 You have bought an elbow-chair ; *its* arms are too high. Vous avez acheté un fauteuil ; les bras en sont trop hauts.  
 Your stick is not easy, *its* end is too sharp. Votre bâton n'est pas commode ; le bout en est trop pointu.  
 He has bought a sword ; *its* hilt is of silver. Il a acheté une épée ; la garde en est d'argent.  
 Have you read my book ? Is not the type very beautiful ? Avez-vous lu mon livre ? Le caractère n'en est-il pas bien beau ?  
 He ordered his country-house to be rebuilt ; *its* rooms and situation are fine. Il a fait rebâtir sa maison de campagne ; les chambres & la situation en sont belles.

- There is a fine large garden behind *his* house; the trees *of it* are very well planted, *their* fruit is excellent. Il y a un très-grand jardin derrière *sa* maison; les arbres *en* sont très bien plantés, les fruits *en* sont excellens.
- Where have you bought this book? the binding is very good. Où avez-vous acheté ce livre? La reliure *en* est très bonne.
- Every state has *its* advantages and troubles. Chaque état a *ses* agrémens & *ses* peines.
- He is satisfied in *his* situation; he knows all *its* pleasures. Il se plaît dans *sa* situation; il *en* connaît tous les plaisirs.
- The art of war has *its* dangers. L'art de la guerre a *ses* dangers.
- He is not satisfied in *his* situation; he sees all *its* dangers. Il ne se plaît pas dans *sa* situation; il *en* voit tous les dangers.
- It is a small house which has *its* conveniences. C'est une petite maison qui a *ses* commodités.
- That tree spreads *its* branches very far. Voilà un arbre qui étend *ses* branches très loin.
- [9] Brother, lend me *your* pen. Mon frère, prêtez-moi *votre* plume.
- Sister, I cannot; I am writing *my* exercise. Je ne puis *ma* sœur; j'écris *mon* thème.
- [10] He got *his* hair-cut. Il s'est fait couper *les* cheveux.
- You split *my* head. Vous *me* fendez *la* tête.
- He fell from *his* horse, and broke *his* leg. Il tomba de cheval, & se cassa *la* cuisse.
- They have cut off *his* leg. On *lui* a coupé la jambe.
- He cannot walk out; the gout has swelled *his* feet. Il ne peut sortir; la goutte *lui* a enflé *les* pieds.
- Wash *your* hands, mouth, and face. Lavez *vous* *les* mains, *la* bouche & *le* visage.
- I pricked my finger with my needle. Je *me* suis piqué *le* doigt avec mon aiguille.
- [11] He only grins. Il ne rit que du bout *des* lèvres, ou *des* dents.
- I will not meddle with it in the least. Je ne veux pas m'en mêler.

He does not know which way to turn himself. Il ne sait *de* quel côté tourner.

He waited on the lady in her coach. Il donna *la* main à la dame, et la conduisit à *son* carrosse.

Why do you not speak? Are you dumb? Pourquoi ne parlez-vous pas? Avez-vous perdu *la* voix?

He cannot stand upon his legs. Il ne peut se tenir sur *ses* jambes.

She gave me *her* word for it. Elle m'en donna *sa* parole.  
She gave him *her* hand to kiss. Elle lui donna *sa* main à baiser.

He stands on tiptoe. Il se tient sur le bout *des* pieds.

He gave *his* arm to the surgeon who was to bleed him. Il donna *son* bras au chirurgien qui devait le saigner.

The patient lost all *his* blood. Le malade perdit tout *son* sang.

He raised *his* voice. Il éleva *sa* voix, ou *la* voix.

She stretched out her arms. Elle étendit *ses* bras, ou *les* bras.

He makes a shift to live by hard labour. Il vit du travail de *ses* mains.

You have hurt *my* foot. Vous m'avez fait mal *au* pied.

You hurt *my* finger. Vous me faites mal *au* doigt.

Have you never had the toothache? No: but I have very often a pain in *my* stomach. N'avez-vous jamais eu mal *aux* dents? Non: mais j'ai fort souvent mal à *l'estomac*.

I am sick. J'ai mal *au* cœur.

*His* mind is undisturbed. Il a *l'esprit* en repos, ou *son* esprit est en repos.

*Her* mind is agitated with a thousand fears. Elle a *l'esprit* agité de mille craintes, ou *son* esprit est agité de mille craintes.

*My* finger is not yet healed. *Mon* doigt n'est pas encore guéri.

## SECTION III.

*Demonstrative Pronouns.*

1. *Ce* or *cette*, and *ces*, are joined to, and go before a substantive: as, this book, this man, this pen, these houses; *ce livre, cet homme, cette plume, ces maisons*. *Celui, celle, ceux, celles*, ought to be followed by a second case; as, that of you, *celui de vous*; or the relative pronoun *qui* or *que*: as, he who loves; *celui qui aime*; he whom you love; *celui que vous aimez*.

2. *Ce* is used before a noun masculine beginning with a consonant; but if the noun begins with a vowel, or an *h* mute, *cet* must be used. It is likewise used before *qui* or *que*: in this case it is said of inanimate things only, and signifies what, or the thing which: as, what you look for is not here; *ce que vous cherchez n'est pas ici*; or, the thing you look for is not here.

3. Obs. The particles *ci* and *là*,\* are sometimes joined by a hyphen to a substantive: as, this man, that woman, *cet homme-ci, cette femme-là*. They are likewise joined in the same manner to the demonstrative pronouns.

4. He who, he that, she who, they who, such as, &c. in the sense of that, even governed of the verb substantive to be, are rendered into French by *celui qui, celle qui, ceux qui*, which are seldom separated.

5. Obs. He who, he that, &c. whether or no they be separated in English, are sometimes elegantly rendered into French by the impersonal *c'est* or *ce n'est pas*, according as the sentence is affirmative or negative, with an infinitive followed by *que de* before a second infinitive; as in the foregoing example I may likewise say: *Ce n'est pas connaître le cœur humain que de se fier aux vaines promesses des hommes*.

I say *sometimes*, because, first, if one of the English verbs be in the future tense, it is by no means to be used. Secondly, there are many cases in which it is never used; as, they were punished who did it, *ceux qui l'ont fait ont été punis*; to put the two verbs in the infinitive mood would be nonsense.

6. The English possessive pronouns, his, her, their, before a substantive in the sense of him, of her, of those,

\* *Ci* denotes an object near, and *là* at a distance.

who, or that, are rendered into French, after the substantive to which they relate, by *de celui qui, de celle qui, de ceux qui, de celles qui*: as, every one should praise the endeavours of those who seek to be useful to the public; *chacun devrait louer les efforts de ceux qui cherchent à être utiles au public.*

7. Obs. *Ce qui, ce que*, what, beginning a sentence of two parts, commonly followed, after the first part, by *ce*, before *être*, and the word *être* is followed by a substantive: as, what I am saying to you is the truth, *ce que je vous dis, c'est la vérité*. Sometimes the verb *être* is followed by the preposition *de*, with an infinitive: as, what grieves him, is, not to have succeeded; *ce qui le fâche, c'est de n'avoir pas réussi*. Sometimes by *que*, if it comes before another mood: as, *ce qui le fâche c'est qu'il n'a pas réussi*. *Ce qui* is used before neuter verbs: as, *ce qui me plaît*, what pleases me; and before active verbs, when it is the nominative of the verb. In other cases *ce que* is used.

8. Obs. *Ce* is not repeated in the before-mentioned case before an adjective, or participle past: as, what I am saying to you is true, *ce que je vous dis est vrai*.

9. Obs. *Ceci*, this; *celà*, that; are sometimes relative to a single noun: as, *donnez-moi ceci, ou cela*, give me this, or that, speaking of any single thing whatever. Sometimes they are not relative to a single noun, but to an entire action; in this case *cela* generally signifies the action before spoken of; as, we often speak ill of absent people, which is unworthy: *on parle souvent mal des absens, celà est indigne*. *Ceci* generally signifies the action which is going to be mentioned; as, this is like to surprise you, a man who died a hundred and ten years old; *ceci va vous surprendre, un homme qui mourut, âgé de cent-dix ans*.

---

*Demonstrative Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| [1] Show me <i>that</i> book.                 | Montrez-moi <i>ce</i> livre.             |
| Give me <i>that</i> pen.                      | Donnez-moi <i>cette</i> plume.           |
| <i>These</i> houses are very fine.            | <i>Ces</i> maisons sont très belles.     |
| <i>These</i> ladies have a great deal of wit. | <i>Ces</i> dames sont très spirituelles. |
| [2] <i>That</i> man is very fantastical.      | <i>Cet</i> homme est très fantastique.   |
| <i>That</i> child is very amiable.            | <i>Cet</i> enfant est très aimable.      |

- Do you know *what* has happened to him or her ? Savez-vous *ce qui* lui est arrivé ?
- Has she shown you *what* was given her ? Vous a-t-elle montré *ce qu'*on lui a donné ?
- You will never guess *what* was said of you. Vous ne devinerez jamais *ce qu'*on dit de vous.
- Guess *what* they are about. Devinez *ce qu'*ils font.
- I know what you say. Je sais *ce que* vous dites.
- I know *what* makes you angry. Je sais *ce qui* vous fâche.
- [3] *That* man makes himself beloved by every body. *Cet* homme là se fait aimer de tout le monde.
- These* people are in the right. *Ces* gens-ci ont raison.
- These* women are very capricious. *Ces* femmes-là sont très capricieuses.
- That* man is in the wrong. *Cet* homme-là a tort.
- Those* apples are good for nothing. *Ces* pommes là ne valent rien.
- Give me some of *those* pears. Donnez-moi de *ces* poires là.
- [4] He does not know *what* you have written. Il ne sait pas *ce que* vous avez écrit.
- He who* betrays his friend is unworthy of friendship. *Celui qui* trahit son ami est indigne d'amitié.
- They* who despise learning, do not know the value of it. *Ceux qui* méprisent la science, n'en connaissent pas le prix.
- He who* shuns company is a stranger to the charms of society. *Celui qui* évite la compagnie, ne connaît pas les charmes de la société.
- She who* loves nobody does not taste the pleasures of friendship. *Celle qui* n'aime personne, ne goûte pas les plaisirs de l'amitié.
- Such* as are enemies to virtue, are strangers to it. *Ceux qui* sont ennemis de la vertu, ne la connaissent pas.
- Such* as are idle, do not know the value of time. *Ceux qui* sont paresseux, ne connaissent pas le prix du temps.
- Those who* are contented with their lot, are happy. *Ceux qui* sont contents de leur sort, sont heureux.
- He who* does not study will never be learned. *Celui qui* n'étudie pas, ne sera jamais savant.\*

\* See the exception to the fifth rule.



*He who* did it, was punished. *Celui qui a fait cela*, a été puni.

*They who* have done their exercises, have been rewarded. *Ceux qui ont fait leurs thèmes*, ont été récompensés.

*They who* seem to be happy, are not always so. *Ceux qui paraissent être heureux*, ne le sont pas toujours.

[6] We should always remember *the* cares of those *by whom* we were brought up. Nous devrions toujours nous souvenir des soins de *ceux* par *qui* nous avons été élevés.

We ought to encourage the endeavours of those *who* apply themselves to arts and sciences. On doit encourager les efforts de *ceux qui* s'appliquent aux arts & aux sciences.

[7] *What* makes him angry is *hēr* bad humour. *Ce qui* le fâche, *c'est* sa mauvaise humeur.

*What* an honest man ought to bewail is the loss of time. *Ce qu'un* honnête homme doit regretter, *c'est* la perte du temps.

*What* grieves him is not to have succeeded. *Ce qui* le fâche *c'est* de n'avoir pas réussi, ou *c'est* qu'il n'a pas réussi.

*What* rejoices me is to have seen you and your family in good health. *Ce qui* me réjouit *c'est* de vous avoir vu & toute votre famille en bonne santé.

[8] *What* I say to you is true. *Ce que* je vous dis *est* vrai.

*What* she said to you is false. *Ce qu'elle* vous a dit *est* faux.

*What* you have told is surprising. *Ce que* vous avez dit *est* surprenant.

[9] Does *this* please you? *Ceci* vous plaît-il?

Does *that* make you angry? *Celà* vous fâche-t-il?

*That* surprises me. *Celà* me surprend.

What do you think of *it*? Que pensez-vous de *celà*?

I did never think of *it*. Je n'ai jamais pensé à *celà*.

Keep *this* and give me *that*. Gardez *ceci* & donnez-moi *celà*.

Did you write *that*? Avez-vous écrit *celà*?

I do not like *that*. Je n'aime pas *celà*.

*That* is wonderful. *Celà* est admirable.

## SECTION IV.

*Relative Pronouns.*

1. THE relative pronoun *qui* is the nominative, and *que* the accusative, in speaking of all sorts of objects ; as, the stone which is here, *la pierre qui est ici* ; the house that you see, *la maison que vous voyez*.

Except that *qui* is used in the accusative instead of *que*, when it signifies what person ; as, *je sais qui vous aimez*, I know whom you love, or what person you love ; and when it is governed by prepositions ; as, *en qui*, *sur qui*, *avec qui*, &c. In this last case *lequel*, &c. may likewise be used.

2. When *qui* is in the second case, or comes after any preposition whatever, it is applied only to persons or objects used as persons, and therefore it would be a fault to say, *c'est la maison de qui je vous ai parlé*, it is the house of which I have spoken to you. In this case we make use of *dont*, or *duquel*, *de laquelle*, &c. which is used equally for all objects, and often more properly than *de qui*, or *duquel*, *de laquelle*, &c. as, *c'est la maison dont je vous ai parlé*.

3. *A qui* is sometimes used in speaking of animate objects, though they are not persons, or objects used as persons ; but, as we can never err by making use of *auquel*, *à laquelle*, &c. I would advise to do so.

4. Whom, which, that, though not expressed in English, must always be expressed in French by *qui* or *que* ; as, the man you see, *l'homme que vous voyez*.

5. *Lequel*, *laquelle*, &c. are to be used instead of *qui*, 1st, when *qui* is equivocal : 2dly, when the relative pronoun is in the second case after a substantive ; as, a courier has been sent to court, at whose return, *on a envoyé un courier à la cour, au retour duquel* : 3dly, when the relative pronoun expresses a choice : as, which will you see ? *lequel or laquelle voulez-vous voir ?*

6. *Speaking of things, in which, in what, to which, &c.*

which, at what, in the sense of where, or wherein, are rendered into French by *où* instead of *dans le quel, laquelle*, &c. : as, the house in which, or where he lives, *la maison où il demeure* ; the end of which, or whereat, he aims, *le but où il tend*. From which, from what, are rendered by *d'où* instead of *duquel, de laquelle*, &c. : as, the country from which I come, *le pays d'où je viens*. Through which, by which, are rendered by, *par où*, or *par lequel*, &c.

7. Obs. The relative pronoun *quoi* is used only in speaking of inanimate objects. It may be used in the third case instead of *auquel, à laquelle*, &c. ; as, it is a reason which I did not think of ; *c'est une raison à quoi je ne pensais pas*.

However, in most circumstances *auquel, à laquelle*, &c. may be used equally, of which the ear must be the judge.

8. *A quoi* must always be used when it has for its antecedent *ce* and the verb *être* or *rien*, and is followed by a noun, or verb governing the third case : as, it is to that I apply myself, *c'est à quoi je m'applique* ; there is nothing which I am not disposed to, *il n'y a rien à quoi je ne sois disposé*.

9. *De quoi* is used when it follows immediately *ce* and the verb *être*, and is followed by a noun, or a verb governing the second case : as, it is that I complain of, *c'est de quoi je me plains*. But, after *rien*, we make use of *dont* ; at least it is a great deal better : as, there is nothing in the world of which God is not the author, *il n'y a rien au monde dont Dieu ne soit l'auteur*.

10. Obs. *Quoi* may likewise be used instead of *lequel, laquelle*, &c. after prepositions governing it, such as, *sur, en après, avec*, &c. as, the reason I rely upon, *la raison sur quoi je me fonde*.

11. Obs. *Que* is used instead of *de qui* and *à qui*. It happens not only when there comes immediately before it the second or third case of a personal pronoun, but likewise after any other noun, when the sentence begins with *ce* and *être* ; as, it is to you that I speak, *c'est à vous que je parle* ; it is to happiness that I aspire, *c'est au bonheur que j'aspire* : it is from the public that I expect the approbation, *c'est du public que j'attends l'approbation*.

The true mark to know it is, when *que* has the signification of *that*, as you may see by the foregoing examples ; by this

rule there is no danger of being mistaken. Hence it may appear, that in such cases, *que* is to be looked upon as a conjunction, rather than a relative pronoun.

*Relative Pronouns Exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1] It is the lady *who* spoke C'est la Dame *qui* vous a parlé.  
to you.

Speak to this gentleman *who* Parlez à ce Monsieur *qui*  
is here. est ici.

Is this the new hat *which* you Est-ce là le chapeau neuf  
bought ? *que* vous avez acheté ?

The book *which* you lent me, Le livre *que* vous m'avez  
is very well written. prêté, est très bien écrit.

I know *whom* you mean. Je sais *qui* vous voulez dire.

You do not know *who* it is. Vous ne savez pas *qui* c'est.

Do you know *whom* I love ? Savez-vous *qui* j'aime ?

I know *whom* she loves. Je sais *qui* elle aime.

[2] He is a friend in *whom* C'est un ami *en* *qui* je mets  
I put my confidence. ma confiance.

He is a person *in* *whom* one C'est une personne à *qui*  
may confide. on peut se fier.

She is a lady against *whom* C'est une Demoiselle *contre*  
nothing can be said with *qui* on ne peut mal parler  
truth. avec vérité.

[4] I know the person you Je connais la personne *avec*  
*were* talking to. *qui* vous avez parlé.

It is the man *of* *whom* I spoke C'est l'homme *de* *qui*, ou  
to you. *dont* je vous ai parlé.

It is the horse he spoke to C'est le cheval *duquel* ou  
you about. *dont*, il vous a parlé.

[5] She is a woman in *whose* C'est une femme sur la con-  
behaviour there is nothing duite *de laquelle* il n'y a  
to censure. rien à redire.

He is a merchant *whose* hon- C'est un négociant sur l'hon-  
our and probity cannot be- heur & la probité *duquel*  
doubted. il ne peut y avoir de doute.

[6] The circumstances you Les circonstances où vous  
are in. êtes.

The danger he is in. Le danger où il se trouve.

The end she aims at. Le but où elle vise.

The house where she lives in. Le maison où elle demeure

- He has got the same frame of mind and sentiments *in which* he has always been. Il est dans la même disposition d'esprit, & dans les mêmes sentimens où il a toujours été.
- I know the place *whence* you come. Je sais la place d'où vous venez.
- These are the reasons *from which* I conclude. Voilà les raisons d'où je conclus.
- These are the discourses *by which* he insinuates. Voilà les discours par où il insinue.
- This is the city *through which* I have passed. Voilà la ville par où j'ai passé.
- I know the means *by which* he gained his point. Je sais les moyens par où il parvint à ses fins.
- [7] That is the matter in question. Voilà de quoi il s'agit.
- [8] It is *what* I am thinking about. C'est à quoi je pense.
- It is *what* he complains of. C'est de quoi il se plaint.
- It was *what* he applied himself to. C'était à quoi il s'appliquait.
- It was *what* she exhorted him to. C'était à quoi elle l'exhortait.
- It is *what* I am sorry for. C'est de quoi je suis fâché.
- It is *what* I assure you. C'est de quoi je vous assure.
- It is *what* I will think about. C'est à quoi je penserai.
- There is nothing *in which* I am not ready to oblige you. Il n'y a rien à quoi je ne sois disposé pour vous obliger.
- I do not see *upon what* his discourse is grounded. Je ne vois pas sur quoi son discours puisse être fondé.
- It is *what* you may rely on. C'est sur quoi vous pouvez compter.
- It is an argument *to which* there is no answer. C'est un raisonnement auquel il n'y a point de réponse.
- Death is an evil *to which* there is no remedy. La mort est un mal auquel il n'y point de remède.
- Idleness is a vice *to which* young people are much inclined. La paresse est un vice auquel les jeunes gens sont fort enclins.

- This is the reason *upon which* C'est la raison *sur laquelle*  
I am grounded. je me fonde.
- It is the happiness *to which* C'est le bonheur *après lequel*  
I aspire. j'aspire.
- These are the reasons *by* ~~Ce~~ sont les raisons *avec les-*  
*which* I convinced him. *quelles* je l'ai convaincu.
- [9] There is nothing I am ~~Il~~ n'y a rien *dont* je sois plus  
more sorry *for*. fâché.
- There is nothing he ~~com-~~ Il n'y a rien *dont* il se plai-  
plains of more. gne davantage.
- There is nothing *that he is* Il n'y a rien *dont* il ne soit  
more capable of. capable.
- [11] It is to you that I shall C'est à vous *que* je parlerai.  
speak.
- It is to her *that* I had pro- C'est à elle *que* je l'avais  
mised it. promis.
- It is from his friend *that* he C'est de son ami *qu'il* a reçu  
has received so many fa- tant d'amitiés.  
vours.
- It is his brother *that* he com- C'est de son frère *qu'il* se  
plains of. plaint.
- It was by my friend *that* I Ce fut par mon ami *que* je  
was betrayed. fus trahi.
- It is to continual study that C'est à une étude continuelle  
your brother owes his que votre frère doit ses  
great learning. grandes connoissances.
- It is to my sister *that* you C'est à ma sœur *que* vous  
have given it. l'avez donné.
- It is to her *that* you have C'est à elle *que* vous avez  
spoken. parlé.
- It is from her *that* I expect C'est d'elle *que* j'attends  
that favour. cette grâce.
- It is to trade *that* he applies C'est au commerce *qu'il*  
himself. s'applique.
- It is to the protection of his C'est à la protection de ses  
friends *that* he owes his amis *qu'il* doit sa fortune.  
fortune.
- It is by the public *that* he is C'est du public *qu'il* est ap-  
approved of. prouvé.

## SECTION V.

*Interrogatory Pronouns.*

1. *Que*, as interrogative, is applied only to things, and *qui* when persons are spoken of; as, what do you say? *que dites-vous?* whom do you look for? *qui cherchez-vous?* Both are used in all their cases as above.

2. *Quoi*, interrogative, is used after a preposition or after the participle *de* or *à*; as, what are you grounded upon? *sur quoi vous fondez-vous?* about what do you busy yourself? *de quoi vous mêlez vous?*

3. If *quoi* be not immediately followed by a verb, it may be sometimes used in the first case; as, what is there greater? *quoi de plus grand?* It sometimes expresses only an emotion of the mind; as, how! you are angry! *quoi! vous êtes fâché!*

4. *Quel*, *quelle*, &c. are said of persons and things.—It is to be observed, that *quel* is always followed by its substantive; as, what man is it? *quel homme est ce?* Except when the noun was expressed before; as, this is my opinion; what is yours? *voilà mon sentiment; quel est le vôtre?*

5. *Lequel*, &c. is also said of persons and things; it is always followed by a genitive expressed, or understood; as, which of the two will you have? *lequel des deux voulez-vous?* *Quel* answers to what; *lequel*, to which.

6. Whose, signifying to whom a thing belongs, is translated into French by the dative, *à qui*; as, whose house is that? *à qui est cette maison?*

---

*Interrogatory Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1] *What* do you say?  
*What* do you want?

*Que\** dites-vous?  
*Que* souhaitez vous?

\* Observe here, that instead of *que*, we often make use of *qu'est ce que*. In both cases the personal pronoun comes before the verb.

<i>What do you ask for ?</i>	<i>Que demandez-vous ?</i>
<i>What do you fear ?</i>	<i>Que craignez-vous ?</i>
<i>What is the matter ?</i>	<i>Qu'est ce que c'est ? ou Qu'est-ce qu'il y a ?</i>
<i>What shall we do ?</i>	<i>Que ferons nous ?</i>
<i>Do you remember what you talked of to me ?</i>	<i>Vous souvenez-vous de ce dont vous m'avez parlé ?</i>
<i>Is that like what you have been told of ?</i>	<i>Cela est-il conforme à ce que vous avez entendu dire ?</i>
<i>Whom do you look for ?</i>	<i>Qui* cherchez-vous ?</i>
<i>Who has done that ?</i>	<i>Qui a fait cela ?</i>
<i>Who spoke to you ?</i>	<i>Qui est-ce qui vous a parlé ?</i>
<i>Whom do you suspect ?</i>	<i>Qui est-ce que vous soupçonnez ?</i>
<i>Whom have you that news from ?</i>	<i>De qui tenez-vous cette nouvelle ?</i>
<i>Who is come ?</i>	<i>Qui est-ce qui est venu ?</i>
<i>To whom do you give the preference ?</i>	<i>A qui donnez-vous la préférence ?</i>
[2] <i>Why do you concern yourself ?</i>	<i>De quoi vous mêlez-vous ?</i>
<i>What does she complain of ?</i>	<i>De quoi se plaint-elle ?</i>
<i>What is the matter ?</i>	<i>De quoi s'agit-il ?</i>
<i>Why so much ado ?</i>	<i>A quoi bon tant de façons ?</i>
<i>What do you apply yourself to ?</i>	<i>A quoi vous appliquez-vous ?</i>
<i>How do you spend your time ?</i>	<i>A quoi passez-vous le temps ?</i>
<i>What can she expect ?</i>	<i>A quoi peut-elle s'attendre ?</i>
<i>What does he talk of ?</i>	<i>De quoi parle-t-il ?</i>
<i>What is she so angry for ?</i>	<i>De quoi est-elle si fâchée ?</i>
<i>What are they so jealous of ?</i>	<i>De quoi sont-ils si jaloux ?</i>
<i>What do you impute the fault to ?</i>	<i>A quoi attribuez vous la faute ?</i>
<i>How shall we spend our time ?</i>	<i>A quoi nous amuserons-nous ?</i>
[4] <i>What man spoke to you ?</i>	<i>Quel homme vous a parlé ?</i>

\* Instead of *qui*, in such or the like interrogations, we make equally well use of *qui est-ce qui* in the nominative, and *qui est-ce que* in the accusative; in this case the personal pronoun is put before the verb.



*What woman have you seen ?* *Quelle femme avez-vous vue ?*

*What lace has she bought ?* *Quelle dentelle a-t-elle achetée ?*

*What books have you read ?* *Quels livres avez-vous lus ?*

*What sort of shirts does he wear ?* *Quelles chemises porte-t-il ?*

*This is my opinion ; what is his ?* *Voilà mon opinion ; quelle est la sienne ?*

*This is your advice ; what is her's ?* *Voilà votre avis ; quel est le sien ?*

*It was her sentiment ; what was your's ?* *C'étoit son sentiment ; quel étoit le vôtre ?*

*What grammar do you read ?* *Quelle grammaire lisez-vous ?*

[5] *Of all the grammars which have been printed, to which do you give the preference ?* *De toutes les grammaires qui ont été imprimées, à laquelle donnez-vous la préférence ?*

*There are apples and pears ; which do you like best ?* *Voilà des pommes & des poires : lesquelles aimez-vous le mieux ?*

*Which of these two oranges will you have ?* *Laquelle de ces deux oranges voulez-vous ?*

*Which of these two ladies do you think the handsomest ?* *Laquelle de ces deux dames trouvez-vous la plus belle ?*

*Which of all the grammarians has written most clearly and precisely ?* *Lequel de tous les grammairiens a écrit le plus clairement, et avec le plus de précision ?*

*Which of the books you have read, do you think the most useful ?* *Des livres que vous avez lus, lesquels trouvez-vous les plus utiles ?*

*Whose penknife is this ?* *A qui est ce canif ?*

*Whose pen is this ?* *A qui est cette plume ?*

*Whose hat is this ?* *A qui est ce chapeau ?*

*Whose garden is this ?* *A qui est ce jardin ?*

## SECTION VI.

*Indefinite or Indeterminate Pronouns.*

1. *Pas un, aucun, nul*, are three negative pronouns, having the signification of no person or no thing, and require the particle *ne* before the verb : as, nobody spoke of it, *aucun, or pas un, or nul n'en a parlé* ; nobody knows it ; *aucun, or pas un, or nul ne le sait*.

*Nul* is never used in an interrogation, or with a negation before it ; for we do not say, *nul ne le sait-il ?*

2. Obs. *Aucun* is sometimes used without a negation, in phrases of interrogation or doubt. In such a case it may be rendered by *quelqu'un* ; as, of all those who know my reasons, is there any one who has blamed me ? *de tous ceux qui savent mes raisons, y en a-t-il aucun qui m'ait blâmé ?*

3. Obs. When *aucun* and *nul* are followed by a second case, or a substantive either expressed or understood, they must be in the same gender as that second case or substantive, but not in the same number ; as, none of them has been there, *aucun d'eux*, speaking of men, or *aucune d'elles*, speaking of women, *n'y a été*. These three pronouns, used as pronouns, have no plural.

4. *Nul* and *aucun* are sometimes to be looked upon as adjectives ; this happens when they are joined to a substantive : as, he yields to no reason, *il ne se rend à aucune raison* ; she has no pleasure, *elle n'a aucun plaisir*. *Nul* may likewise be used, but *aucun*, in such a case, is a great deal better.

5. Obs. *Nul* is also a Law-term, signifying Void ; in such a case it has a plural, if the noun be in the plural ; as, the proceedings are void, *les procédures sont nulles*.

6. *Chacun*, each, signifies every person or thing, as no plural is indifferently applied to persons and things, and follows the gender of the noun to which it is joined, or relates ; as, each of these two women has seen it, *chacune de ces deux femmes l'a vu*.

Obs. If the noun be a collective one, and cannot be divided by one or two, *chacun* is put in the masculine gender, though the collective noun be feminine ; as, the Commons, withdrew

each of them to his home ; les communes se retirèrent *chacun* chez soi.

N. B. Custom does not allow to say *un chacun*, instead of *chacun*.

7. *Personne* signifies nobody, has no plural, is always of the masculine gender, and attended by the particle *ne* before the verb : as, nobody saw it, *personne ne l'a vu*.

8. Obs. When *personne* signifies any body, and is not preceded by an adverb of denial ; such as, not, never, &c. the particle *ne*, must be omitted ; as, did ever any body find the philosopher's stone ? *personne a-t-il jamais trouvé la pierre philosophale* ? This way of speaking insinuates that you do not believe the thing concerning which you inquire. Take notice not to confound this pronoun with the noun substantive : a person, *une personne*, the person, *la personne*, which is always feminine.

9. *Tout* has many significations ; it sometimes signifies all, every, or the whole. When it is joined to a substantive, it requires the definite article before the following noun, notwithstanding its having before it *de* or *à* : as, the whole house, *toute la maison* ; of the whole house, *de toute la maison* ; to the whole house, *à toute la maison*.

10. The pronoun *tout*, used by itself, is always put in the masculine singular : as, every thing almost is uncertain in the world, *presque tout est incertain dans le monde*. Sometimes it has the signification of *chaque* ; as, every day, *tous les jours* ; every moment, *à tout moment*, &c. But we say, *à chaque instant*, *à chaque minute*, every instant, every minute.

11. Obs. *Tout* sometimes signifies although, followed by a word denoting the quality, office, dignity, trade, calling, circumstances, &c. of the subject ; in such a case, the word denoting such a quality, &c. which is placed after the verb in English, must be placed in French immediately after *tout* and the word denoting such quality, must be followed by *que* ; as, though he be learned, he mistakes sometimes ; *tout savant qu'il est, il se trompe quelquefois*. When *tout* is rendered by *bien que*, or *quoique*, the verb must be put in the subjunctive ; as, *bien qu'il, or quoiqu'il soit savant, &c.*

12. Obs. When the word which is after the verb does not denote the quality of the subject, then, for all, or although,

must be rendered into French by *bien que*, or *quoique*: as, although you make use of this physician, *bien que*, or *quoique*, vous vous serviez de ce médecin.

13. Obs. *Tout*, in the sense of although, is indeclinable, except before a noun feminine beginning with a consonant.

14. Obs. *Tout*, sometimes signifies quite, entirely; as, she is quite lovely; elle est *toute* aimable. In this sense, it is likewise declinable only before a noun feminine beginning with a consonant.

15. Obs. When *rien* signifies nothing, or not any thing, the particle *ne* must be placed before the verb; as, I have seen nothing prettier; je *n'ai rien* vu de plus joli.

But when it signifies any thing, and is not preceded by an adverb of denial, the particle *ne* is omitted; as, have you ever seen any thing so beautiful? avez-vous jamais *rien* vu de si beau?

16. *Plusieurs* signifies many, or several. It is always plural: as, several have believed that the world was eternal, *plusieurs ont cru le monde éternel*. It is sometimes an adjective; as, many friends, *plusieurs amis*. It is declined with the indefinite articles *de* and *à*.

17. Obs. *Autre*, other, is sometimes an adjective; as, another book, *un autre livre*; sometimes a substantive, when it is preceded by *en*, to which it hath a relation; as, j'en connais *un autre*, I know another; sometimes a pronoun; as, another than you, *un autre que vous*.—*Autrui*, one's neighbour, others, or other people, is used only in the second and third cases; as, of others, to others, *d'autrui à autrui*.—*Ni l'un ni l'autre*, neither the one nor the other, will have the verb in the singular, if the verb comes after it: as, *ni l'un ni l'autre n'en sait la raison*, neither the one nor the other knows the reason of it; and in the plural, if it comes before; as, ils *n'en savent la raison ni l'un ni l'autre*.—*L'un l'autre*, one the other, one another, is used to express the mutual action of two objects on each other, and consequently it is always reciprocal; as, they love one another: ils *s'aiment l'un l'autre*. The first is always in the first case—*L'un & l'autre*, one and the other, or both, has a different meaning; it signifies the union of two objects already mentioned: as, both are in the wrong; ils *ont tort l'un & l'autre*, or *l'un & l'autre ont tort*; it always governs the plural. Both of these two words are declined with the definite article.

Take notice, that *l'un l'autre*, comes always after the verb; *ni l'un ni l'autre*, and *l'un & l'autre*, in the first case, go indifferently before or after, with this difference, that, when they

are put after, the personal pronoun goes always before the verb, though not expressed in English; and, when they are before the verb the personal pronoun is omitted, though expressed in English; as, they are both in the wrong, *or* both are in the wrong, *ils ont tort l'un et l'autre, or l'un et l'autre ont tort.*

18. *Quelque*, some, signifies in the singular, that the object is taken indeterminately; as, he is always reading some good book, *il lit toujours quelque bon livre.* In the plural, it expresses an indeterminate number of objects; as, he is inclined to some vices, *il est adonné à quelques vices.*

19. Obs. Sometimes *quelque* signifies not the indeterminate number, but the indeterminate quality or quantity of things, and answers the English expressions, whatever, whatsoever, although, though, ever so much, &c. as, although they are learned, *quelque savans qu'ils soient.* *Quelque*, taken in this sense, has no plural before adjectives, unless they be immediately followed by their substantive; as, though they seem ever so rich, *quelque riches qu'ils paraissent;* though he has done ever so fine actions, *quelques belles actions qu'il ait faites.* Hence it appears how much an author is mistaken who says, that *quelque* can never happen to come before an adjective but with être.

Observe, that *quelque* in this case is always followed by *que*, or *qui*, which governs the following verb in the subjunctive mood.

20. Obs. When whatever, &c. signifying *quelque* in French, is followed immediately by a verb, or by a first case of a personal pronoun, it must be separated into two words, and then *quel* has both numbers and genders, and *que* or *qui* is not repeated in the following part of the sentence; as, whatever his intentions are, *quelles que soient ses intentions;* whatever I am, *quelque je sois;* whatever they may be, (speaking of women,) *quelques qu'elles puissent être.*

21. *Quelqu'un* in the sense of somebody, or any body, is used in all its cases, in the singular masculine only: as, somebody has told it to me; *quelqu'un me l'a dit.* I know it from somebody, *je le sais de quelqu'un;* I have given it to somebody, *je l'ai donné à quelqu'un.* However *quelques-uns*, is used as the nominative of the verb; as, some persons have said it; *quelques-uns l'ont dit.* In the other cases, we make use of *quelques personnes*, and not *quelques-uns.*

22. *Quelqu'un* sometimes signifies an indeterminate part of a number, and is then joined with the second case of some other noun expressed, or sufficiently understood; or with the particle *en* instead of the second case; in this sense, *quelqu'un* is used in all the genders, numbers, and cases; as, has any of these gentlemen heard anything of it? *quelqu'un, ou quelques uns de ces Messieurs en aurait-il, or auraient ils entendu parler?* There are fine flowers, give me some; *voilà de belles fleurs, donnez m'en quelques unes.*

23. Obs. When whatever, or whatsoever, has no relation either to an adjective or substantive, it must be rendered by *quoique, tout ce qui, tout ce que*; as, whatever happens, *quoi qu'il arrive*; whatever you please, *tout ce qu'il vous plaira*—*Quoi que* is used only in the first case, whereas, *tout ce qui, tout ce que* are used in all their cases. Observe, that *quoi que ce soit* (whatever or whatsoever it may be) is likewise used in all its cases; as, of whatever he may speak, *de quoi que ce soit qu'il parle*; to whatsoever he may apply himself, *à quoi que ce soit qu'il s'applique*: this last pronoun, when followed by a verb, requires that verb in the subjunctive mood with *que* before it, as may be seen by the foregoing example.

*Quoi que ce soit*, in a sentence with the particle *ne* before the verb, signifies nothing at all, or nothing whatever; as, he talks of nothing whatever; *il ne parle de quoi que ce soit.*

24. Obs. *Qui que ce soit*, whoever, what person soever, is used in all its cases; as, from whomsoever he may have learned it, *de qui que ce soit qu'il l'ait appris*; whomsoever he may address himself to; *à qui que ce soit qu'il s'adresse*. When this pronoun belongs to a sentence wherein *ne* precedes the verb, it stands for nobody whatever; as, I shall speak of it to nobody whatever, *je n'en parlerai à qui que ce soit*. Hence it appears, that *quoi que ce soit*, is used for things only, and *qui que ce soit*, for persons.

25. Obs. *Qui que ce soit* in the sense of *quiconque*, whoever, or what person soever, must always be followed by *il, elle, &c.* or *que*, and sometimes by both; as, whosoever it may be, he will be discovered, *qui que ce soit il sera découvert*: whosoever deceives me, shall be discovered, *qui que ce soit, qui me trompe, il sera découvert*, but after *quiconque*, *il* and *qui* are omitted; as, *quiconque me trompera, sera découvert*, and not *il sera, &c.*

26. *Même* is sometimes an adjective; as, the same author, *le même auteur*: sometimes it answers to self in English; as, myself, *moi-même*; in these two senses it

has a plural :\* sometimes it answers to *even* in English ; as, *even* this book, *ce livre même*.

27. *Je ne sais qui*, I do not know who, is used in all its cases in the singular only for persons. *Je ne sais quoi*, I do not know what, is used in all its cases for things only in the singular. *Je ne sais quel*, is used in all its numbers, cases, and genders, speaking of persons or things, and is always followed by a substantive.

28. One, people, men, a body, &c. are sometimes rendered by *on* ; as, they, or people, talk, *on parle* : may a body know ? *peut-on savoir* ?

Sometimes *on* signifies *it* : in this case, the verb, which is in English in the passive voice, must be changed in French into the active ; as, it is hoped, *on espère* ; it was said, *on disait*. Moreover, as the passive voice is seldom used in French, in such a case the noun or pronoun, which is the subject of the passive verb in English, must be made the object of the verb in French, and the passive verb must be changed into the active, and put in the same tense as in English : as, great rejoicings have been made this week ; *on a fait* cette semaine de grandes réjouissances, instead of *de grandes réjouissances ont été faites*.

### *Indeterminate Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1] <i>Nobody</i> spoke to him.	<i>Aucun, pas un, ou nul ne lui a parlé.</i>
<i>Nobody</i> knows it.	<i>Aucun, pas un, ou nul ne le sait.</i>
<i>Nobody</i> has seen it.	<i>Aucun, pas un, ou nul ne l'a vu.</i>
<i>Nobody</i> can boast of it.	<i>Aucun, pas un, ou nul ne peut s'en vanter.</i>
Of all the grammars, I am a slave to <i>none</i> .	De toutes les grammaires, je ne m'attache à <i>aucune</i> .
Did <i>any body</i> ask for me ?	<i>Personne ne m'a-t-il demandé ?</i>
I never saw any of them.	Je n'en ai jamais vu <i>un, ou aucun, and not nul.</i>

\* See rule 22, of the personal pronouns, p. 173.

Did you ever see *any one* who...? En avez vous jamais vu *un* au *aucun* qui...? and not *nul*.

[2] Is there *any one* who can blame me? Y en a-t-il *aucun* qui puisse me blâmer?

Is there *any one* who has seen it? Y en a-t-il *aucun*, qui l'ait vu?

[3] I have not read *any* of the books you lent me. Je n'ai lu *aucun* des livres que vous m'avez prêtés.

I did not see *any* of the ladies you spoke of. Je n'ai vu *aucune* des dames dont vous avez parlé.

I know *none* of those merchants. Je ne connais *aucun* de ces commerçans.

I saw *none* of them. Je n'ai vu *aucun* d'eux, *for the masculine: aucune d'elles, for the feminine.*

[4] He has *no* rest. Il n'a *nul* repos.—*aucun* repos.

She has *no* uneasiness of mind. Elle n'a *nulle*, ou *aucune*, inquiétude d'esprit.

I have *no* interest in it. Je n'ai *nul*, ou *aucun*, intérêt en cela.

[5] The sentence was annulled. La sentence fut déclarée *nulle*.

All their privileges are annulled. Tous leurs privilèges sont *annulés*.

[6] *Every one* lives after his own manner. *Chacun* vit à sa mode.

*All men* are faulty. *Chacun* fait des fautes.

*All men* desire to be happy. *Chacun* veut être *heureux*.

*Every one* of them was surprised. *Chacun* d'eux fut surpris, *for the masculine: chacune d'elles fut surprise, for the feminine.*

I know two ladies; they have, *each of them*, two thousand pounds a year. Je connais deux demoiselles; elles ont *chacune* deux mille livres sterling de rente.

The two clerks have, *each of them*, written four letters. Les deux commis ont écrit *chacun* quatre lettres.

The commons withdrew, *each of them, to his own home.* Les communes se retirèrent *chacun* chez soi.



**Each** of the shires send two representatives to Parliament. Les provinces envoient *chacune* deux députés au Parlement.

Put the books in order, and put *every one* in its place. Arrangez les livres, & les mettez *chacun* à sa place.

[7] *Nobody* talks of it. *Personne* n'en parle.  
*Nobody* has seen you. *Personne* ne vous a vu.  
*Nobody* has guessed the meaning of the riddle. *Personne* n'a deviné l'énigme.

*Nobody* knows it. *Personne* ne le sait.  
*Nobody* suspected her. *Personne* ne la soupçonnait.  
 She told it to *nobody*. Elle ne l'a dit à *personne*.  
 He mistrusts *nobody*. Il ne se méfie de *personne*.  
 She trusts *nobody*. Elle ne se fie à *personne*.

[8] Did ever *any body* know all the properties of matter? *Personne* a-t-il jamais connu toutes les propriétés de la matière?

Did ever *any body* seriously doubt of the existence of God? *Personne* a-t-il jamais douté sérieusement de l'existence de Dieu?

Did ever *any man* comprehend the mysteries of religion? *Personne* a-t-il jamais compris les mystères de la religion?

[9, 10] *All* is lost. *Tout* est perdu.  
*All* is quiet now. *Tout* est tranquille à présent.  
*Every thing* in nature is liable to change. *Tout* dans la nature est sujet au changement.

He mistrusts *every thing*. Il se méfie de *tout*.  
 She is frightened at *every shadow*. Elle est épouvanté de *tout*.

He is capable of *every thing*. Il est capable de *tout*.  
 Can one be sure of *every thing*? Peut-on être sûr de *tout*?

I am compliant to *every thing* you please. Je suis prêt à *tout* ce qu'il vous plaira.

He is fit for *any thing*. Il est propre à *tout*.

They are against *every thing*. Ils s'opposent à *tout*.

I see her and speak to her *every day*. Je la vois, & lui parle *tous* les jours.

She goes to the play almost *every evening*. Elle va à la comédie presque tous les soirs.

He flies in a passion *every moment*. Il s'empoigne à *tout moment*.

[11, 12] *Though* he be rich, *Tout* riche *qu'il* est, ou *quoi-*  
 he is not more contented. *qu'il* soit riche, il n'en est  
 pas plus content.

*Although* he seems angry, he *Tout* fâché *qu'il* paraît, ou  
 is not really so. *quoiqu'il* paraisse fâché il  
 ne l'est pas.

[13, 14] She was *quite* Elle fut *toute* épouvantée.  
 frightened.

She is *entirely* retired. Elle est *toute* retirée.

[15] I saw *nothing* more Je n'ai *rien* vu de plus ex-  
 extraordinary. traordinaire.

He applies himself to *no-* Il ne s'applique à *rien*.  
*thing*.

*Nothing* is more surprising. *Rien* n'est plus surprenant.

I do not suspect you of *any* Je ne vous soupçonne de  
*thing*. *rien*.

Is there *any thing* more won- Y a-t-il *rien* de plus admira-  
 derful? ble?

I doubt whether *any thing* Je doute que *rien* soit plus  
 is more useful. utile.

[16] *Many* are not of your *Plusieurs* ne sont pas de vo-  
 opinion. tre opinion.

*Many* are of this opinion. *Plusieurs* sont de ce senti-  
 ment. [sieurs.

It is the lot of *many*.

C'est le partage de *plu-*

It is the vice of *many*.

C'est le défaut de *plusieurs*.

She told it to *many*.

Elle l'a dit à *plusieurs*.

[17] Have you read the Avez-vous lu le livre? en  
 book? will you have *an-* voulez-vous *un autre*?  
*other*?

If you do not like that pen, Si vous n'aimez pas cette  
 I shall give you *another*. plume, je vous en don-  
 nerai *une autre*.

*Another* would be more *Un autre* serait plus recon-  
 grateful. noissant.

*Another* would have marri- *Une autre* l'aurait épousé.  
 ed him.

*Another* would have been de- *Un autre* aurait été trompé.  
 ceived.

I gave it to *another*.

Je l'ai donné à *un autre*.

I know *neither* of them.

Je ne connais ni l'un ni  
 l'*autre*.

- Neither of them* spoke to him. *Ni l'un ni l'autre* ne lui a parlé, ou, ils ne lui ont parlé, *ni l'un ni l'autre*.
- Neither of them* does study. *Ni l'un ni l'autre* n'étudie ; ou, ils n'étudient, *ni l'un ni l'autre*.
- They* hate *one another*. Ils se haïssent *l'un l'autre*.
- We* know *one another*. Nous nous connaissons *l'un l'autre*.
- They* cheat *one another*. Ils se trompent *l'un l'autre*.
- They* mistrust *one another*. Ils se méfient *l'un de l'autre*.
- It* is uncommon for two authors to speak well of *one another*. Il est rare à deux auteurs de dire du bien *l'un de l'autre*.
- We* trust *one another*. Nous nous fions *l'un à l'autre*.
- You* wrong *one another*. Vous vous faites du tort *l'un à l'autre*.
- Let us* not hurt *one another*. Ne nous nuisons pas *l'un à l'autre*.
- Each of them* are good. *L'un et l'autre* sont bons.
- Both* are bad. *L'un et l'autre* sont mauvais.
- Both* shall be punished. Ils seront punis *l'un & l'autre*.
- Each of them* shall be rewarded. Ils seront récompensés *l'un & l'autre*.
- I* do not care for *either*. Je ne me soucie ni de *l'un* ni de *l'autre*.
- She* complains of *both*. Elle se plaint de *l'un & de l'autre*.
- He* has been cheated by *both*. Il a été trompé par *l'un & par l'autre*.
- I* trust to *both*. Je me fie à *l'un & à l'autre*.
- Give* to *both*. Donnez à *l'un & à l'autre*.
- She* speaks to *both*. Elle parle à *l'un & à l'autre*.
- [19] *Though* you pretend to be ever so bold. *Quelque* hardi que vous affectiez d'être.
- Though* he be ever so rich, he is very covetous. *Quelque* riche qu'il soit, il est fort avare.
- Whatever* happy talents a man may have, he ought to cultivate them. *Quelques* heureux talens qu'un homme puisse avoir, il faut qu'il les cultive.

*However* far I may be from you, I shall not forget you. *Quelque éloigné que je sois de vous, je ne vous oublierai pas.*

*However* rich you saw them, they are now very poor. *Quelque riches que vous les ayez-vus, ils sont à présent fort pauvres.*

*However* cunning they appear, they are sometimes deceived. *Quelque rusés qu'ils paraissent, ils sont quelque fois trompés.*

*Though* they pretend to *ever* so much honesty, they sometimes cheat. *Quelque honnêtes qu'ils prétendent être, ils trompent quelquefois.*

*Whatever* friends he may have, he will never succeed. *Quelques amis qu'il ait, il ne réussira jamais.*

*Whatever* small rewards you may give him, he will be grateful for them. *Quelques petites récompenses que vous lui donniez, il en sera reconnaissant.*

*Whatever* riches you have. *Quelques richesses que vous ayez.*

Send me some news, *what-ever* it may be. *Envoyez moi des nouvelles, quelles qu'elles soient.*

He shall be punished *whoso-ever* he may be. *Il sera puni, quel qu'il soit.*

[20] *Whoever* you may be, they will render you justice. *Quel que vous soyez, on vous rendra justice.*

*Whatever* his sister may be, I will never marry her. *Quelle que soit sa sœur, je ne l'épouserai jamais.*

*Whatever* her sisters may be, they are not so lovely as she is. *Quelles que soient ses sœurs, elles ne sont pas si aimables qu'elle.*

*Whatever* these conditions may be, I will never submit to them. *Quelles que soient ces conditions, je ne m'y soumettrai jamais.*

*Whatever* these goods are, send them to me. *Quelles que soient ces marchandises, envoyez-les-moi.*

Do not rely upon the promises of men, *whatever* they may be. *Ne vous fiez pas aux promesses des hommes, quelles qu'elles soient.*

*He will not hear of any ac-* *Il ne veut entendre parler*

commodations, <i>whatever</i>	d'aucun accommodement,
they may be.	<i>quel qu'il puisse être.</i>
I do not care for him <i>whoever</i>	Je ne me soucie pas de lui
he may be.	<i>quel qu'il soit.</i>
[21] Is <i>any body</i> come ?	<i>Quelqu'un</i> est-il venu ?
<i>Somebody</i> told it you.	<i>Quelqu'un</i> vous l'a dit.
Did <i>any body</i> speak to him	<i>Quelqu'un</i> lui-a-t-il parlé ?
or to her ?	
Did you see <i>any body</i> there ?	Y avez vous vu <i>quelqu'un</i> ?
She knows it from <i>somebody</i> .	Elle le sait de <i>quelqu'un</i> .
He took it from <i>somebody</i> .	Il l'a pris de <i>quelqu'un</i> .
She mistrusts <i>somebody</i> .	Elle se méfie de <i>quelqu'un</i> .
Give this to <i>somebody</i> .	Donnez cela à <i>quelqu'un</i> .
They spoke to <i>somebody</i> .	Ils ont parlé à <i>quelqu'un</i> .
He wrote to <i>somebody</i> .	Il a écrit à <i>quelqu'un</i> .
<i>Some people</i> say.	<i>Quelques-uns</i> disent.
<i>Some</i> believe.	<i>Quelques-uns</i> croient.
I have this news from <i>some</i>	Je tiens cette nouvelle de
<i>persons</i> .	<i>quelques personnes</i> .
I told this news to <i>somebody</i> .	J'ai dit cette nouvelle à <i>quel-</i>
	<i>ques personnes</i> .
[22] <i>Some</i> of the prisoners	<i>Quelques-uns</i> des prisonniers
made their escape.	se sont évadés.
I know it from <i>some</i> of those	Je le sais de <i>quelques-uns</i> de
who were present.	ceux qui étaient présents.
He has given some bread to	Il a donné du pain à <i>quel-</i>
<i>some</i> of those who were	<i>ques-uns</i> de ceux qui en
in need of it.	avaient besoin.
<i>Some</i> of the robbers have	<i>Quelques-uns</i> des voleurs ont
been taken.	été pris.
<i>Some</i> of them will be hang-	<i>Quelques-uns</i> d'eux seront
ed.	pendus.
Do you know any of those	Connaissez-vous <i>quelques-</i>
ladies ?	<i>unes</i> de ces dames ?
I know <i>some</i> of them.	J'en connais <i>quelques-unes</i> .
Will you have <i>any</i> of these	Voulez-vous <i>quelques-unes</i>
oranges ?	de ces oranges ?
Give me <i>some</i> .	Donnez-m'en <i>quelques-unes</i> .
Buy <i>some</i> of those apples.	Achetez <i>quelques-unes</i> de ces
	pommes.
Will you taste <i>any</i> of them ?	En voulez-vous goûter <i>quel-</i>
	<i>ques-unes</i> ?

[22] *Whatever* may happen, *Quoi qu'il puisse arriver, il*  
 he is always the same. *est toujours le même.*

*Whatever* you say, it shall *Quoi que vous disiez, il en*  
 be so. *sera ainsi.*

*Whatever* he may undertake, *Quoi qu'il puisse entrepren-*  
 he will never succeed. *dre, il ne réussira jamais.*

I know *whatever* he is able *Je sais tout ce qu'il peut faire.*  
 to do.

Do *whatever* you please. *Faites tout ce que vous vou-*  
*drez.*

I do not care for *whatever* *Je ne me soucie pas de tout*  
 he may do. *ce qu'il peut faire.*

Take *whatever* you like best. *Prenez tout ce que vous*  
*aimez le mieux.*

I am ready for *whatever* you *Je suis prêt à tout ce que*  
 please. *vous voudrez.*

She applies herself *to every* *Elle s'applique à tout ce qui*  
*thing* that may be useful *peut lui être utile.*  
 to her.

*Any thing* he writes to you, *Quoi que ce soit qu'il vous*  
 tell it me. *écrive, dites-le-moi.*

Do not talk of *any thing*. *Ne parlez de quoi que ce soit.*

He succeeds in *whatever* he *Il réussit à quoi que ce soit*  
 applies himself to. *qu'il s'applique.*

[24] They will tell him the *On lui dira la même chose,*  
 same thing, *to whomsoever* *à qui que ce soit qu'il s'a-*  
 he may address himself. *dresse.*

He does not care for *any* *Il ne se soucie de qui que ce*  
*person whatsoever.* *soit.*

I saw *nobody at all*. *Je n'ai vu qui que ce soit.*

He knows *nobody at all*. *Il ne connaît qui que se soit.*

I spoke to *nobody whatever*. *Je n'ai parlé à qui que ce*  
*soit.*

Do not talk to *any body*. *Ne parlez à qui que se soit.*

[25] *Whosoever* he be who *Qui que se soit qui vous par-*  
 speaks to you, give him *le, répondez-lui.*  
 an answer.

*Whosoever* he be, he is in the *Qui que se soit, il a tort.*  
 wrong.

*Whosoever* speaks English, *Quiconque parlera Anglais,*  
*shall be fined.* *sera mis à l'amende.*

*Whosoever* knows not his *Quiconque ne saura pas*  
*lesson shall be marked.* *leçon, sera marqué.*

each of them to his home ; les communes se retirèrent *chacun* chez soi.

N. B. Custom does not allow to say *un chacun*, instead of *chacun*.

7. *Personne* signifies nobody, has no plural, is always of the masculine gender, and attended by the particle *ne* before the verb : as, nobody saw it, *personne ne l'a vu*.

8. Obs. When *personne* signifies any body, and is not preceded by an adverb of denial ; such as, not, never, &c. the particle *ne*, must be omitted ; as, did ever any body find the philosopher's stone ? *personne a-t-il jamais trouvé la pierre philosophale* ? This way of speaking insinuates that you do not believe the thing concerning which you inquire. Take notice not to confound this pronoun with the noun substantive : a person, *une personne*, the person, *la personne*, which is always feminine.

9. *Tout* has many significations ; it sometimes signifies all, every, or the whole. When it is joined to a substantive, it requires the definite article before the following noun, notwithstanding its having before it *de* or *à* : as, the whole house, *toute la maison* ; of the whole house, *de toute la maison* ; to the whole house, *à toute la maison*.

10. The pronoun *tout*, used by itself, is always put in the masculine singular : as, every thing almost is uncertain in the world, *presque tout est incertain dans le monde*. Sometimes it has the signification of *chaque* ; as, every day, *tous les jours* ; every moment, *à tout moment*, &c. But we say, *à chaque instant*, *à chaque minute*, every instant, every minute.

11. Obs. *Tout* sometimes signifies although, followed by a word denoting the quality, office, dignity, trade, calling, circumstances, &c. of the subject ; in such a case, the word denoting such a quality, &c. which is placed after the verb in English, must be placed in French immediately after *tout* and the word denoting such quality, must be followed by *que* ; as, though he be learned, he mistakes sometimes ; *tout savant qu'il est, il se trompe quelquefois*. When *tout* is rendered by *bien que*, or *quoique*, the verb must be put in the subjunctive ; as, *bien qu'il, or quoiqu'il soit savant, &c.*

12. Obs. When the word which is after the verb does not denote the quality of the subject, then, for all, or although,

*whatever* may happen, *Quoi qu'il puisse arriver, il*  
always the same. *est toujours le même.*

*For you say, it shall* *Quoi que vous disiez, il en*  
*sera ainsi.*

*For he may undertake, Quoi qu'il puisse entrepren-*  
*It never succeed. dre, il ne réussira jamais.*

*Whatever he is able* *Je sais tout ce qu'il peut faire.*

*Whatever you please.* *Faites tout ce que vous vou-*  
*drez.*

*I care for whatever* *Je ne me soucie pas de tout*  
*you do. ce qu'il peut faire.*

*Whatever you like best.* *Prenez tout ce que vous*  
*aimez le mieux.*

*I am ready for whatever you* *Je suis prêt à tout ce que*  
*you want. vous voudrez.*

*She applies herself to every* *Elle s'applique à tout ce qui*  
*that may be useful* *peut lui être utile.*

*What he writes to you,* *Quoi que ce soit qu'il vous*  
*concerns me. écrive, dites-le-moi.*

*He talks of any thing.* *Ne parlez de quoi que ce soit.*  
*He succeeds in whatever he* *Il réussit à quoi que ce soit*  
*does for himself to. qu'il s'applique.*

*They will tell him the* *On lui dira la même chose,*  
*thing, to whomsoever* *à qui que ce soit qu'il s'a-*  
*he addresses himself. dresse.*

*I do not care for any* *Il ne se soucie de qui que ce*  
*whatsoever. soit.*

*I care for nobody at all.* *J'en ai vu qui que ce soit.*

*He knows nobody at all* *Il ne connaît qui que se soit.*  
*He has never talked to* *J'en ai parlé à qui que ce*  
*body. soit.*

*He talks to nobody.* *Il ne parle à qui que se soit.*  
*He answers nobody.* *Il ne répond à qui que se soit qui vous par-*  
*le. répondez-lui.*

*He is wrong.* *Il a tort.*

*Whoever speaks* *Anglais,*  
*shall be put to the*  
*amend.*

*Whoever speaks*  
*shall be put to the*  
*amend.*



are put after, the personal pronoun goes always before the verb, though not expressed in English; and, when they are before the verb the personal pronoun is omitted, though expressed in English; as, they are both in the wrong, *or* both are in the wrong, *ils ont tort l'un et l'autre, or l'un et l'autre ont tort.*

18. *Quelque*, some, signifies in the singular, that the object is taken indeterminately; as, he is always reading some good book, *il lit toujours quelque bon livre.* In the plural, it expresses an indeterminate number of objects; as, he is inclined to some vices, *il est adonné à quelques vices.*

19. Obs. Sometimes *quelque* signifies not the indeterminate number, but the indeterminate quality or quantity of things, and answers the English expressions, whatever, whatsoever, although, though, ever so much, &c. as, although they are learned, *quelque savans qu'ils soient.* *Quelque*, taken in this sense, has no plural before adjectives, unless they be immediately followed by their substantive; as, though they seem ever so rich, *quelque riches qu'ils paraissent*; though he has done ever so fine actions, *quelques belles actions qu'il ait faites.* Hence it appears how much an author is mistaken who says, that *quelque* can never happen to come before an adjective but with être.

Observe, that *quelque* in this case is always followed by *que*, or *qui*, which governs the following verb in the subjunctive mood.

20. Obs. When whatever, &c. signifying *quelque* in French, is followed immediately by a verb, or by a first case of a personal pronoun, it must be separated into two words, and then *quel* has both numbers and genders, and *que* or *qui* is not repeated in the following part of the sentence; as, whatever his intentions are, *quelles que soient ses intentions*; whatever I am, *quelque je sois*; whatever they may be, (speaking of women,) *quelques qu'elles puissent être.*

21. *Quelqu'un* in the sense of somebody, or any body, is used in all its cases, in the singular masculine only: as, somebody has told it to me; *quelqu'un me l'a dit.* I know it from somebody, *je le sais de quelqu'un*; I have given it to somebody, *je l'ai donné à quelqu'un.* However *quelques-uns*, is used as the nominative of the verb; as, some persons have said it; *quelques-uns l'ont dit.* In the other cases, we make use of *quelques personnes*, and not *quelques-uns.*

## SECTION VII.

*Supplying Pronouns, le, en, y.*

1. *It, or so*, are sometimes rendered by *le* : as, give it to me ; *donnez-le-moi* ; I shall give it to you, *je vous le donnerai*.

2. *Of, from, with, by, about, &c. him, her, it, them, some, any, thence, from thence, &c.* by *en*.

3. *To it, there, therein, in it, in them, about it, about them, &c.* by *y* : as, do not speak of it to me, *ne m'en parlez-pas* : I will not be against it, *je ne m'y opposerai pas*. These pronouns are called supplying, because they stand not only for one preceding word, but sometimes for whole sentences, and are chiefly used instead of the pronouns, *lui, elle ; eux, elles*.

4. *Le* and *en* are applied either to persons or things, and *y* to things only ; except in a few instances, and in an answer to a question ; as, do you think of me ? Yes, I do ; *Pensez-vous à moi ? Oui, j'y pense*.

5. *Le* put after *ce*, when we speak of things, is declinable : as, are these your horses ? Yes, they are : *sont-ce là vos chevaux ? Oui, ce les sont*. I say when we speak of things ; because when we speak of persons, we make use of the personal pronouns ; as, are these your brothers ? Yes, they are ; *sont celà vos frères ? Oui, ce sont eux*, and not *ce les sont*.

It is the opinion of several that *le* is declinable after an adjective, in the feminine singular only, in the following and such like expressions spoken by women ; I was frightened, and I am so still : *je fus effrayée & je la suis encore* : of others, that it would be more proper to say, & *je le suis encore*. *Vaugelas*, the Abbé *Girard*, *Restaut*, the FRENCH ACADEMY, &c. are for the last ; so that there can be no doubt.

An author, in a book not long since printed, saying that where *le* supplies the place of a substantive, it agrees with it in gender and number, mistakes when he gives this instance, which is quite out of his rule : could you act in the place of that physician ? Yes, I could : *pourriez vous remplir la place de ce médecin ? Oui, je le pourrais*. Every one may see, at the first view, that *le* has no relation to *médecin*, taken separately, but

has a plural :\* sometimes it answers to *even* in English ; as, *even* this book, *ce livre même*.

27. *Je ne sais qui*, I do not know who, is used in all its cases in the singular only for persons. *Je ne sais quoi*, I do not know what, is used in all its cases for things only in the singular. *Je ne sais quel*, is used in all its numbers, cases, and genders, speaking of persons or things, and is always followed by a substantive.

28. One, people, men, a body, &c. are sometimes rendered by *on* ; as, they, or people, talk, *on parle* : may a body know ? *peut-on savoir* ?

Sometimes *on* signifies *it* : in this case, the verb, which is in English in the passive voice, must be changed in French into the active ; as, it is hoped, *on espère* ; it was said, *on disait*. Moreover, as the passive voice is seldom used in French, in such a case the noun or pronoun, which is the subject of the passive verb in English, must be made the object of the verb in French, and the passive verb must be changed into the active, and put in the same tense as in English : as, great rejoicings have been made this week ; *on a fait* cette semaine de grandes réjouissances, instead of *de grandes réjouissances ont été faites*.

---

*Indeterminate Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| [1] <i>Nobody</i> spoke to him.                    | <i>Aucun, pas un, ou nul ne lui a parlé.</i>               |
| <i>Nobody</i> knows it.                            | <i>Aucun, pas un, ou nul ne le sait.</i>                   |
| <i>Nobody</i> has seen it.                         | <i>Aucun, pas un, ou nul ne l'a vu.</i>                    |
| <i>Nobody</i> can boast of it.                     | <i>Aucun, pas un, ou nul ne peut s'en vanter.</i>          |
| Of all the grammars, I am a slave to <i>none</i> . | <i>De toutes les grammaires, je ne m'attache à aucune.</i> |
| Did <i>any body</i> ask for me ?                   | <i>Personne ne m'a-t-il demandé ?</i>                      |
| I never saw any of them.                           | <i>Je n'en ai jamais vu un, ou aucun, and not nul.</i>     |

\* See rule 22, of the personal pronouns, p. 178.

Did you ever see *any one* who...? En avez vous jamais vu un au *aucun qui...*? and not *nul*.

[2] Is there *any one* who can blame me? Y en a-t-il *aucun* qui puisse me blâmer?

Is there *any one* who has seen it? Y en a-t-il *aucun*, qui l'ait vu?

[3] I have not read *any* of the books you lent me. Je n'ai lu *aucun* des livres que vous m'avez prêtés.

I did not see *any* of the ladies you spoke of. Je n'ai vu *aucune* des dames dont vous avez parlé.

I know *none* of those merchants. Je ne connais *aucun* de ces commerçans.

I saw *none* of them. Je n'ai vu *aucun* d'eux, *for the masculine: aucune d'elles, for the feminine.*

[4] He has *no* rest. Il n'a *nul* repos.—*aucun* repos.

She has *no* uneasiness of mind. Elle n'a *nulle*, ou *aucune*, inquiétude d'esprit.

I have *no* interest in it. Je n'ai *nul*, ou *aucun*, intérêt en cela.

[5] The sentence was annulled. La sentence fut déclarée *nulle*.

All their privileges are annulled. Tous leurs privilèges sont *annulés*.

[6] *Every one* lives after his own manner. *Chacun* vit à sa mode.

*All men* are faulty. *Chacun* fait des fautes.

*All men* desire to be happy. *Chacun* veut être *heureux*.

*Every one* of them was surprised. *Chacun* d'eux fut surpris, *for the masculine: chacune d'elles fut surprise, for the feminine.*

I know two ladies; they have, *each of them*, two thousand pounds a year. Je connais deux demoiselles; elles ont *chacune* deux mille livres sterling de rente.

The two clerks have, *each of them*, written four letters. Les deux commis ont écrit *chacun* quatre lettres.

The commons withdrew, *each of them*, to his own home. Les communes se retirèrent *chacun* chez soi.

<i>Each</i> of the shires send two representatives to Parliament.	Les provinces envoient <i>chacune</i> deux députés au Parlement.
Put the books in order, and put <i>every one</i> in its place.	Arrangez les livres, & les mettez <i>chacun</i> à sa place.
[7] <i>Nobody</i> talks of it.	<i>Personne</i> n'en parle.
<i>Nobody</i> has seen you.	<i>Personne</i> ne vous a vu.
<i>Nobody</i> has guessed the meaning of the riddle.	<i>Personne</i> n'a deviné l'énigme.
<i>Nobody</i> knows it.	<i>Personne</i> ne le sait.
<i>Nobody</i> suspected her.	<i>Personne</i> ne la soupçonnait.
She told it to <i>nobody</i> .	Elle ne l'a dit à <i>personne</i> .
He mistrusts <i>nobody</i> .	Il ne se méfie de <i>personne</i> .
She trusts <i>nobody</i> .	Elle ne se fie à <i>personne</i> .
[8] Did ever <i>any body</i> know all the properties of matter?	<i>Personne</i> a-t-il jamais connu toutes les propriétés de la matière?
Did ever <i>any body</i> seriously doubt of the existence of God?	<i>Personne</i> a-t-il jamais douté sérieusement de l'existence de Dieu?
Did ever <i>any man</i> comprehend the mysteries of religion?	<i>Personne</i> a-t-il jamais compris les mystères de la religion?
[9, 10] <i>All</i> is lost.	<i>Tout</i> est perdu.
<i>All</i> is quiet now.	<i>Tout</i> est tranquille à présent.
<i>Every thing</i> in nature is liable to change.	<i>Tout</i> dans la nature est sujet au changement.
He mistrusts <i>every thing</i> .	Il se méfie de <i>tout</i> .
She is frightened at <i>every shadow</i> .	Elle est épouvanté de <i>tout</i> .
He is capable of <i>every thing</i> .	Il est capable de <i>tout</i> .
Can one be sure of <i>every thing</i> ?	Peut-on être sûr de <i>tout</i> ?
I am compliant to <i>every thing</i> you please.	Je suis prêt à <i>tout</i> ce qu'il vous plaira.
He is fit for <i>any thing</i> .	Il est propre à <i>tout</i> .
They are against <i>every thing</i> .	Ils s'opposent à <i>tout</i> .
I see her and speak to her <i>every day</i> .	Je la vois, & lui parle <i>tous</i> les jours.
<i>She goes</i> to the play almost <i>every evening</i> .	Elle va à la comédie presque <i>tous</i> les soirs.
<i>He flies in a passion every moment</i> .	Il s'emporte à <i>tout</i> moment.

[11, 12] *Though* he be rich, *Tout* riche *qu'il* est, ou *quoi-*  
 he is not more contented. *qu'il* soit riche, il n'en est  
 pas plus content.

*Although* he seems angry, he *Tout* fâché *qu'il* paraît, ou  
 is not really so. *quoiqu'il* paraisse fâché il  
 ne l'est pas.

[13, 14] She was *quite* Elle fut *toute* épouvantée.  
 frightened.

She is *entirely* retired. Elle est *toute* retirée.

[15] I saw *nothing* more Je n'ai *rien* vu de plus ex-  
 extraordinary. traordinaire.

He applies himself to *no-* Il ne s'applique à *rien*.  
*thing*.

*Nothing* is more surprising. *Rien* n'est plus surprenant.

I do not suspect you of *any* Je ne vous soupçonne de  
*thing*. *rien*.

Is there *any thing* more won- Y a-t-il *rien* de plus admira-  
 derful? ble?

I doubt whether *any thing* Je doute que *rien* soit plus  
 is more useful. utile.

[16] *Many* are not of your *Plusieurs* ne sont pas de vo-  
 opinion. tre opinion.

*Many* are of this opinion. *Plusieurs* sont de ce senti-  
 ment. [sieurs.

It is the lot of *many*. C'est le partage de *plu-*

It is the vice of *many*. C'est le défaut de *plusieurs*.

She told it to *many*. Elle l'a dit à *plusieurs*.

[17] Have you read the Avez-vous lu le livre? en  
 book? will you have *an-* voulez-vous *un autre*?  
*other*?

If you do not like that pen, Si vous n'aimez pas cette  
 I shall give you *another*. plume, je vous en don-  
 nerai *une autre*.

*Another* would be more *Un autre* serait plus recon-  
 grateful. noissant.

*Another* would have marri- *Une autre* l'aurait épousé.  
 ed him.

*Another* would have been de- *Un autre* aurait été trompé.  
 ceived.

I gave it to *another*. Je l'ai donné à *un autre*.

I know *neither* of them. Je ne connais ni l'un ni  
 l'autre.

- Neither of them spoke to him.* *Ni l'un ni l'autre ne lui a parlé, ou, ils ne lui ont parlé, ni l'un ni l'autre.*
- Neither of them does study.* *Ni l'un ni l'autre n'étudie ; ou, ils n'étudient, ni l'un ni l'autre.*
- They hate one another.* *Ils se haïssent l'un l'autre.*
- We know one another.* *Nous nous connaissons l'un l'autre.*
- They cheat one another.* *Ils se trompent l'un l'autre.*
- They mistrust one another.* *Ils se méfient l'un de l'autre.*
- It is uncommon for two authors to speak well of one another.* *Il est rare à deux auteurs de dire du bien l'un de l'autre.*
- We trust one another.* *Nous nous fions l'un à l'autre*
- You wrong one another.* *Vous vous faites du tort l'un à l'autre.*
- Let us not hurt one another.* *Ne nous nuisons pas l'un à l'autre.*
- Each of them are good.* *L'un et l'autre sont bons.*
- Both are bad.* *L'un et l'autre sont mauvais.*
- Both shall be punished.* *Ils seront punis l'un & l'autre.*
- Each of them shall be rewarded.* *Ils seront récompensés l'un & l'autre.*
- I do not care for either.* *Je ne me soucie ni de l'un ni de l'autre.*
- She complains of both.* *Elle se plaint de l'un & de l'autre.*
- He has been cheated by both.* *Il a été trompé par l'un & par l'autre.*
- I trust to both.* *Je me fie à l'un & à l'autre.*
- Give to both.* *Donnez à l'un & à l'autre.*
- She speaks to both.* *Elle parle à l'un & à l'autre.*
- [19] Though you pretend to be ever so bold.* *Quelque hardi que vous affectiez d'être.*
- Though he be ever so rich, he is very covetous.* *Quelque riche qu'il soit, il est fort avare.*
- Whatever happy talents a man may have, he ought to cultivate them.* *Quelques heureux talens qu'un homme puisse avoir, il faut qu'il les cultive.*

*However far I may be from you, I shall not forget you.* *Quelque éloigné que je sois de vous, je ne vous oublierai pas.*

*However rich you saw them, they are now very poor.* *Quelque riches que vous les ayez-vus, ils sont à présent fort pauvres.*

*However cunning they appear, they are sometimes deceived.* *Quelque rusés qu'ils paraissent, ils sont quelque fois trompés.*

*Though they pretend to ever so much honesty, they sometimes cheat.* *Quelque honnêtes qu'ils prétendent être, ils trompent quelquefois.*

*Whatever friends he may have, he will never succeed.* *Quelques amis qu'il ait, il ne réussira jamais.*

*Whatever small rewards you may give him, he will be grateful for them.* *Quelques petites récompenses que vous lui donniez, il en sera reconnaissant.*

*Whatever riches you have.* *Quelques richesses que vous ayez.*

*Send me some news, whatever it may be.* *Envoyez moi des nouvelles, quelles qu'elles soient.*

*He shall be punished whosoever he may be.* *Il sera puni, quel qu'il soit.*

*[20] Whoever you may be, they will render you justice.* *Quel que vous soyez, on vous rendra justice.*

*Whatever his sister may be, I will never marry her.* *Quelle que soit sa sœur, je ne l'épouserai jamais.*

*Whatever her sisters may be, they are not so lovely as she is.* *Quelles que soient ses sœurs, elles ne sont pas si aimables qu'elle.*

*Whatever these conditions may be, I will never submit to them.* *Quelles que soient ces conditions, je ne m'y soumettrai jamais.*

*Whatever these goods are, send them to me.* *Quelles que soient ces marchandises, envoyez-les-moi.*

*Do not rely upon the promises of men, whatever they may be.* *Ne vous fiez pas aux promesses des hommes, quelles qu'elles soient.*

*He will not hear of any ac-* *Il ne veut entendre parler*



commodations, <i>whatever</i>	d'aucun accommodement,
they may be.	<i>quel qu'il puisse être.</i>
I do not care for him <i>whoever</i>	Je ne me soucie pas de lui
he may be.	<i>quel qu'il soit.</i>
[21] Is <i>any body</i> come ?	<i>Quelqu'un</i> est-il venu ?
<i>Somebody</i> told it you.	<i>Quelqu'un</i> vous l'a dit.
Did <i>any body</i> speak to him	<i>Quelqu'un</i> lui-a-t-il parlé ?
or to her ?	
Did you see <i>any body</i> there ?	Y avez vous vu <i>quelqu'un</i> ?
She knows it from <i>somebody</i> .	Elle le sait de <i>quelqu'un</i> .
He took it from <i>somebody</i> .	Il l'a pris de <i>quelqu'un</i> .
She mistrusts <i>somebody</i> .	Elle se méfie de <i>quelqu'un</i> .
Give this to <i>somebody</i> .	Donnez cela à <i>quelqu'un</i> .
They spoke to <i>somebody</i> .	Ils ont parlé à <i>quelqu'un</i> .
He wrote to <i>somebody</i> .	Il a écrit à <i>quelqu'un</i> .
<i>Some people</i> say.	<i>Quelques-uns</i> disent.
<i>Some</i> believe.	<i>Quelques-uns</i> croient.
I have this news from <i>some</i>	Je tiens cette nouvelle de
<i>persons</i> .	<i>quelques personnes</i> .
I told this news to <i>somebody</i> .	J'ai dit cette nouvelle à <i>quel-</i>
	<i>ques personnes</i> .
[22] <i>Some</i> of the prisoners	<i>Quelques-uns</i> des prisonniers
made their escape.	se sont évadés.
I know it from <i>some</i> of those	Je le sais de <i>quelques-uns</i> de
who were present.	ceux qui étaient présents.
He has given some bread to	Il a donné du pain à <i>quel-</i>
<i>some</i> of those who were	<i>ques-uns</i> de ceux qui en
in need of it.	avaient besoin.
<i>Some</i> of the robbers have	<i>Quelques-uns</i> des voleurs ont
been taken.	été pris.
<i>Some</i> of them will be hang-	<i>Quelques-uns</i> d'eux seront
ed.	pendus.
Do you know any of those	Connaissez-vous <i>quelques-</i>
ladies ?	<i>unes</i> de ces dames ?
I know <i>some</i> of them.	J'en connais <i>quelques-unes</i> .
Will you have <i>any</i> of these	Voulez-vous <i>quelques-unes</i>
oranges ?	de ces oranges ?
Give me <i>some</i> .	Donnez-m'en <i>quelques-unes</i> .
Buy <i>some</i> of those apples.	Achetez <i>quelques-unes</i> de ces
	pommes.
Will you taste <i>any</i> of them ?	En voulez-vous goûter <i>quel-</i>
	<i>ques-unes</i> ?

[22] *Whatever* may happen, *Quoi qu'il puisse arriver, il*  
 he is always the same. *est toujours le même.*

*Whatever* you say, it shall *Quoi que vous disiez, il en*  
 be so. *sera ainsi.*

*Whatever* he may undertake, *Quoi qu'il puisse entrepren-*  
 he will never succeed. *dre, il ne réussira jamais.*

I know *whatever* he is able *Je sais tout ce qu'il peut faire.*  
 to do.

Do *whatever* you please. *Faites tout ce que vous vou-*  
*irez.*

I do not care for *whatever* *Je ne me soucie pas de tout*  
 he may do. *ce qu'il peut faire.*

Take *whatever* you like best. *Prenez tout ce que vous*  
*aimiez le mieux.*

I am ready for *whatever* you *Je suis prêt à tout ce que*  
 please. *vous voudrez.*

She applies herself to *every* *Elle s'applique à tout ce qui*  
*thing* that may be useful *peut lui être utile.*  
 to her.

*Any thing* he writes to you, *Quoi que ce soit qu'il vous*  
 tell it me. *écrive, dites-le-moi.*

Do not talk of *any thing*. *Ne parlez de quoi que ce soit.*

He succeeds in *whatever* he *Il réussit à quoi que ce soit*  
 applies himself to. *qu'il s'applique.*

[24] They will tell him the *On lui dira la même chose,*  
 same thing, to *whomsoever* *à qui que ce soit qu'il s'a-*  
 he may address himself. *dresse.*

He does not care for *any* *Il ne se soucie de qui que ce*  
*person whatsoever.* *soit.*

I saw *nobody* at all. *Je n'ai vu qui que ce soit.*

He knows *nobody* at all. *Il ne connaît qui que se soit.*

I spoke to *nobody whatever.* *Je n'ai parlé à qui que ce*  
*soit.*

Do not talk to *any body*. *Ne parlez à qui que se soit.*

[25] *Whosoever* he be who *Qui que se soit qui vous par-*  
 speaks to you, give him *le, répondez-lui.*  
 an answer.

*Whosoever* he be, he is in the *Qui que se soit, il a tort.*  
 wrong.

*Whosoever* speaks English, *Quiconque parlera Anglais,*  
 shall be fined. *sera mis à l'amende.*

*Whosoever* knows not his *Quiconque ne saura pas*  
 lesson shall be marked. *leçon, sera marqué.*

[26] The same author has *Le même auteur a fait d'autres livres.*  
made other books.

I shall speak to him or to her *Je lui parlerai moi-même.*  
*myself.*

Write your letter yourself. *Ecrivez votre lettre vous-même.*

They wrong themselves. *Ils se font tort à eux mêmes.*

[28] *People* say, *people* talk, *On* dit, *on* parle, *on* croit,  
*people* believe, *people* fancy, *on* s'imagine, *on* ne sait  
*people* do not know, pas, &c.  
&c.

May *one* know ?

Peut-on savoir ?

Has *one* spoken to you ?

Vous a-t-on parlé ?

May *any one* ask you ?

Peut-on vous demander ?

Has *any one* seen you ?

Vous a-t-on vu ?

May *one* go along this street ?

Peut-on passer par cette rue ?

May *one* see the Queen's apartments ?

Peut-on voir les appartemens de la Reine ?

*It is* said, *it is* reported, *it is* assured, *it is* doubted, *it has been* proposed, *it has been* resolved, &c.

*On* dit, *on* rapporte, *on* assure, *on* doute, *on* a proposé, *on* a résolu, &c.

The letters *have not yet been* received.

*On n'a pas* encore reçu les lettres.

Great preparations *have been* made for the reception of...

*On a fait* de grands préparatifs pour la réception de....

Great rejoicings *have been* made at St. James on the Queen's birth-day.

*On a fait* de grandes réjouissances à St. James, le jour de la naissance de la Reine.

Great news *have been* received by the last mail.

*On a reçu* de grandes nouvelles par l'ordinaire dernier.

A courier has been despatched to the French Court.

*On a dépêché* un courrier à la cour de France.

*It is* believed that war *will be* declared against France.

*On* croit qu'*on* déclarera la guerre à la France.

*It was* said so, but contrary news *has been* received this week.

*On* le disait, mais *on a* reçu des nouvelles contraires cette semaine-ci.

## SECTION VII.

*Supplying Pronouns, le, en, y.*

1. *It*, or *so*, are sometimes rendered by *le* : as, give it to me ; *donnez-le-moi* ; I shall give it to you, *je vous le donnerai*.

2. *Of*, *from*, *with*, *by*, *about*, &c. *him*, *her*, *it*, *them*, *some*, *any*, *thence*, *from thence*, &c. by *en*.

3. *To it*, *there*, *therein*, *in it*, *in them*, *about it*, *about them*, &c. by *y* : as, do not speak of it to me, *ne m'en parlez-pas* : I will not be against it, *je ne m'y opposerai pas*. These pronouns are called supplying, because they stand not only for one preceding word, but sometimes for whole sentences, and are chiefly used instead of the pronouns, *lui*, *elle* ; *eux*, *elles*.

4. *Le* and *en* are applied either to persons or things, and *y* to things only ; except in a few instances, and in an answer to a question ; as, do you think of me ? Yes, I do ; *Pensez-vous à moi ? Oui, j'y pense*.

5. *Le* put after *ce*, when we speak of things, is declinable : as, are these your horses ? Yes, they are : *sont-ce là vos chevaux ? Oui, ce les sont*. I say when we speak of things ; because when we speak of persons, we make use of the personal pronouns ; as, are these your brothers ? Yes, they are ; *sont celà vos frères ? Oui, ce sont eux*, and not *ce les sont*.

It is the opinion of several that *le* is declinable after an adjective, in the feminine singular only, in the following and such like expressions spoken by women ; I was frightened, and I am so still : *je fus effrayée & je la suis encore* : of others, that it would be more proper to say, & *je le suis encore*. *Vaugelas*, the Abbé *Girard*, *Restaut*, the FRENCH ACADEMY, &c. are for the last ; so that there can be no doubt.

An author, in a book not long since printed, saying that where *le* supplies the place of a substantive, it agrees with it in gender and number, mistakes when he gives this instance, which is quite out of his rule : could you act in the place of that physician ? Yes, I could : *pourriez vous remplir la place de ce médecin ? Oui, je le pourrais*. Every one may see, at the first view, that *le* has no relation to *médecin*, taken separately, but

to *place*, or rather to the whole sentence ; oui, je pourrais remplir la place de ce médecin.

The best way in such cases would be, to leave out both the verb and the supplying pronoun, and give the following answer in French : as, are you milliners, ladies ? Yes, we are : êtes vous coiffeuses, Mesdemoiselles ? Oui, Monsieur ; oui, Madame ; oui, Mademoiselle, according to the quality or the person you speak to, instead of saying *oui nous les sommes*. This may be done likewise in English, by answering yes, Sir ; yes, Madam. But some grammarians, like Don Quixote, delight in fighting against wind-mills.

*Supplying Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1] Will you give *it* him, or *Le* lui donnerez-vous ?  
her ?

Have you given *it* him, or *Le* lui avez-vous donné ?  
her ?

I have promised *it* him, or *Je le* lui ai promis.  
her.

I have not promised *it* him, *Je ne le* lui ai pas promis.  
or her.

Have you sent *it* to them ? *Le* leur avez-vous envoyé ?

I have not sent *it* to them. *Je ne le* leur ai pas envoyé.

Have you told *it* him, or *Le* lui avez-vous dit ?  
her ?

I have not told *it* him, or her. *Je ne le* lui ai pas dit.

Do not tell *it* him, or her. *Ne le* lui dites pas.

Do you know *it* ? *Le* savez-vous ?

She does not know *it*. *Elle ne le* sait pas.

I do not know *it*. *Je ne le* sais pas.

He told me something, will you know *it* ? *Il m'a dit quelque chose, le*  
voulez-vous savoir ?

Ask *it* him, I will not tell *it* you. *Demandez-le-lui, je ne veux*  
pas vous *le* dire ?

Why will you not tell *it* me ? *Pourquoi ne voulez-vous pas*  
*me le* dire ?

Because he forbade *it* me. *Parce-qu'il me l'a défendu.*  
Tell *it* me. *Dites-le-moi.*

*I shall never tell it you.* *Je ne vous le dirai jamais.*  
*Do you believe it ?* *Le croyez-vous ?*

I do not believe <i>it</i> .	Je ne <i>le</i> crois pas.
She believes <i>it</i> .	Elle <i>le</i> croit.
[2] Give me <i>some</i> .	Donnez m' <i>en</i> .
Do not give <i>any</i> to him, or to her.	Ne lui <i>en</i> donnez pas.
Will you give <i>any</i> to him, or to her?	Lui <i>en</i> donnerez-vous?
Do not speak of <i>it</i> to him, or to her?	Ne lui <i>en</i> parlez pas.
Did you talk of <i>it</i> to him, or to her?	Lui <i>en</i> avez-vous parlé?
I did not say a word of <i>it</i> .	Je n' <i>en</i> ai pas dit le mot.
Will you have <i>any</i> ?	<i>En</i> voulez-vous?
Take <i>some</i> .	Prenez <i>en</i> .
Give <i>some</i> to him, or to her.	Donnez-lui <i>en</i> .
Will you be satisfied with <i>it</i> ?	<i>En</i> serez-vous content?
I will not meddle with <i>it</i> .	Je ne veux pas m' <i>en</i> mêler.
I am sorry for <i>it</i> .	J' <i>en</i> suis fâché.
I am very glad of <i>it</i> .	J' <i>en</i> suis bien aise.
She wonders at <i>it</i> .	Elle s' <i>en</i> étonne.
She complains of <i>it</i> .	Elle s' <i>en</i> plaint.
He is overjoyed at <i>it</i> .	Il s' <i>en</i> réjouit.
I will not hear any more about <i>it</i> .	Je n' <i>en</i> veux plus entendre parler.
What do you say to <i>it</i> ?	Qu' <i>en</i> dites-vous?
I wonder at <i>it</i> .	J' <i>en</i> suis surpris.
She shall repent <i>it</i> .	Elle s' <i>en</i> repentira.
I am sure of <i>it</i> .	J' <i>en</i> suis sûr.
Have you money? Yes, I have <i>some</i> .	Avez-vous de l'argent? Oui, j' <i>en</i> ai.
She has <i>none</i> .	Elle n' <i>en</i> a point.
Will you join with us?	<i>En</i> voulez-vous être?
I come from thence.	J' <i>en</i> viens.
Do you know any thing of <i>it</i> ?	<i>En</i> savez-vous quelque chose?
I know nothing of <i>it</i> .	Je n' <i>en</i> sais rien.
He shall know nothing of <i>it</i> .	Il n' <i>en</i> saura rien.
Have you <i>any</i> ?	<i>En</i> avez-vous?
[3] Have you been there?	Y avez-vous été?
Have you thought of <i>it</i> ?	Y avez-vous pensé?
I have not yet been there.	Je n'y ai pas encore été.
She was forced to <i>it</i> .	Elle y a été forcée.

- Has he consented *to it*? Y a-t-il consenti?  
 I shall never consent *to it*. Je n'y consentirai jamais.  
 They have been against *it*. Ils s'y sont opposés.  
 Do not think of *it* any more. N'y pensez plus.  
 The government have wisely provided *for it*. Le gouvernement y a sagement pourvu.  
 The King will not be against *it*. Le Roi ne s'y opposera pas.
- I am provided *for it*. J'y suis préparé.  
 Will you go *thither*? Y voulez-vous aller?  
 You do not look *to it*. Vous n'y prenez pas garde.  
 Mind *it*. Prenez y garde.  
 I shall mind *it*. J'y prendrai garde.
- [4] I have added many new observations *to it*. J'y ai ajouté plusieurs nouvelles remarques.  
 Do you think of me? Yes, I do. Pensez-vous à moi? Oui, j'y pense.
- [5] Are these your books? Yes, *they* are. Sont-ce là vos livres? Oui, ce *les* sont.  
 Are these your pens? Yes, *they* are. Sont-ce là vos plumes? Oui, ce *les* sont.  
 Are those your father's horses? Yes, *they* are. Sont-ce là les chevaux de votre père? Oui, ce *les* sont.
- Are these your favours? Yes, *they* are. Sont-ce là vos amitiés? Oui, ce *les* sont.  
 Are these your sentiments? Yes, *they* are. Sont-ce là vos sentimens? Oui, ce *les* sont.  
 Are they your reasons? Yes, *they* are. Sont-ce là vos raisons? Oui, ce *les* sont.
- Is that your penknife? Yes, *it* is. Est-ce là votre canif? Oui, ce *l'est*.  
 Are these your sisters? Yes, *they* are. Sont-ce là vos sœurs? Oui, ce sont *elles*.  
 Are these his brothers? Yes, *they* are. Sont-ce là ses frères? Oui, ce sont *eux*.  
 Are these her cousins? Yes, *they* are. Sont-ce là ses cousines? Oui, ce sont *elles*.  
 Are these your brothers? Yes, *they* are. Sont-ce là vos frères? Oui, ce sont *eux*.  
 Is *it* your cousin? Yes, *it* is. Est-ce votre cousin? Oui, c'est *lui*.

[6] I have been sick, and I J'ai été malade, & je *le suis*  
am so still. encore.

Was there ever a girl more Fut-il jamais une fille plus  
happy than I am ? heureuse que je ne suis,  
or rather que moi ?

Is there a girl more dutiful Y a-t-il une fille plus obé-  
than I am ? issante que je ne suis ? or  
rather que moi ?

## CHAPTER IV.

### *Rules and Observations upon the Degrees of Comparison.*

1. Obs. GRAMMARIANS seem to be in a mistake about the degrees of comparison ; for comparison implies a relation to another thing, which the comparison is made with ; whereas, the positive is the adjective in its natural state, without relation to another thing : as, when I say, this house is pretty ; *cette maison est belle*, there is indeed no comparison at all ; however, if by degrees of comparison we mean different manners of expressing the quality of something, there are three : the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

2. When the adjective is compared in an equal, higher, or less degree, it is called comparative, which comparison is made in French by placing before it *plus*, more ; *moins*, less ; *si*, so ; *aussi*, as, &c.

3. *Plus* and *moins* are commonly followed by the particle *que*, and when a verb comes after it, that verb has the negative particle *ne* before it, but it may with propriety be left out : as, he was richer than was believed : *il était plus riche qu'on ne croyait*, or *qu'on croyait*.

Except, 1st, when *que* signifies as ; 2dly, when the following verb is in the infinitive mood or preceded by a conjunction, *ne* must be left out ; as, he is more undisturbed in the country than in town ; *il est plus tranquille à la campagne qu'à la ville*, or *que s'il vivait à la ville*.

The last exception is very nice in practice ; many grammarians leave it out, and even one of them gives false notions contrary to theory and practice. He was



in a N. B. "When *que* signifies *than*, in the comparative degree, the verb which follows takes the negative *ne* before it in French."

4. *Si*, so : *tant*, so much, as much, as many, so many, comparatively used, are always used negatively : as, you are not so rich as he ; *vous n'êtes pas si riche que lui* ; he has not so many friends as you, *il n'a pas tant d'amis que vous*. In other cases, *aussi*, or *autant*, is to be used ; except in an interrogation, where *si* and *tant* may be used either with or without a negation, according to the interrogation, being affirmative or negative.

5. When *plus*, *moins*, *autant*, *tant*, are immediately followed by a substantive, that substantive must be preceded by the preposition *de* : as, more money, *plus d'argent* ; less credit, *moins de crédit* ; so much pain, *autant de peine* ; so many rings, *tant de bagues*.

6. When the verb *avoir*, or *être*, is before *plus*, *moins*, *autant*, &c. and the same verb follows *que*, the second verb *avoir* or *être* is more properly left out in the French, though expressed in the English ; and we are contented with *que* and the pronoun only, or any other noun : as, you have more money than I, or we have *vous avez plus d'argent que je n'en ai*, or *que nous n'en avons* ; Miss A. is as sensible as she is, *Mademoiselle A. est aussi sensée qu'elle*, and not *qu'elle est*. Except when *que* is followed by a conjunction, or by the same verb in the infinitive mood, with a government after it, or a preposition : as, you have more pleasure than if you had great riches ; *vous avez plus de plaisir, qui si vous aviez beaucoup de richesses, or que d'avoir beaucoup de richesses* ; you are more happy than to be married, *vous êtes plus heureux que si vous étiez marié, or que d'être marié*.

7. When *plus* and *moins* are adverbs of quantity, or meet with a noun of number, the word *than* which immediately follows *more* or *less*, is expressed by the preposition *de* : as, he has more than ten guineas ; *il a plus de dix guinées*.

8. When the quality is raised to the highest degree, or depressed to the lowest, it is called superlative.

9. The definite articles, *le*, *la*, &c. are put before *plus*, *moins*, *meilleur*, *pire*, &c. in the superlative degree : and, when the superlative is followed by the noun with which

the comparison is made, this noun must be in the second case : as, he is the best of my friends ; *il est le meilleur de mes amis*.

10. When the superlative is followed by a verb, that verb must be in the subjunctive mood, preceded by *qui*, *dont* or *que* : as, the most happy woman alive : *la femme la plus heureuse qui soit* ; the most happy man that I know, *l'homme le plus heureux que je connaisse*.

11. Sometimes a quality is mentioned in the highest degree without comparison ; and this is done in French by placing adverbs of exaggeration before it : as, very rich, *très riche* ; very polite, *très poli* ; infinitely obliged, *infiniment obligé*.

## EXCEPTIONS.

---

*The following adjectives form their degrees of comparison in this manner.*

POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE,	
M. bon,		meilleur,		le meilleur,	
F. bonne,	<u>good.</u>	meilleure,	<u>better.</u>	le meilleure,	<u>the best.</u>
M. méchant,		plus méchant,		le pire, la pire, or le plus méchant,	
F. méchante,	<u>bad.</u>	plus méchante,	<u>worse.</u>	le pire, la pire, or le plus méchant,	<u>the worst.</u>
M. mauvais,		plus mauvais,		le pire, la pire, or le plus mauvais,	
F. mauvaise,		plus mauvaise,		le plus mauvaise,	
M. petit,		plus petit,		le plus petit, or le plus petit,	
F. petite.	<u>little.</u>	plus petite,	<u>less.</u>	la moindre, le moindre, or le plus petit,	<u>the least.</u>

## A GRAMMAR OF THE

*N. B. Adverbs form their degrees of comparison in the same manner as adjectives, except these following :*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bien, well.	mieux, better.	le mieux, the best.
mal, ill.	pis, or plus mal, worse.	le pis, or le plus mal, the worst.
peu, little, few.	moins, less, fewer.	le moins, the least.

*The Degrees of Comparison exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[2] London is *more* populous    Londres est *plus* peuplé que Paris.

France is larger than Eng-    La France est *plus* étendue  
land, Ireland, and Scot-    que l'Angleterre, l'Irlande  
land.    & l'Ecosse.

The streets of London are    Les rues de Londres sont  
wider than those of Paris.    *plus* larges que celles de Paris.

My snuff box is prettier than    Ma tabatière est *plus* belle  
yours.    que la vôtre.

My books are dearer than    Mes livres sont *plus* chers  
yours.    que les vôtres.

He is idler than his brother.    Il est *plus* paresseux que son frère.

Your father is richer than    Votre père est *plus* riche  
his.    que le sien.

His house is greater than    Sa maison est *plus* grande  
yours.    que la vôtre.

[3] They are *more* forward    Ils sont *plus* avancés que je  
than I thought.    ne croyais, or que je croyais.

He gave me *more* money    Il m'a donné *plus* d'argent  
than I asked for.    que je demandais.\*

You have met with *more* ob-    Vous avez trouvé *plus* d'ob-  
stacles than you thought.    stacles que vous ne pen-  
siez.

I have found it easier than    J'y ai trouvé *plus* de facilité  
I foresaw.    que je ne prévoyais.

They have *more* friends than    Ils ont *plus* d'amis que vous  
you believe.    ne croyez.

He has lost *more* than he    Il a perdu *plus* qu'il n'a  
has won.    gagné.

You have asked for *less* than    Vous avez demandé *moins*  
was your due.    qu'il ne vous étoit dû.

She has worked *more* than    Elle a fait *plus* d'ouvrage  
her task.    qu'on ne lui avait prescrit.

I did not ask for *more* than    Je n'ai pas demandé *plus*  
was my due.    qu'il ne m'étoit dû.

\* In all the following examples you may suppress the negation *ne*.

Have you not undertaken *more* than you are able to perform ? N'avez-vous pas entrepris *plus* que vous ne pouvez exécuter ?

She is happier *than if she* was married. Elle est plus heureuse *que d'être* mariée, ou *que si* elle était mariée.

He is *more* contented with her, than if he had all the gold of Peru. Il est *plus* content avec elle *que s'il* avait tout l'or du Pérou.

I am quieter in my room than *if I* were in company. Je suis *plus* tranquille dans ma chambre *que si j'étais* en compagnie.

You look *more* sickly *than whilst* you were in the country. Vous paraissez *plus* malade *que lorsque* vous étiez à la campagne.

They are *less* troubled in the country *than if* they were in town. Ils sont *moins* dérangés à la campagne *que s'ils* étaient à la ville.

[4] He is not *so* rich as it is said. Il n'est pas *si* riche qu'on le dit.

She is not *so* old as you believe. Elle n'est pas *si* âgée que vous croyez.

I am not *so* idle as my brother. Je ne suis pas *si* paresseux que mon frère.

We are not *so much* surprised as you think. Nous ne sommes pas *si* surpris que vous pensez.

You are not *so* brave as you pretend to be. Vous n'êtes pas *si* braves que vous dites.

They are not *so* learned as they would make us believe. Ils ne sont pas *si* savans qu'ils voudraient nous le faire croire.

They are not *so* proud as to despise your praises. Elles ne sont pas *si* fières que de mépriser vos louanges.

She is not *so* vain as to listen to your flatteries. Elle n'est pas *si* vaine que d'écouter vos flatteries.

I have not won *so much* as I thought. Je n'ai pas *tant* gagné que je pensais.

He has not lost *so much* as you. Il n'a pas *tant* perdu que vous.

[5] She has not *so much* money as you think. Elle n'a pas *tant* d'argent que vous pensez.

- We have not *so much* self-love as to prefer ourselves to you. Nous n'avons pas *tant d'*amour-propre, que de nous préférer à vous.
- You have not *so much* business as to hinder you from applying yourself to the study of the French language. Vous n'avez pas *tant d'*occupations, que vous ne puissiez vous appliquer à l'étude de la langue Française.
- They have not *so much* courage as they pretend to. Ils n'ont pas *tant de* courage qu'ils se flattent d'en avoir.
- They have not *so much* pleasure in the country as in town. Elles n'ont pas *tant de* plaisir à la campagne qu'à la ville.
- [6] I am *as much* surprised as you. Je suis *aussi* surpris que vous.\*
- He is *as* learned as his elder brother. Il est *aussi* savant que son frère aîné.
- She is *as* lovely as her sister. Elle est *aussi* aimable que sa sœur.
- We are *as* quiet as you. Nous sommes *aussi* tranquilles que vous.
- You are *as* brisk as he. Vous êtes *aussi* vif que lui.
- They are *as* rich as your father. Ils sont *aussi* riches que votre père.
- They are *as* witty as his sisters. Elles sont *aussi* spirituelles que ses sœurs.
- I have *as many* friends as you. J'ai *autant d'*amis que vous.
- He is *as* covetous as ever. Il a *autant d'*avarice que jamais.
- She has *as much* beauty as formerly. Elle a *autant de* beauté qu'autrefois.
- We have *as much* trouble as you. Nous avons *autant de* peine que vous.
- You have *as many* books as I have. Vous avez *autant de* livres que moi.
- They have *as much* honour as your countrymen. Ils ont *autant d'*honneur que vos compatriotes.
- They have *as much* love for the sciences as their brothers. Elles ont *autant d'*amour pour les sciences que leurs frères.

\* And not *que vous êtes*, &c. See rule 3.

Your suit is *more* worn out than mine. Votre habit est *plus* usé que le mien.

Her apron is cleaner than her sister's. Son tablier est *plus* blanc que celui de sa sœur.

You are more learned than I am. Vous êtes *plus* savant que moi.

He is older than you. Il est *plus* âgé que vous.

She is *more* lovely than he. Elle est *plus* aimable que lui.

You are older than she is. Vous êtes *plus* âgé qu'elle.

[7] My brother has *more* books than you. Mon frère a *plus de* livres que vous.

We have *more* pleasure than they. Nous avons *plus de* plaisir qu'eux.

She has *more* lovers than her sister. Elle a *plus d'amans* que sa sœur.

I have lost *more than* ten guineas. J'ai perdu *plus de* dix guinées.

She has brought him for her portion *more than* ten thousand pounds. Elle lui a apporté en mariage *plus de* dix mille livres sterling.

She has *less* vivacity than her sister. Elle a *moins de* vivacité que sa sœur.

We have *less* trouble than you. Nous avons *moins de* peine que vous.

They have spent *more than* a thousand pounds a year. Ils ont dépensé *plus de* mille livres sterling par an.

He owes *more than* four thousand pounds. Il doit *plus de* quatre mille livres sterling.

He has written *more than* ten letters to-day. Il a écrit *plus de* dix lettres aujourd'hui.

I am *more than* half persuaded of it. J'en suis *plus d'à moitié* persuadé.

My brother is *more than* twenty years old. Mon frère a *plus de* vingt ans.

I am no *more than* twelve years old. Je n'ai pas *plus de* douze ans.

I have more friendship for him than he has for me. J'ai *plus d'amitié* pour lui qu'il n'en a pour moi.

She has *more* money than I have. Elle a *plus d'argent* que moi.

I have not *more* cunning than they. Je n'ai pas *plus de finesse* qu'eux.

I take *more* pains than you. Je prends *plus de* peine que vous.

You have *less* pride than he. Vous avez *moins d'*orgueil que lui.

He is *the most* skilful physician in the whole city. C'est *le plus* habile médecin de toute la ville.

[8] He is *the* idlest of them all. C'est *le plus* paresseux de tous.

She is *the* loveliest of them all. C'est *la plus* aimable de toutes.

England has given birth to *the most* skilful philosophers in Europe. L'Angleterre a donné naissance *aux plus* habiles philosophes de l'Europe.

She is *the most* lovely lady I know. C'est *la plus* aimable Demoiselle que je connaisse.

It is the greatest piece of folly you *can* ever commit. C'est *la plus* grande sottise que vous *puissiez* jamais faire.

He is the greatest ninny you ever saw. C'est l'homme *le plus* sot que vous *puissiez* voir.

The French is the most useful language one *can* possibly learn. Le Français est la langue *la plus* utile qu'on *puisse* apprendre.

I am *very* glad of it. J'en suis *bien* aise.

I am *very much* concerned at it. J'en suis *très*-mortifié.

He is a *very* polite man. C'est un homme *très* poli.

He is *very* diligent. Il est *très* diligent.

She is *very* lovely. Elle est *très* aimable.

I am much indebted to you. Je vous suis *très*-redevable.

I am *infinitely* obliged to you. Je vous suis *infinitement* obligé.

His father is *very* rich. Son père est *très* riche.

We are *very much* persuaded of it. Nous en sommes *très* persuadés.

I am your *most* humble servant. Je suis votre *très*-humble serviteur.

Your *most* obedient servant. Votre *très*-obéissant serviteur.

[9] He is the *best* man in the world. C'est *le meilleur* homme du monde.

Your pen is *better* than mine. Votre plume est *meilleure* que la mienne.



French fruit is *better* than Les fruits de France sont  
English ones. *meilleurs* que ceux d'An-  
gleterre.

[10] It is *the best* reason you C'est *la meilleure* raison que  
can tell him. vous puissiez lui donner.

They are *the best* people in Cesont *les meilleures* gens du  
the world. monde.

His exercise is *better* done Son thème est *mieux* fait  
than your's. que le vôtre.

The *least* thing makes me La *moindre* chose m'en-  
catch cold. rhume.

His writing is very bad ; but Son écriture est très mau-  
your's is *worse*. vaise ; mais la vôtre est  
pire.

Let the worst come to the Au *pis* aller.  
worst.

I shall do it *to the best* of my Je le ferai *le mieux* qu'il me  
power. sera possible.

He obliged me *the least* of Il m'a obligé *le moins* de  
any. tous.

It is *the least thing* you can C'est *le moins* que vous puis-  
do. siez faire.

## CHAPTER V

### *Rules and Observations upon Verbs.*

THE verb agrees in person and number with its sub-  
ject or nominative case. All nouns whatever in gram-  
matical construction, are of the third person ; as, the air  
prepossesses, the behaviour engages ; *l'air prévient, les  
manières engagent.*

Except when an address is made to a person or thing ; then  
the noun, (answering to what is called the vocative case in  
Latin) is of the second person ; as, vain promises of men, you  
have deceived me ! *vaines promesses des hommes, vous m'avez  
trompé.*

2. Two or more nouns in the singular number have  
*verbs agreeing with them in the plural number ;\* as, the*

---

\* Sometimes, after an enumeration of particulars, the verb

father, and the mother have consented to it; *le père & la mère y ont consenti*.

Except when they are joined by the disjunctive conjunction *ou*; as, *ou le père ou la mère y a consenti*.

The verb following the conjunction *ni* is put in the plural, when the two nominative cases of the verb do, or receive the action in the same time; as, neither mildness nor force can move him; *ni la douceur ni la force ne peuvent l'émouvoir*.

The singular is used in such like cases; as, *ni M. le duc, ni M. le comte ne sera ambassadeur*, neither the duke nor the earl will be ambassador; because there was to be only one ambassador.

4. Obs. If many nouns or pronouns, singular or plural, are separated by *mais, rien, tout, jusqu'à, & même, &c.* then the verb agrees in number and person with the noun or pronoun which follows those words; as, not only his estate and health, but also his reputation has suffered by it; *non-seulement ses biens & sa santé, mais encore sa réputation en a souffert*.

5. Collective\* partitive nouns, as, *infinité, nombre, la plupart, quantité, troupe, multitude, &c.* followed by a noun in the plural, require the verb in the plural: as, most part of men are of that sentiment; *la plupart des hommes sont de ce sentiment*.

When they are used by themselves, they generally govern the verb in the plural, if they have a relation to a noun in the

follows in the singular number, and is understood as applied to each of the preceding terms; as, supper was delicious; sprightliness, good humour, were spread round the table: *le souper fut délicieux; l'enjouement, la belle humeur, se répandit autour de la table*.

\* They are called *partitive*, and not general, because they denote some parts of a whole. For want of making this distinction, *Restaut* seems to contradict himself, for, *page 34* of his *French Grammar*, 9th edition, he says, that *forêt, peuple, armée*, are collective nouns; and *page 174*, he says, that, when the verb has for its nominative a collective noun in the singular, used by itself, or followed by a noun in the plural, the verb is put in the plural which is false; because *forêt, peuple, armée*, always govern the verb in the singular.

† Except from these, *le quart, le moitié, le tiers*, which always govern the verb in the singular.

plural which is understood. *La plupart*, according to the *French Academy*, almost always governs the verb in the plural, whether the noun to which it relates be in the plural or not.

N. B. All those collective nouns, followed by a noun in the singular, require the verb in the singular.

6. When *ce* is the nominative to the verb *être*, it is generally put in the singular : as, it is we, *c'est nous* : it is you, *c'est vous* : except the verb be followed by a third person in simple tenses : as, it is they ; *ce sont eux*. In an interrogative sentence the verb is commonly put in the singular : as, is it they ? *est ce eux ?*

7. After the determining pronoun *qui*, the verb is put in the same number and person to which it relates : as, you who speak, *vous qui parlez* ; we who study, *nous qui étudions*.

8. The verb is commonly repeated in French, 1st, when the first number of the sentence is affirmative, and the second negative ; or the first negative, and the second affirmative ; as, one ought to expect every thing of God, and nothing of one's self, *on doit attendre tout de Dieu, & ne rien attendre de soi même* ; our reputation does not depend on the caprice of men, but on the praise-worthy actions which we do, *notre réputation ne dépend pas du caprice des hommes, mais elle dépend des actions louables que nous faisons*.

2dly. When the verb is active in the first member, and passive or reflected in the second ; as, lazy men are not esteemed, because they do not deserve it ; *on n'estime pas les fainéants, parce qu'ils ne méritent pas d'être estimés*.

N. B. Three things are chiefly to be considered in verbs, viz. the use of tenses, the use of moods, and the government of verbs.

---

## SECTION I.

### *The use of Tenses.*

1. THE present, denotes the actual or habitual action or passion of the subject : as, *j'écris*, which answers to the English, I write, I do write, I am writing.

This tense is often used in familiar discourse instead of the future, but then it must be joined to some words which denote futurity; as, I shall be with you in a moment, *je suis à vous dans un moment*. It is also used as in all other tongues, particularly in the French, in orations, poetry, or set discourses, instead of some other tenses, to represent an action past in a more lively and emphatical manner.

2. The imperfect tense represents the time of an event under two points of view, (or relative circumstances,) 1st, As present at the time of an event past, and mentioned in the second part of a sentence. 2d. As past in respect to the time when we speak; as, I was reading when you came into my room; *je lisais quand vous entrâtes dans ma chambre*. The action of reading is past in respect of the time, of which I speak, but I mark it as present in respect of the thing of which I speak, which is *your entrance into my room*. This sense is always resolvable in English by *was* or *were*, with the *participle present*.

The imperfect is used, when we speak of an action entirely past, reiterated several times; as, when I was at Paris, I went very often to the Opera, *quand j'étais à Paris j'allais fort souvent à l'Opéra*.

2dly. It is used when an action meets with an impediment, as, I had a design to speak to him, but—*j'avais dessein de lui parler, mais—*

3dly. When we have been witnesses of some action, and the verb is followed by *quand*, *lorsque*, or such like word; as, I was in London when George III. was crowned; *j'étais à Londres quand George III. fut couronné*.

4thly. When we speak of the good or bad qualities of dead creatures, rational or irrational; as, Louis XIV. loved war too much; Louis XIV. *aimait trop la guerre*. But when we speak of persons still living, and no time is mentioned, we use the compound of the present, as, the King of Prussia made great conquests: *le Roi de Prusse a fait de grandes conquêtes*.

5thly. When we speak of the age of a dead person; as, George II. was 77 years old when he died; George II. *avait 77 ans quand il mourut*.

6thly. When we speak of the inconstancy of somebody; as, this man did alter every day his design; *cet homme changeait, tous les jours de dessein*.

7thly. It is used after *si* instead of the subjunctive mood, expressed by *should*, *could*, *would*, in English; as, if you would come, *si vous vouliez venir*; if virtue should reign, *si la vertu*

*règnait* : this tense answers to, I did write, I used to write, *j'écrivais*.

3. The preterperfect denotes an action entirely past, in a time also entirely past : as, he was happy last week, last month, last year ; *il fut heureux la semaine passée, le mois passé, l'année passée*. If the time be not entirely past, we make use of the compound of the present tense : as, he was happy this week, this month, this year ; *il a été heureux cette semaine-ci, ce-mois-ci, cette année-ci*.

The preterperfect is used when we speak of an action done but once or very seldom, and the time is specified : as, Edward III. took Calais the 3d of August, 1347 ; Edouard III. *prit* Calais, le 3 d'Août. 1347. If the time be not specified, we may indifferently use the preterperfect, or the compound of the present ; as, Edouard III. *a pris* Calais, or *prit* Calais.

We commonly make use of the compound of the present tense before *depuis*, since ; as, there has been a great battle since I saw you ; *il y a eu* une grande bataille, *depuis*, que je ne vous ai vu. Sometimes we make use of this tense instead of the compound of the future ; as, will you have done soon ? *avez-vous* bientôt fait, instead of *aurez-vous* bientôt fait ?

4. The future is used as in other languages.

---

*The tenses of Verbs, exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[Chapter V. 1] The sun Le soleil *luit*.  
*shines*.

The summer *is* a very agreeable season. L'été *est* une saison très agréable.

Winter does not *please* me. L'hiver ne me *plait* pas.

The stars *begin* to appear. Les étoiles *commencent* à paraître.

The days *are* very much lengthened. Les jours *sont* très alongés.

These meadows *are* very beautiful. Ces prairies *sont* très belles.

[2] The brother and sister *were* against it. Le frère & la sœur *s'y sont* opposés.

The father and mother *have* consented to it. Le père & la mère *y ont* consenti.

[3] Neither he nor she *have* spoken to him, or to her. Ni lui ni elle *ne lui ont* parlé.

- Either your brother or your sister *has* told it you. Ou votre frère, ou votre sœur, *vous l'a* dit.
- [5] A vast number of people *are* duped by one another. Une infinité de gens *sont* les dupes les uns des autres.
- A great number of ships *are* ready to sail. Un grand nombre de vaisseaux *sont* prêts à faire voile.
- Most part of the goods *have* been sold. La plupart des marchandises *ont* été vendues.
- [6] *It is* I who have seen it. *C'est* moi qui l'*ai* vu.
- It is* we who *have* hindered him. *C'est* nous qui l'*avons* empêché.
- It is* you who *have* made the noise. *C'est* vous qui *avez* fait le bruit.
- It is* they who *have* heard it. *Ce sont* eux qui l'*ont* entendu.
- [Sect. 1. 2] When I *was* young, I much *loved* play. Quand j'*étais* jeune, j'*aimais* beaucoup le jeu.
- She *had* a great many admirers in her time. Elle *avait* beaucoup d'admirateurs dans son temps.
- I *had* a mind to write to him. J'*avais* envie de lui écrire.
- He *had* a mind to come and see you. Il *avait* envie de venir vous voir.
- When I was in London, I *used* to go very often to the play. Quand j'*étais* à Londres j'*allais* très souvent à la comédie.
- [3] You scarce *were* gone when he arrived. A peine *étiez-vous* parti qu'il arriva.
- I *expected* nothing else. Je ne m'*attendais* à rien autre chose.
- He *was* afraid to interrupt you. Il *avait* peur de vous interrompre.
- She *was* not so angry as she *seemed* to be. Elle n'*était* pas si fâchée qu'elle le *paraissait*.
- I *was* in the Park when he spoke to you. J'*étais* au Parc quand il vous parla.
- I *was* in London when the duke of Cumberland died. J'*étais* à Londres, quand le duc de Cumberland mourut.
- He *seemed* much surprised at that news. Il *paraissait* fort surpris de cette nouvelle.

- Where *were* you when the King was crowned? OÙ étiez-vous, quand le Roi fut couronné?
- I *was* in France. J'étais en France.
- He *was* very sprightly in his youth. Il était très vif dans sa jeunesse.
- He *had* a great many friends in London. Il avait beaucoup d'amis à Londres.
- He *was* not persuaded of what he said. Il n'était pas persuadé de ce qu'il disait.
- [5] My father *was* seventy years old when he died. Mon père avait soixante et dix-ans, quand il mourut.
- His mother *was* forty years old when she married again. Sa mère avait quarante ans quand elle se remaria.
- [7] If you *would* speak to him, or to her. Si vous lui parliez.
- If you *would* write to him, or to her. Si vous lui écriviez.
- If she *would* be angry at it. Si elle s'en fâchait.
- If I *should* go and see him. Si je l'allais voir.
- If he *would* employ the half of his time. S'il employait la moitié de son temps.
- If she *would* apply herself to music. Si elle s'appliquait à la musique.
- If we *could* know. Si nous savions.
- If they *would* apply themselves to something useful. S'ils s'appliquaient à quelque chose d'utile.
- If they *would* listen to flatteries. Si elles prêtaient l'oreille aux flatteries.
- [8] I *have* written six letters to-day. J'ai écrit six lettres aujourd'hui.
- Have you *seen* him to-day? L'avez-vous vu aujourd'hui?
- I *did* not speak to him, or to her, to-day. Je ne lui ai pas parlé aujourd'hui.
- Where *have* you been to-day? Où avez-vous été aujourd'hui?
- I *have* been in the Park. J'ai été au Parc.
- I *saw* him to-day. Je l'ai vu aujourd'hui.
- She *went* to the play this week. Elle a été à la comédie cette semaine.
- He *has* not studied this week. Il n'a pas étudié cette semaine-ci.

- I *went* into the country this week. J'ai *été* à la campagne cette semaine-ci.
- You *have lost* your time this week. Vous *avez perdu* votre temps cette semaine-ci.
- What *have* you *done* this week? Qu'*avez* vous *fait* cette semaine-ci.
- We *have spent* a great deal of money this week. Nous *avons dépensé* beaucoup d'argent cette semaine-ci.
- You *have done* more work than I this week. Vous *avez fait* plus d'ouvrage qui moi cette semaine-ci.
- This month *has not been* very sharp. Ce mois-ci n'a pas *été* très rude.
- It *was* very hot this month. Il *a fait*-très chaud ce mois-ci.
- It *has rained* all this month. Il *a plu* tout ce mois-ci.
- It *did not snow* this month. Il n'a pas *neigé* ce mois-ci.
- It *was* exceeding cold this month. Il *a fait* très froid ce mois-ci.
- They *have had* a plentiful harvest this year. Ils ont *eu* une moisson abondante cette année-ci.
- This year *has not been* very favourable to me. Cette année-ci ne m'a pas *été* très favorable.
- You *have been* very lucky this year. Vous *avez été* très heureux cette année-ci.
- They *have lost* a great deal of money this year. Ils *ont perdu* beaucoup d'argent cette année-ci.
- I *have been* in France this year. J'*ai été* en France cette année-ci.
- She *died* this year. Elle *est morte* cette année-ci.
- He *has been* very sick this year. Il *a été* très malade cette année-ci.
- He *is arrived* from the West-Indies this year. Il *est revenu* des Indes-Orientales cette année-ci.
- I *wrote* six letters yesterday.\* J'*écrivis* hier six lettres.
- Did* you *see* him yesterday? Le *vites*-vous hier?
- I *did not speak* to him, or to her yesterday. Je ne lui *parlai* pas hier.

\* I repeat purposely, the foregoing examples, to render the different uses of the tenses more intelligible to the learner.



Where <i>did</i> you go yesterday ? I went to the Park.	Où <i>fûtes-vous</i> hier ? Je <i>fus</i> au Parc.
I <i>saw</i> him yesterday.	Je <i>le vis</i> hier.
I <i>met</i> with her yesterday in the street.	Je <i>la rencontrai</i> hier dans la rue.
She <i>went</i> to the play last week.	Elle <i>fut</i> à la comédie la semaine passée.
He <i>did</i> not <i>study</i> last week.	Il <i>n'étudia</i> pas la semaine passée.
I <i>went</i> into the country last week.	Je <i>fus</i> à la campagne la semaine passée.
You lost your time last week.	Vous <i>perdîtes</i> votre temps la semaine passée.
What <i>did</i> you <i>do</i> last week ?	Que <i>fîtes-vous</i> la semaine passée ?
We <i>spent</i> a great deal of money last week.	Nous <i>dépensâmes</i> beaucoup d'argent la semaine passée.
You <i>did</i> more work than I last week.	Vous <i>fîtes</i> plus d'ouvrage que moi la semaine passée.
Last month <i>was</i> not very sharp.	Le mois passé <i>ne fut</i> pas très rude.
It <i>was</i> exceeding hot last month.	Il <i>fit</i> très chaud le mois passé.
It <i>rained</i> all last month.	Il <i>plut</i> tout le mois passé.
It <i>did</i> not <i>snow</i> last month.	Il <i>ne neigea</i> pas le mois passé.
It <i>was</i> exceeding cold last month.	Il <i>fit</i> très froid le mois passé.
They <i>had</i> a plentiful harvest last year.	Ils <i>ont eu</i> une moisson abondante l'année passée.
Last year <i>was</i> not very favourable to me.	L'année passée <i>ne me fut</i> pas très-favorable.
You <i>were</i> very lucky last year.	Vous <i>fûtes</i> très heureux l'année passée.
They <i>lost</i> a great deal of money last year.	Ils <i>perdirent</i> beaucoup d'argent l'année passée.
I <i>went</i> to France last year.	J' <i>allai</i> en France l'année passée.
She <i>died</i> last year.	Elle <i>mourut</i> l'année passée.
She <i>was</i> very sick last year.	Elle <i>fut</i> très malade l'année passée.

He *arrived* from the West- Indies last year. Il *arriva* des Indes Occidentales, l'année passée.

[9] How *have* you *done* since I had the pleasure of seeing you ? Comment vous êtes-vous porté, depuis que je n'ai eu le plaisir de vous voir ?

I *have been* very sick since I arrived from the East-Indies. J'ai été très malade depuis que je suis arrivé des Indes Orientales.

I *have received* no tidings of him, since he went away. Je n'ai pas reçu de ses nouvelles, depuis qu'il est parti.

Have you *seen* him, since he arrived from France ? L'avez vous vu, depuis qu'il est arrivé de France ?

Where *have* you *been*, since you went out ? Où avez-vous été, depuis que vous êtes sorti ?

## SECTION II.

### *The Use of the Subjunctive Mood.*

1. THE subjunctive mood is used after *que* or *qui*, preceded by a verb denoting doubt, wish, fear, command, prohibition, &c. such are *craindre*, *prier*, *douter*, *souhaiter*, *permettre*, *commander*, *défendre*, &c. as, his father hath forbidden him to go thither ; son père a *défendu* qu'il y *allât*. But when any of those verbs govern a noun or pronoun, the verb following is put in the infinitive mood commonly with the preposition *de* before it ; as in the foregoing example, son père lui a *défendu* d'y aller.

2. The subjunctive mood is likewise used after *que* preceded by some impersonal verbs, as, I must go thither ; il faut que j'y *aille*. See the 9th observation upon impersonal verbs.

3. There are some impersonal verbs which govern the indicative mood ; such are, *il paraît*, *il y a apparence*, &c. and those which denote any thing more positively. But, when the same impersonal verbs are used negatively or interrogatively, they govern the subjunctive mood ; as, it is true that you are married ; il est vrai que vous *êtes* marié : is it true that you are married ? est-il vrai que vous *soyez* marié ?

4. The subjunctive mood is used after verbs preceded by *ne* or *si* used in a doubtful manner, and followed by *que* or *qui* ; as, I do not believe that he has done it ; je ne crois pas qu'il l'*ait* fait : if you think I am an honest man ; si vous croyez

*que je sois honnête homme.* Some grammarians pretend, that, speaking in the last instance positively, the verb following *que* is put in the indicative mood; as, *si vous croyez que je suis honnête homme.\**

5. The indicative mood is more properly used in the foregoing case, after the verbs *dire*, *énoncer*, *affirmer*, and such like; as, if you say that he is an honest man; *si vous dites qu'il est honnête homme*; except when the verb *dire* is followed by *que*, and a verb implying a command or prohibition; as, tell him to come; *dites-lui qu'il vienne.*

6. The subjunctive mood is used after the verb *il semble*, it seems; as, it seems that you are angry; *il semble que vous soyez fâché.* But if that verb has before it a pronoun, or a governed word after it, the indicative mood is to be used; as, *il me semble*, or *il semble à la compagnie que vous êtes fâché.*

7. A verb following another which is in the subjunctive mood, must also be put in the same mood after *que* or *qui*; as, do you believe that he expects I shall come? *croyez-vous qu'il s'attende que je vienne?*

8. The subjunctive mood is used, 1st, after *quoique quelque, quel que, &c.* signifying whomsoever, whatsoever, &c. as, though you are rich; *quoique vous soyez riche*; though you are ever so rich: *quelque riche que vous soyez.* See the 19th and 20th observations upon indeterminate pronouns, page 202.

2dly. After *que* used instead of repeating the conjunction *si* in the second member of a sentence; as, if you study and take pains; *si vous étudiez & que vous preniez de la peine.* See the 5th observation upon conjunctions, *si & que*, chap. x.

3dly. After the pronoun *qui* or *que* preceded immediately by a superlative; as, it is the best news you can tell me; *c'est la meilleure nouvelle que vous puissiez me dire.*

4thly. After *que* used instead of *de ce que*, which governs the indicative mood; as, I am sorry he is not come; *je suis fâché qu'il ne soit pas venu*, or *de ce qu'il n'est pas venu.*

5thly. After the relative pronoun *qui* or *que* between two verbs, so as to express some desire, need, or necessity; as, I seek a woman who is handsome, rich, and wise; *je cherche une femme qui soit belle, riche, and sage.*

6thly. We elegantly make use of the compound of the preterperfect of the subjunctive mood after *si*, instead of the compound of the imperfect of the indicative; as, if I had been informed of it sooner, that would not have happened; *si j'en eusse été averti plutôt, cela ne serait pas arrivé.*

9. The verb which is in the future in English, is put in the present in French, whenever it ought to be put in the subjunc-

\* N. B. In this last instance *si* has the import of *puisque*, and signifies *as*.

tive mood ; as, do you think that he will come ? *croyez-vous qu'il vienne ?* I do not believe that he will write ; *je ne crois pas qu'il écrive.* Except after the verbs *savoir, assurer, &c.* where *si*, signifying whether, must be used instead of *que* ; as, do you know if, or whether, he will come ? *savez-vous s'il viendra ?*

10. The verb, which, according to the aforesaid rules is put in the subjunctive mood, must be put in the present tense of that mood, if it be preceded by a verb in the present or future tense ; as, do you believe that he will guess it ? *croyez-vous qu'il le devine ?* will you believe now that he has written ? *croyez-vous à présent, qu'il ait écrit ?* If the first verb be in any other tense, or in a compounded one, the preterperfect of the subjunctive mood is to be used ; as, what would you have him do ? *Que voudriez-vous qu'il fit ?*

This tense is likewise used when the verb which is in the subjunctive mood is followed by the conjunction *si*, and a verb in the imperfect tense, or a conditional expression, though the first verb be in the present ; as, do you believe that he could guess it, if you would not tell it him ? *croyez-vous qu'il le devinât, si vous ne le lui disiez pas ?* I doubt whether he would have succeeded without the help of his friends, *je doute qu'il eût réussi sans le secours de ses amis.*

N. B. As there are some conjunctions which require the subjunctive mood, and are every where the same, it will not be amiss to lay them down here as I have met with them in other grammars.

### *Conjunctions governing the Subjunctive Mood.*

Afin que, pour que,	—that, to the end that
avant que,	—before.
sans que,	—without that.
quoique, bien que, encore que,	though.
soit que,	—whether and or.
supposé, ou supposons que,	suppose that.
au, ou en cas que,	—in case that, or if.
à la bonne heure que,	—I grant that.
non que, }	—not that.
non pas que, }	
ce n'est pas que,	—it is not that.
pourvu que,	—provided.
& moins que,	—unless.

pour peu que,	—	— <i>if ever so little.</i>
de peur que,	—	— <i>for fear that.</i>
de crainte que,	—	— <i>lest.</i>
loin que,	—	— <i>far.</i>
bien loin que,	—	— <i>very far from.</i>
malgré que,	—	— <i>for all that, though.</i>
nonobstant que,	—	— <i>notwithstanding that.</i>
Dieu veuille que,	—	— <i>God grant.</i>
plaise ou plût à Dieu que,		— <i>would to God.</i>
à Dieu ne plaise que,		— <i>God forbid.</i>
sinon que, }		
si ce n'est que,		— <i>save, but.</i>

N. B. These last two govern the subjunctive mood when they are preceded by a verb expressing a commandment, desire, uncertainty. In other cases they govern the indicative mood ; as, I want nothing of you but to do your duty ; *je ne veux rien autre chose de vous, sinon que, ou, si ce n'est que, vous fassiez votre devoir* ; I have answered him nothing, but that I had executed his orders ; *je ne lui ai répondu autre chose sinon que, ou si ce n'est que j'avais exécuté ses ordres.*

---

*The Subjunctive Mood exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1] I was afraid he *would* Je craignais qu'il ne *vint*.  
*come.*

I doubted he *would write* to Je doutais qu'il vous *écrivît*.  
*you.*

I did not doubt but he *would* Je ne doutais pas qu'il ne  
*be* very glad to see you. *fût* bien aise de vous voir.

Her mother commanded her Sa mère a commandé qu'  
*to marry* him. elle l'*épousât*, ou *lui* a  
commandé de l'*épouser*.

His father has forbidden him Son père a défendu qu'il  
*to play.* *jouât* ou *lui* a défendu de  
*jouer.*

Her husband permitted her Son mari a permis qu'elle  
*to go to the play.* allât à la comédie, ou *lui*  
a permis d'*aller à la co-*  
*médie.*

- [2] I must *write* to him. Il faut que je lui *écrive*.  
 It is convenient for you *to speak* to her. Il convient que vous lui *parliez*.  
 It is of consequence for him *to keep* good company. Il est de conséquence qu'il *fréquente* la bonne compagnie.  
 There is no way for her *to escape*. Il n'y a pas moyen qu'elle *échappe*.  
 It is surprising that she *has* succeeded. Il est surprenant qu'elle *ait* réussi.  
 It is just that he *should be* rewarded. Il est juste qu'il *soit* récompensé.  
 It is unjust that he *should be* punished. Il est injuste qu'il *soit* puni.  
 It is fit that you *give* him *warning*. Il est à propos que vous *l'avertissiez*.  
 It is necessary for him *to go* thither. Il est nécessaire qu'il y *aille*.  
 It is unseemly that you *should go* alone. Il est indécent que vous *alliez* seul.  
 It is astonishing that he *knew* nothing of it. Il est étonnant qu'il n'en *sut* rien.  
 It is lucky that she *is not* dead. Il est heureux qu'elle ne *soit* pas morte.  
 It is impossible for him *to recover*. Il est impossible qu'il en *revienne*.  
 It is next to impossible that she *should be ignorant* of it. Il est presque impossible qu'elle ne le *sache*.  
 [3] It seems that you know him. Il paraît que vous le *connoissez*.  
 It seems that he *speaks* truth. Il paraît qu'il *dit* vrai.  
 It seems that he *is* an honest man. Il paraît qu'il *est* honnête homme.  
 It seems that she *is* surprised. Il paraît qu'elle *est* surprise.  
 It seems that he *is* angry. Il paraît qu'il *est* fâché.  
 It is likely that he *knew* her. Il y a apparence qu'il l'a *con-*  
*nue*.  
 It is likely that you *saw* him. Il y a apparence que vous *l'avez* vu.  
 It is likely that he *wrote* to *him*. Il y a apparence qu'il lui a

It is likely that she *loved* him. Il y a apparence qu'elle l'*a* aimé.

It is true that I *spoke* to him. Il est vrai que je lui *ai* parlé.

It is true that he *saw* her. Il est vrai qu'il l'*a* vue.

It is true that she *wrote* to him. Il est vrai qu'elle lui *a* écrit.

It is true that my father *knows* him. Il est vrai que mon père le *connaît*.

It is certain that he is dead. Il est certain qu'il *est* mort.

It is certain that he *is* come from Flanders. Il est certain qu'il *est* revenu de Flandre.

It is certain that he *does* not *know* him. Il est certain qu'il *ne* le *connaît* pas.

It is certain that he *told* him that news. Il est sûr qu'il lui *a* dit cette nouvelle.

It is sure that he *wrote* to her. Il est sûr qu'il lui *a* écrit.

It is sure that he knows his lesson. Il est sûr que qu'il *sait* sa leçon.

It is said that the king of Spain *is* dead. On dit que le roi d'Espagne *est* mort.

It is thought that he *has* made his fortune. On croit qu'il *a* fait sa fortune.

[6] \*It does not seem that you *know* him. Il ne paraît pas que vous le *connaissiez*.

It does not seem that he *speaks* truth. Il ne paraît pas qu'il *dise* vrai.

It does not seem that he *is* an honest man. Il ne paraît pas qu'il *soit* honnête homme.

It does not seem that she *is* surprised. Il ne paraît pas qu'elle *soit* surprise.

It does not seem that she *is* angry. Il ne paraît pas qu'elle *soit* fâchée.

It is not likely that he *knew* her. Il n'y a point d'apparence qu'il l'*ait* connue.

It is not likely that you *saw* him. Il n'y a point d'apparence que vous l'*ayez* vu.

It is not likely that he *wrote* to her. Il n'y a point d'apparence qu'il lui *ait* écrit.

It is not likely that she *loved* him. Il n'y a point d'apparence qu'elle l'*ait* aimé.

\* The twenty-one preceding examples are varied here purposely, to render the third rule, and the exceptions thereof, most intelligible to the learner.

- It is not true that I spoke to him. Il n'est pas vrai que je lui *aie* parlé.
- It is not true that he saw her. Il n'est pas vrai qu'il l'*ait* vue.
- It is not true that she *wrote* to him. Il n'est pas vrai qu'elle lui *ait* écrit.
- It is not true that my father *knows* him. Il n'est pas vrai que mon père le *connaisse*.
- It is not certain that she *is* dead. Il n'est pas certain qu'elle *soit* morte.
- It is not certain that he *is* come from Flanders. Il n'est pas certain qu'il *soit* venu de Flandre.
- It is not certain that he *does* not know him. Il n'est pas certain qu'il ne le *connaisse* pas.
- It is not sure that he *told* him that news. Il n'est pas sûr qu'il lui *ait* dit cette nouvelle.
- It is not sure that he *wrote* to her. Il n'est pas sûr qu'il lui *ait* écrit.
- It is not sure that he *knows* his lesson. Il n'est pas sûr qu'il *sache* sa leçon.
- It is not said that the king of Spain is dead. On ne dit pas que le roi d'Espagne *soit* mort.
- It is not thought that he *has* made his fortune. On ne pense pas qu'il *ait* fait sa fortune.
- [5] He told me that he *will* write to you. Il m'a dit qu'il vous *écriera*.
- I shall tell him that you *are* come to see him. Je lui dira que vous *êtes* venu pour le voir.
- Tell him I *will* come and see him. Dites-lui que je *viendrai* le voir.
- Did you tell him that I *saw* you? Lui avez-vous dit que je vous *ai* vu?
- Do not tell him that I *will* go to the play. Ne lui dites pas que j'*irai* à la comédie.
- Do not tell him that you *saw* me. Ne lui dites pas que vous m'*avez* vu.
- Tell him that I *went* out. Dites-lui que je *suis* sorti.
- Tell him that I *came* to speak to him. Dites-lui que je *suis* venu pour lui parler.
- I shall tell him that you *spoke* to me. Je lui dirai que vous m'*avez* parlé.
- I shall tell him that you *knew* your lesson. Je lui dirai que vous *saviez* votre leçon.



Tell him to *come* and see Dites-lui qu'il *vienne* me  
me. voir.

Tell him not to *call* to-day. Dites-lui qu'il ne *viene* pas  
aujourd'hui.

Tell him to *write* his exer- Dites-lui qu'il *mette* son  
cise fair. thème au net.

Tell her to *hold* her tongue. Dites-lui qu'elle *se taise*.

Tell him to *bring* his books. Dites-lui qu'il *apporte* ses li-  
vres.

Tell him to *learn* his lesson. Dites-lui qu'il *apprenne* sa  
leçon.

Tell him to *give* you my pen- Dites-lui qu'il *vous rende*  
knife back again. mon canif.

Tell him to *give* you paper. Dites-lui qu'il *vous donne* du  
papier.

I shall tell him to *write* to Je lui dirai qu'il *vous écrive*.  
you.

I shall tell him to *take* care Je lui dirai qu'il *ait* soin de  
of you. vous.

Do not tell him to *come*. Ne lui dites pas de venir.

Do not tell her to *write* to Ne lui dites pas qu'elle m'*é-*  
me. *crive*.

Will you tell him to *bring* Lui direz-vous qu'il *apporte*  
his bill? son mémoire?

Will you tell him not to *be* Lui direz-vous qu'il ne *soit*  
angry? pas fâché?

I shall tell him not to *be* un- Je lui dirai qu'il *soit* tran-  
easy. quille.

I shall tell her to *send* you Je lui dirai qu'elle vous *en-*  
your book. *voie* votre livre.

I shall tell them to *make* you Je leur dirai qu'ils vous *fas-*  
an answer. *sent* réponse.

I shall tell him to be mode- Je lui dirai qu'il *soit* modéré.  
rate.

[6] She seems to *be* angry. Il semble qu'elle *soit* fâché.

It seems that you *know* him. Il semble que vous le *con-*  
*naissiez*.

It seems that he *is* in the Il semble qu'il *ait* raison.  
right.

It seems that she *is* in the Il semble qu'elle *ait* tort.  
wrong.

It does not seem that you Il ne semble pas que vous  
are so *aged*. soyez si âgé.

- It does not seem that she is sick. Il ne semble pas qu'elle soit malade.
- It seems to me that you are sorry. Il me semble que vous êtes fâché.
- It seems to me that he is very learned. Il me semble qu'il est fort savant.
- It seems to him that she is very pretty. Il lui semble qu'elle est fort jolie.
- A covetous man thinks he never has enough. Il semble à un avare qu'il n'a jamais assez.
- Your brother thinks he is rich enough. Il semble à votre frère qu'il est assez riche.
- [8] If he comes and asks for me, tell him I am not at home. S'il vient & qu'il demande après moi, dites-lui que je ne suis pas au logis.
- If you study, and if you take pains, you will learn the French language in a short time. Si vous étudiez, & que vous preniez de la peine, vous apprendrez le Français en peu de temps.
- He is the most conceited man I know. C'est l'homme le plus suffisant que je connaisse.
- She is the handsomest lady you ever saw. C'est la plus belle demoiselle que vous ayez jamais vue.
- I am sorry he is sick. Je suis fâché qu'il soit malade, ou de ce qu'il est malade.
- I am glad she is better. Je suis bien aise qu'elle se porte mieux.
- I am surprised that he is not come. Je suis surpris qu'il ne soit pas venu, ou de ce qu'il n'est pas venu.
- I am overjoyed that he has won his law-suit. Je suis ravi qu'il ait gagné son procès, ou de ce qu'il a gagné son procès.
- I am surprised that she has married him. Je suis surpris qu'elle l'ait épousé, ou de ce qu'elle l'a épousé.
- She is grieved that you send her no news. Elle est chagrine que vous ne lui donniez point de nouvelles, ou de ce que vous ne lui donniez pas de nouvelles.

- I am surprised *at his having* Je suis surpris, *qu'il ait fait*  
made his fortune in *so* sa fortune en si peu de  
short time. temps, ou *de ce qu'il a*  
fait sa fortune en si peu  
de temps.
- Give me a handkerchief *that* Donnez-moi un mouchoir  
is clean. *qui soit* blanc.
- I look for a servant *whom I* Je cherche un domestique à  
may trust. *qui je puisse* me fier.
- He* looks for a woman *who* Il cherche une femme *qui*  
*is* rich. *soit* riche.
- She looks for a husband *who* Elle cherche un mari *qui*  
*is* handsome. *soit* beau.
- [9] Is it sure that he *will* Est-il sûr qu'il *vienn*e au-  
*come* to-day ? jourd'hui ?
- [10] Do you believe that she Croyez-vous qu'elle *aille* à  
*will go* to the play ? la comédie ?
- I do not believe that she *will* Je ne crois pas qu'elle *soit*  
*be* angry with you. fâchée contre vous.
- I* doubt that he *will write* to Je doute qu'il vous *écrive*.  
you.
- Is it sure that he *will go* to Est-il sûr qu'il *aille* en  
France next spring ? France au printemps pro-  
chain ?
- It is not sure that he *will* Il n'est pas sûr qu'il *revienne*  
*come* back this summer. cet été.
- Do you think that he *will* Croyez-vous qu'il *apprenne*  
*learn* French in four le Français en quatre  
months ? mois ?
- Do you think that he *will* Pensez-vous qu'il *soit* à la  
*be* in the country next campagne la semaine pro-  
week ? chaine ?

---

### SECTION III.

#### *The Government of Verbs.*

1. ACTIVE verbs govern the first case : as, I read the books ; *Je lis* les livres. Passive verbs govern the second case ; as, he is esteemed by all men : il est estimé de tout le monde.

They also govern the first case with the preposition *par*, speaking of some action of the body ; as, he was killed by robbers ; *il a été tué par des voleurs*. In speaking of actions, which partake both of the sentiments of the mind, and motion of the body, we commonly make use of *par*, though we say, *il est entouré de gens ennuyeux*, he is surrounded by troublesome people ; here *entouré* expresses only, that troublesome people are round about him.

2. Verbs that signify to give, or to take away, govern the first case of the thing, and the third case of the person : as, I have given him the book : *Je lui ai donné le livre* : they have taken his sword from him, *ils lui ont oté son épée*.

3. Many verbs govern the infinitive of a verb, with the preposition *de* before it ; which happens when *to*, in English may be changed into of, from, by, or with, as, he hindered me from working ; *il m'empêcha de travailler*.

4. Many verbs govern the infinitive with the preposition *à* before it ; in this case, *to* in English almost always may be changed into in, or for : as, help me to do it, or in doing it ; *aidez moi à le faire*.

5. Some verbs have the preposition *pour* before their infinitive, which happens, when *to* denotes the design, end, or reason of the passion or action of the verb—Therefore, *to* can be changed into in order to, with a design to, to the end that ; as, I came in order to see you, or with a design to see you ; *je suis venu pour vous voir*.

6. There are five verbs after which *de* or *à* are indifferently used before the infinitive ; as, *contraindre, continuer, discontinuer, essayer, forcer*.

The verb *obliger* in the sense of to force, to excite, to engage, is followed by the preposition *à* before the infinitive ; as, I will oblige him to do it ; *je l'obligerai à le faire* : when it is used passively, it is followed by the preposition *de* ; as, he was obliged to do it ; *il fut obligé de le faire*.

When the verb *tâcher* signifies to aim,\* it requires the preposition *à* before the infinitive ; as, he aims to hurt me ; *il tâche à me nuire* : otherwise it requires the preposition *de* ; as, I will endeavour to please you ; *je tâcherai de vous plaire*.

\* When the verb *tâcher* is used in the present tense it requires to be followed by the preposition *à* preceding the infinitive ; but when it is used in the future tense, *de* precedes the infinitive following it.

When the verb *s'efforcer* is used in the sense of to strive, to strain, to make use of all one's strength, it requires the preposition *d* before the next infinitive ; but, when it is used in the sense of to endeavour, to make use of one's industry, it requires the preposition *de* ; as, he strove to run ; *il s'efforcé à courir* ; he endeavours to please her ; *il s'efforce de lui plaire*.

When the verb *tarder* is used personally, it requires the preposition *d* ; if impersonally, the preposition *de* ; as, do not tarry ; *ne tardez pas à revenir* : I long to see her ; *il me tarde de la voir*. In this sense, it is always joined to a third case, and may be followed by *que*, with the verb in the subjunctive mood ; as, *il me tarde que je ne la voie*.

The verb *commencer* is sometimes followed by *de*, according to the *French Academy* ; the ear is the judge in such a case. When it signifies to begin by, it is followed by *par* ; as, he began by reading *Æsop's Fables* ; *il commença par lire les Fables d'Esop*.

The verb *manquer* requires the preposition *de* before the infinitive, when it is used negatively ; as, I will not fail to do what you please ; *je ne manquerai pas de faire ce que vous voulez* : or, when it signifies to be near, to have like ; as, I had like to fall ; *j'ai manqué de tomber*. In this sense it is always used affirmatively, and in familiar discourse.

But when it is used affirmatively in the sense of not to do what one ought, it is followed by the preposition *d* ; as, he has failed to do his duty ; *il a manqué à faire son devoir*.

7. *De* is used before the infinitive of verbs, to which are joined certain nouns without an article ; such are *avoir congé*, *permission*, *envie*, *coutume*, *besoin*, *sujet*, *raison*, *droit*, *tort*, *occasion*, &c. *de*.

8. Infinitive moods governed by the verb *être*, followed by a noun governing the second case, take also *de* before them ; as, I am glad to see you ; *je suis bien aise de vous voir*. But if the verb *être* be followed by an adjective which governs the third case, the verb which is in the infinitive takes before it the preposition *à* ; as, he is ready to go thither ; *il est prêt à y aller*.

9. When *être*, signifying to be, is followed by a noun, and preceded by *ce*, the following verb in the infinitive mood, is preceded by *que de* ; as, it is a folly to forget one's self ; *c'est une folie que de se méconnaître*.

10. *De* is put before the infinitive, after *venir* and *ne faire que*, signifying to have just, or be just ; as, I left him just now ; *je viens de le quitter*, or *je ne fais que de*

*le quitter.* These two verbs are frequently used thus in the present and imperfect tense, but in no other.

11. *A* is put after the verb *venir*, signifying to begin, or to set about doing something; as, when I began, or set about, to speak; quand je vins à parler. This verb is used in all its tenses, and is commonly placed after some conjunctions.— Sometimes it signifies nothing in English, and is added to the French verbs; as, when he will know that; quand il *viendra* à savoir cela.

12. *A* is put before infinitive moods or verbal nouns governed by *être*, preceded by *ce*, and used in the sense of to be one's turn, one's business, or one's duty: as, it is your turn to drink: c'est à vous à boire.

13. The verb coming after *assez* or *trop* very often requires the preposition *pour* before it: as, he has vanity enough to believe it; il a assez de vanité *pour* le croire. Sometimes it takes the preposition *de*; as, it was not sufficient to outrage him: ce n'était pas assez *de* l'outrager: sometimes no preposition at all; as, this insults me enough, or too much; c'est assez *ou* c'est trop m'insulter. Hence it appears how much grammarians are in the wrong, in saying that *assez* or *trop* always requires the preposition *pour* before the next infinitive mood.

14. In all governed words, false cases are to be avoided; as, that pleased and charmed the prince, *cela plut au prince & le charma*; and not *cela plut & charma le prince*; because *plaire* governs the third case of the person, and *charmer* the first.

15. There are some verbs which take no preposition after them before the infinitive mood: as, *aller, venir, envoyer, savoir, faire, oser, voir, pouvoir, vouloir, croire, prétendre, devoir, écouter, entendre, daigner, &c*

---

*Government of Verbs exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1] I like Pope's works. J'aime les œuvres de Pope.  
 You like apples and pears. Vous aimez les pommes & les poires.

He is beloved by all his relations. Il est aimé de tous ses parents.

He is respected by all his pupils. Il est estimé de tous ses élèves.

He was robbed by two rogues. Il fut volé par deux coquins.

He is surrounded *with* flat- Il est entouré *de* flatteurs.  
terers.

[2] I gave *it* to *him*. Je *le lui* ai donné.  
When will you give *me my* Quand *me* donnerez-vous  
*book*? *mon livre*?

Will you give *it* to *him*? *Le lui* donnerez-vous?  
I did not give *it* to *him*. Je ne *le lui* ai pas donné.  
She took *it* from *him*. Elle *le lui* a ôté.

Take this *knife* from *him*. Otez-*lui* ce couteau.  
Do not take *it* from *her*. Ne *le lui* ôtez pas.

[3] Make an end of *playing*. Finissez *de* jouer.  
I have not blamed you *for* Je ne vous ai point blâmé  
having kept him company. *de* l'avoir fréquenté.  
He has censured him *for* Il l'a censuré *d'avoir* écrit.  
having written.

Cease to reproach me *with* Cessez *de* me reprocher  
my foible. mon faible.

Warn her to take care of Avertissez-la *de* prendre *soin*  
her reputation. de sa réputation.

I advised him to ask her Je lui ai conseillé de lui de-  
pardon. mander pardon.

Why did you defer to pay Pourquoi avez-vous différé  
him? *de* le payer?

I wrote to him to send me Je lui ai écrit *de* m'envoyer  
my books. mes livres.

I was frightened to see him. Je fus effrayé *de* le voir.

Excuse me *from* learning Dispensez-moi *d'apprendre*  
my lesson to-day. ma leçon aujourd'hui.

Do not undertake to unde- N'entreprenez pas *de* la dé-  
ceive her. sabuser.

Try to persuade her. Essayez *de* la persuader.

He was constrained to pay. Il fut contraint *de* payer.

He deserves to be punished. Il mérite *d'être* puni.

He has neglected to study. Il a négligé *d'étudier*.

I forgot to bring my books. J'ai oublié *d'apporter* mes  
livres.

He pressingly invited me to Il m'a pressé *de* dîner avec  
dine with him. lui.

Did you promise to go thi- Avez-vous promis *d'y* aller?  
ther?

I advised him to be more Je lui ai recommandé *d'être*  
*diligent*. plus diligent.

- She refused *to speak to him.* Elle refusa *de lui parler.*  
 I intend *to go to France next year.* Je me propose *d'aller en France l'année prochaine.*  
 Endeavour *to please her.* Tâchez *de lui plaire.*  
 Take care not *to tell her that you know me.* Gardez vous *de lui dire que vous me connaissez.*  
 I repent *of having sold my book.* Je me repens *d'avoir vendu mon livre.*  
 She cannot forbear *lying.* Elle ne peut s'empêcher *de mentir.*  
 Make haste *to prevent him.* Hâtez-vous *de le prévenir.*  
 Make haste *to write your letter.* Dépêchez-vous *d'écrire votre lettre.*  
 He flatters himself that he knows almost every thing which happens in the city. Il se flatte *de savoir presque tout ce qui se passe dans la ville.*  
 I take upon myself the care *of speaking to him of it.* Je me charge *de lui en parler.*  
 [4] He learns fencing. Il apprend *à faire des armes.*  
 You love to play. Vous aimez *à jouer.*  
 He seeks *to wrong me.* Il cherche *à me faire tort.*  
 Give me some drink. Donnez-moi *à boire.*  
 I am disposed *to obey you.* Je suis disposé *à vous obéir.*  
 He has encouraged him *to undertake that work.* Il l'a encouragé *à entreprendre cet ouvrage.*  
 She has engaged him *to play.* Elle l'a engagé *à jouer.*  
 You have excited me *to eat.* Vous m'avez excité *à manger.*  
 I have exhorted him *to be wise and dutiful.* Je l'ai exhorté *à être sage & obéissant.*  
 Help me *to write my letters.* Aidez-moi *à écrire mes lettres.*  
 Think *of paying me.* Songez *à me payer.*  
 You expose yourself *to fall sick.* Vous vous exposez *à tomber malade.*  
 He prepares himself *for his departure.* Il se prépare *à partir.*  
 She delights in tormenting me. Elle se plaît *à me tourmenter.*  
 [5] I did not do it *to make you uneasy.* Je ne l'ai pas fait *pour vous faire de la peine.*



I told him it *to inspire him* Je le lui ait dit *pour lui donner* de l'émulation.

He came *to see you.* Il vint *pour vous voir.*

In order *to be happy, one* *Pour être heureux, il faut* must be contented. *être content.*

I shall do every thing *to* Je ferai tout *pour* vous plaire. please you.

[6] I shall oblige him *to do* Je l'obligerai *à* le faire. it.

You will never oblige him *to* Vous ne l'obligerez jamais *à* submit to her. se soumettre *à elle.*

Oblige him *to see her.* Obligez le *à* la voir.

He was obliged *to do it.* Il fut obligé *de* le faire.

I was obliged *to go out.* Je fus obligé *de* sortir.

He will be obliged *to see her.* Il sera obligé *de* la voir.

You will oblige me *if you* Vous m'obligerez, *si\** vous will please to excuse me *to her.* voulez bien m'excuser *auprès d'elle.*

He aims *to hurt me.* Il tâche *à* me nuire.

They aim *to deceive you.* Ils tâchent *à* vous tromper.

I shall endeavour *to bring* Je tâcherai *de* le ramener *à* him to his duty. son devoir.

Do not tarry. Ne tardez pas *à* revenir.

Do not defer *to speak to her.* Ne tardez pas *à* lui parler.

Why do you delay going *thither?* Pourquoi tardez-vous *à* y aller ?

I long *to see her.* Il me tarde *de* la voir.

I shall begin *to apply myself* Je commencerai *à* m'appli- to the French language. quer au Français.

I begin *to understand French* Je commence *à* comprendre a little. un peu le Français.

He began *to have more care.* Il commença *d'avoir* plus de soin.

We began by breakfasting *Nous commençâmes par dé-* before we went out. jeûner avant de sortir.

I shall not fail to do what *Je ne manquerai pas de faire* you please. ce qui vous plaît.

Do not fail *to be in such a* Ne manquez pas *de vous* place. trouver en tel lieu.

He has failed *to do his duty.* Il a manqué *à* faire son de- voir.

\* See the note to the sixth rule, p. 245.

- [7] You are in the wrong *to* complain. Vous avez tort *de* vous plaindre.
- You are in the right *to* be angry with him. Vous avez raison *d'être* fâché contre lui.
- Have you not a mind *to* take a little walk? N'avez-vous pas envie *de* faire un petit tour de promenade?
- I have leave *to* go out. J'ai permission *de* sortir.
- I want *to* see him and speak to him. J'ai besoin *de* le voir & *de* lui parler.
- You have no occasion *to* complain of me. Vous n'avez pas sujet *de* vous plaindre de moi.
- Take care *to* do your exercise. Ayez soin *de* faire votre thème.
- [8] I am very glad *to* see you in good health. Je suis bien aise *de* vous voir en bonne santé.
- I am overjoyed *to* hear that all your family is well. Je suis ravi *d'apprendre* que toute votre famille se porte bien.
- I am sorry *to* see you sick. Je suis fâché *de* vous voir malade.
- He is very near his death. Il est sur le point *de* mourir.
- He is very capable *of* teaching mathematics. Il est très capable *d'enseigner* les mathématiques.
- He is incapable *of* wronging any body. Il est incapable *de* faire tort à qui que ce soit.
- She is worthy *to* be loved. Elle est digne *d'être* aimée.
- I am tired *with* writing. Je suis las *d'écrire*.
- Are you able *to* walk? Etes-vous en état *de* marcher?
- Are you sure *of* pleasing her? Etes-vous sûr *de* lui plaire?
- It is easy *to* guess. Cela est aisé à deviner.
- This fruit is good *to* eat. Ce fruit est bon à manger.
- He is much inclined *to* slander. Il est très enclin à médire.
- You are not exact *in* learning your lesson. Vous n'êtes pas exact à apprendre votre leçon.
- Are you ready *to* go? Etes vous prêt à partir?
- She plays upon the harpsichord very well. Elle est habile à toucher du clavecin.
- I am assiduous *in* reading *Telemachus*. Je suis assidu à lire *Télémaque*.

He is the first ~~is~~ prattling. Il est le premier à babiller.  
 It is to no purpose *to* speak C'est temps perdu *que* le lui  
 to him about it. en parler.

[9] It is a misfortune to have C'est un malheur *que* de  
 no friends. n'avoir point d'amis.

It is a folly to despise others. C'est une folie *que* de mé-  
 priser les autres.

[10] I have *just* breakfasted. Je viens de déjeuner, *ou* je  
 ne fais *que* de déjeuner.

I have *just* written my let- Je viens d'écrire ma lettre,  
 ter. *ou* je ne fais *que* d'écrire  
 ma lettre.

I have *just* left him. Je viens *de* le quitter, *ou* je  
 ne fais *que* de le quitter.

He had *just* dined. Il venait *de* diner, *ou* il ne  
 faisait *que* de diner.

She was *just* arrived. Elle venait d'arriver, *ou* elle  
 ne faisait *que* d'arriver.

We had *just* got out of the Nous venions *de* sortir du  
 coach. carrosse, *ou* nous ne fai-  
 sions *que* de sortir du car-  
 rosse.

They had *just* finished their Ils venaient *de* finir leur jeu,  
 play. *ou* ils ne faisaient *que* de  
 finir leur jeu.

[11] When I began *to* write Quand je vins à écrire ma  
 my letter. lettre.

He began *to* speak of his Il vint à parler de ses rich-  
 riches. esses.

As soon as she began *to* Dès qu'elle vint à parler de  
 speak of her misfortunes. ses malheurs.

She was very much surpris- Elle fut fort surprise quand  
 ed when we began *to* re- nous vinmes à lui racon-  
 late to her that story. ter cette histoire.

When his father shall know Quand son père *viendra* à  
 of it. savoir cela.

If his wife should know his Si sa femme *venoit* à savoir  
 libertinism. son libertinage.

If you should speak to her Si vous *veniez* à lui en par-  
 about it, tell her that I am ler, dites lui *que* je ne  
 not ignorant of it. l'ignore pas.

[12] It is your part *to* obey C'est à vous à m'obéir.  
 me.

- It is your part *to* play. C'est à vous à jouer.  
 It is my turn *to* walk out. C'est à moi à sortir.  
 It is his turn *to* stay at home. C'est à lui à rester au logis.  
 Whose turn is it *to* drink ? A qui est ce à boire ?  
 It is her turn *to* write. C'est à elle à écrire.  
 It is your turn *to* read. C'est à vous à lire.  
 It is not my business to correct him. Ce n'est pas à moi à le corriger.  
 It is not your business *to* meddle with it. Ce n'est pas à vous à vous en mêler.  
 It is not her business *to* find fault with it. Ce n'est pas à elle à y trouver, à redire.  
 It is not their business *to* take you from your work. Ce n'est pas à eux à vous distraire de votre ouvrage.  
 [13] He has too much pride *to* own his faults. Il a trop d'amour propre *pour* avouer ses fautes.  
 She has still beauty enough *to* please. Elle a encore assez de beauté *pour* plaire.  
 You have not money enough *to* bear great expenses. Vous n'avez pas assez d'argent *pour* faire de grandes dépenses.  
 He is too proud *to* ask her pardon. Il est trop orgueilleux *pour* lui demander pardon.  
 It will be sufficient *to* write to me about it. Ce sera assez *de* m'en écrire.  
 It will be sufficient *to* tell it him in two words. Ce sera assez de le lui dire en deux mots.  
 It is sufficient *to* warn her. C'est assez *de* l'avertir.  
 It is too much *to* ask of me. C'est trop me demander.  
 It was insulting him too much. C'était trop l'insulter.  
 It was too much *to* deplore your misfortune. C'était trop déplorer votre malheur.  
 Cease from conversing with him ; it is *to* do him too much honour. Cessez de lui parler ; c'est lui faire trop d'honneur.  
 [14] I saw *her* and spoke *to her*. Je l'ai vue & *lui* ai parlé.  
 That play pleased & charmed the *Queen*. Cette comédie plut à la *Reine* & la charma.  
 She pleases and charms him. Elle lui plaît & l'enchanté.

## CHAPTER VI.

*Rules and Observations upon Impersonal Verbs.*

1. IMPERSONAL verbs are used only in the third person singular: they are twofold: some are impersonal by their nature, and are never used but in the third person singular; as, *il neige, il pleut*: others are sometimes impersonal, sometimes personal. They are personal when *il*, in French, has a relation to some foregoing noun; as, drawing is an honest amusement, it becomes young ladies; *le dessein est un amusement honnête, il convient aux jeunes demoiselles*; *il* has a relation to *dessein*. They are impersonal when *il* has no relation to a foregoing noun; as, *le dessein est un amusement honnête, il convient que les jeunes demoiselles s'y appliquent*.

2. The verb *il pleut*, besides the use made of speaking of rain, may be used impersonally in a figurative sense, speaking of several other things which may be supposed to fall like rain: as, *il pleut des pierres, il pleut de la manne dans le désert*. And in a familiar discourse to express the eagerness of departing, we sometimes say proverbially, *je partirai demain, quand il pleuvrait des halebardes*. In this case when it follows the substantive, it agrees with it in number, according to the FRENCH ACADEMY; so speaking of a bloody battle, we may say, *les mousquetades y pleuvaient*; so spake cardinal *Mazarin's* relations who used to send them a great quantity of money: *il faut croire que l'or & l'argent pleuvent en France*.

3. Some personal verbs are used impersonally in the third person singular, though their following nominative be in the plural: as, many occasions are found; *il se trouve bien des occasions, or il y bien des occasions*.

4. *Il y a*, there is, there are, some are, many are, may be followed by a noun in the plural; as, there are few people who apply themselves to their own tongue; *il y a peu de gens qui s'appliquent à leur propre langue*.

Sometimes *en* is added to it: in this case it has a relation to some preceding noun: as, *il y a des gens qui apprennent le Latin: il y en a qui négligent leur propre langue*; there are people who learn Latin: there are some who neglect their own tongue.

When we speak of something present, as if pointed with

the finger, *there is*, is rendered into French by *voilà* : as, there is a handsome lady ; *voilà une belle dame*.

N. B. *Vaugelas*, and after him the Abbé *Girard*, will not allow that *il est* might be used instead of *il y a*. However, they agree that *il n'est* may sometimes be used instead of *il n'y a*, & sometimes not : as in this following example, there is nothing which pleases me more, *il n'est rien qui me plaise davantage* : whereas it is not used in the following, there is but honour in serving one's country, *il n'y a que de l'honneur à servir sa patrie*, and not *il n'est que* ; but as grammarians are divided here among themselves, I advise the learner to make use of *il y a* instead of *il est* and particularly of *il n'y a* instead of *il n'est* ; until he is perfect enough in the French tongue to know in what circumstance the one may be used instead of the other ; and even *Vaugelas*, *Corneille*, and the Abbé *Girard* do not agree about such circumstances.

5. The impersonal *il y a* is likewise used to denote a quantity of time. In this case, ago, since, these, and for, are rendered into French by *il y a* beginning the sentence ; afterwards comes the number, followed by *que* ; as, I have been in London these three years ; *il y a trois ans que je suis à Londres*. If the impersonal be transposed, *que* is omitted ; as, *je suis à Londres il y a trois ans*. In an interrogation—*combien y a-t-il, que*—is commonly used.

6. Verbs construed with the indeterminate pronoun *on*, are not properly impersonal, though used only in the third person singular ; because *on* may be resolved into a substantive ; as, *on parle*, or *les hommes parlent*. It may even be resolved into a pronoun : as, I will see you to-morrow ; *on vous verra demain*, or *je vous verrai demain* : consequently all verbs may be preceded by *on*, except those which are impersonal by their nature ; as, for example, we never say, *on neige*.

7. The auxiliary verb to be, followed by the adjectives necessary or requisite, when it may be resolved into *one must*, is commonly rendered into French by *il faut* with the following verb in the infinitive mood ; as, it is necessary to, or, one must love one's neighbour ; *il faut aimer son prochain*.

8. *Il faut*, signifying one's want, is followed by a substantive, preceded by one of these articles, *un, de, des, du, de la* : as, to write well, one must have good paper, ink, and pens ; pour bien écrire, *il faut de bon papier, de bonne encre, & des bonnes plumes*. In this case, when a personal pronoun is expressed in English, it is put, in French, in the third case, between *il* and *faut* ; as, he wants books ; *il lui faut des livres*.

When a noun is expressed in English, signifying the subject

who wants, it is likewise put in the third case, but after the noun which is the object ; as, my brother wants books ; *il faut des livres à mon frère.*

9. The verbs, to be necessary, must and should, signifying duty, preceded by a personal pronoun, or any other noun, are rendered into French by the verbs *il faut, il faudrait, il faudra, &c.* according to the corresponding tense in English ; in this case *il faut* is followed by *que*, then comes the pronoun, or the noun ; and the verb, following *both*, is put in the subjunctive mood ; as, I must go, *il faut que j'aille* ; my brother must go, *il faut que mon frère aille.*

10. It is followed by with, is expressed in French by *il en est*, and the two following nouns are put in the second case and separated by *comme* ; as, it is with you as with me ; *il en est de vous comme de moi.*

*Rules and Observations upon Impersonal Verbs, exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| [1] <i>It is</i> very fine weather     | <i>Il fait</i> très beau temps au-jourd'hui. |
| How is the weather ?                   | Quel temps <i>fait il</i> ?                  |
| It rains, it snows, it freezes,        | <i>Il pleut, il neige, il gèle ;</i>         |
| it thaws, it thunders it               | dégèle, il tonne, il grêle.                  |
| hails.                                 |  |
| <i>It is</i> hot, <i>it is</i> cold.   | <i>Il fait</i> chaud, <i>il fait</i> froid.  |
| <i>It is</i> bad weather.              | <i>Il fait</i> mauvais temps.                |
| <i>It is</i> clear weather.            | <i>Il fait</i> un temps clair.               |
| <i>It is</i> dark weather.             | <i>Il fait</i> un temps obscur.              |
| The wind blows.                        | <i>Il fait</i> du vent.                      |
| [2] <i>It has</i> rained to-day as     | <i>Il a plu</i> à verse aujour-              |
| fast as it could pour.                 | d'hui.                                       |
| <i>It snows</i> in great flakes.       | <i>Il neige</i> à gros flocons.              |
| The moon shines.                       | <i>Il fait</i> clair de lune.                |
| <i>It is</i> dirty.                    | <i>Il fait</i> sale.                         |
| What o'clock <i>is it</i> ?            | Quelle heure <i>est il</i> ?                 |
| Tell me, if you please, what           | Dites-moi, s'il vous plaît,                  |
| o'clock <i>it is.</i>                  | quelle heure <i>il est</i> ?                 |
| <i>It is</i> twelve o'clock (at noon.) | <i>Il est</i> midi.                          |

- It is a quarter past twelve.* *Il est midi & un quart.*  
*It is half an hour past twelve.* *Il est midi & demi.*  
*It is three quarters past twelve.* *Il est une heure moins un quart.*  
*It is one o'clock.* *Il est une heure*  
*It is a quarter past one.* *Il est une heure & un quart.*  
*It is half an hour past one.* *Il est une heure & demie.*  
*It is three quarters past one, &c.* *Il est deux heures moins un quart, &c.*  
*It is not late.* *Il n'est pas tard.*  
*It is early.* *Il est de bonne heure.*  
*It is time to go.* *Il est temps de partir.*  
 [3] *Reports are spread in the city, that—* *Il s'est répandu un bruit par la ville, que—*  
*Many opportunities are to be met with.* *Il se trouve bien des occasions.*  
 [4] *There are occasions, where delay is of the utmost consequence.* *Il y a des occasions, où le délai est de la dernière conséquence.*  
*There are few people who know themselves.* *Il y a peu de gens qui se connaissent eux mêmes.*  
*There are handsome women in London.* *Il y a de belles femmes à Londres.*  
*There is some danger in it.* *Il y a du danger.*  
*There is no doubt of it.* *Il n'y a point de doute.*  
*There is some profit to be hoped.* *Il y a du profit à espérer.*  
*Some books are very useful, many are very dangerous for youth.* *Il y a des livres fort utiles ; il y en a beaucoup de dangereux pour la jeunesse.*  
*Some women are very capricious.* *Il y a des femmes très capricieuses.*  
*There is a handsome lady.* *Voilà une belle demoiselle.*  
*There are fine oranges.* *Voilà de belles oranges.*  
*There are strange reasons.* *Voilà d'étranges raisons.*  
*There is a very rich shop.* *Voilà une boutique très riche.*  
 [5] *How long have you been in England ?* *Combien y a-t-il que vous êtes en Angleterre ?*



*How long is it since you saw him ?* *Combien y a-t-il que vous ne l'avez vu ?*

*How long has he been dead ?* *Combien y a-t-il qu'il est mort ?*

*I have been in England these three years.* *Il y a trois ans que je suis en Angleterre.*

*He has been dead these two years.* *Il y a deux ans qu'il est mort.*

*I have not seen him these four years.* *Il y a quatre ans que je ne l'ai vu.*

*She has been married for these ten years.* *Il y a dix ans qu'elle est mariée.*

*Her husband has been sick for these five years.* *Il y a cinq ans que son mari est malade.*

*My brother has made his fortune twenty years ago in the Indies.* *Il y a vingt ans que mon frère a fait sa fortune dans les Indes.*

*Where were you ten years ago ?* *Où étiez-vous il y a dix ans ?*

[7] *Every man should love his neighbour.* *Il faut aimer son prochain.*

[8] *I want pens.* *Il me faut des plumes.*

*I want nothing now.* *Il ne me faut rien à présent.*

*He wants time to learn his lesson.* *Il lui faut du temps pour apprendre sa leçon.*

[9] *You must go thither.* *Il faut que vous y alliez.*

*She must speak to him.* *Il faut qu'elle lui parle.*

*He must know it.* *Il faut qu'il le sache.*

*She must learn French.* *Il faut qu'elle apprenne le Français.*

*They must study.* *Il faut qu'ils étudient.*

*Are you not obliged to go out ?* *Ne faut-il pas que vous sortiez ?*

*Is he not obliged to accompany you ?* *Ne faut-il pas qu'il vous accompagne ?*

*He must not go out.* *Il ne faut pas qu'il sorte.*

*You must hold your tongue.* *Il faut que vous vous taisiez.*

*You should go and see him.* *Il faudrait que vous allassiez le voir.*

*It would be necessary for you to know him.* *Il faudrait que vous le connaissiez.*

- Would it not be necessary* for her to go thither ? *Ne faudrait-il pas qu'elle y allât ?*
- Would it not be necessary* for us to know your reasons ? *Ne faudrait-il pas que nous sussions vos raisons ?*
- It will be necessary* for you to speak to his father. *Il faudra* que vous parliez à son père.
- It will be necessary* for her to apply herself to history. *Il faudra* qu'elle s'applique à l'histoire.
- Will it not be necessary* for her to prevent him ? *Ne faudra-t-il pas qu'elle la prévienne ?*
- My brother must go to* France. *Il faut* que mon frère aille en France.
- My sister must stay at home.* *Il faut* que ma sœur reste au logis.
- [10] *It is* with poets as with painters. *Il en est* des poètes comme des peintres.
- It is* with you as with me. *Il en est* de vous comme de moi

---

## CHAPTER VII.

### *Rules and Observations upon the Participles.*

PARTICIPLES are either active or passive ; therefore I shall take notice of them separately in the two following sections.

### SECTION I.

#### *The active or present Participle.*

1. The participle active or present is always indeclinable : as, a woman fearing God, and loving her husband ; *une femme craignant Dieu & aimant son mari.* Except in a very few law terms.

2. Now-a-days we seldom make use of a participle active, except *étant* and *ayant*, which are by some used before a par-

ticiple passive : as, having met with his brother he spoke to him ; *ayant rencontré son frère, il lui parla*. Except again, when it is preceded by *en* : as, in going, or whilst I was going, *en allant* ; in eating, or whilst I was eating, *en mangeant*. Some call it a gerund, and they are in the right. However, it matters very little how it is called.

*En*, in this case, may be resolved into English by whilst, or when, which may likewise be rendered into French by *comme, lorsque, or quand* : the first requires the following verb in the imperfect ; the two others in the present, or in any other tense : as, I never speak in eating, or whilst, or when I eat ; *Je ne parle jamais, lorsque, ou quand je mange*, and not, *comme je mange*. But we say, as I was at dinner, he came to see me ; *comme je dinais, il vint me voir*.

3. Some participles are, by use, become adjectives, and some substantives : as, a detracting man, a detracting woman ; *un homme médisant, une femme médisante, or un médisant, une médisante*. In such a case they are declinable.

4. Participles which are become adjectives by use, take sometimes after them the second or third case ; thus we may say with *Vaugelas*, in his remarks on the French tongue, these stuffs are not at all like those I saw yesterday, *ces étoffes ne sont pas approchantes de celles que je vis hier* : his, or her, temper is so repugnant to mine, *that—son humeur est tellement répugnante à la mienne, que—*But they never take the first case, therefore we do not say, these are reasons concluding the same thing, *ce sont des raisons concluant la même chose* ; though we say, *ce sont des raisons concluantes*.

In the last, and in all doubtful cases, it is better to resolve the participle into a verb, with the pronoun relative preceding it ; as, *ce sont des raisons qui concluent la même chose* : or without a pronoun as in other examples cited by *Vaugelas* : *ces étoffes n'approchent pas de celles que je vis hier* ; *son humeur répugne tellement à la mienne, que—*Therefore do not say with *Boyer*, I have seen them eating and drinking, *je les ai vu mangeant & buvant* ; or with *Vaugelas*, *mangeans & buvans*, but *je les ai vus qui mangeaient & buvaient*,

## SECTION II.

*The Participle Passive or Past.*

To show exactly in what instances the participle passive or past is declinable or not, makes one of the greatest difficulties of the French tongue. The following observations will set this nicety, hitherto so perplexed, in a clear light.

1. The participle passive is declinable, 1st, when it is used adjectively ; as, men despised ; *des hommes méprisés* : they are loved ; *ils sont aimés, ou elles sont aimées*.

2dly, It is declinable, when it is preceded by a noun or pronoun which it governs in the first case : as, the letters which I have received ; *les lettres que j'ai reçues*.

3dly, When with the auxiliary verb *être*, it forms a neuter reciprocal, or reflected verb, not governing a first case, or followed by any other word making but one sense with it : as, they have addicted themselves to trade ; *ils se sont adonnés au négoce*. But we do not say, she put herself to death, *elle s'est donné la mort* ; because *la mort* is a first case. If the verb has no governed word after it, the practice of the rule is still more certain.

The difficulty is to know whether the participle, followed by an infinitive mood, ought to agree with the foregoing noun or pronoun. As no grammarian explains this matter in a clear and intelligible manner,\* and as it is besides of great use, I shall give some observations about it in the following rule :

II. The participle, followed by an infinitive mood, is declinable if it governs the foregoing noun or pronoun ; if the noun or pronoun be governed by the infinitive mood,

\* Grammarians give false and inadequate rules about this matter. They say, commonly, that the participle passive is indeclinable when a pure infinitive follows it : by a pure infinitive they understand an infinitive used without a preposition or any other word. How much they are in the wrong appears by the examples of the second rule.

Some say, that "the participle is indeclinable, when the pronoun is governed of a verb coming after the tense compound, and not of the tense compound." This rule is not clear, and leaves a learner in darkness ; neither is he able to know when the pronoun is thus governed ; consequently, this rule is very inadequate.

According to others, the participle is indeclinable when there follows immediately a verb in the infinitive. This rule is false in many cases.

the participle is indeclinable : this rule is plain and certain. Now, to know whether the participle, or the infinitive mood, governs the foregoing noun or pronoun, mind these following observations :

1st. If the infinitive be preceded by a preposition, the participle governs the noun or pronoun, if they may be put, without altering the sense, between the participle and the infinitive : as, the soldiers whom they have constrained to march ; *les soldats qu'on a contraints de marcher* : we may say, they have constrained the soldiers to march ; *on a contraint les soldats de marcher*. Again, the history which I gave you to read ; *l'histoire que je vous ai donnée à lire* : we may likewise say, I gave you the history to read ; *je vous ai donné l'histoire à lire*.

On the contrary, the infinitive governs the foregoing noun or pronoun, if they cannot be put before the participle and in the infinitive : as, we never ought to swerve from the good way which we began to follow ; *il ne faut jamais s'écarter de la bonne route que l'on a commencé à suivre* ; we cannot say, *on a commencé la bonne route à suivre* ; but *on a commencé à suivre la bonne route*.

2dly. If the infinitive be not preceded by a preposition, the participle governs the foregoing noun or pronoun, if the infinitive may be turned into the participle present in English, or rendered into French by *qui*, and the imperfect of the indicative mood, without altering the sense : as, I saw her painting ; *je l'ai vue peindre* : I heard her sing ; *je l'ai entendue chanter* : the ladies whom I saw passing ; *les dames que j'ai vues passer* : the soldiers whom I saw going ; *les soldats que j'ai vus partir*. In all the foregoing examples I may say, without altering the sense ; *je l'ai vue qui peignoit, je l'ai entendue qui chantoit, &c.*

On the contrary, the infinitive governs the noun or pronoun, when the infinitive cannot be turned into the participle present, or rendered by *qui* and the imperfect tense : thus, speaking of a lady, whose picture was drawn, we say, I saw her picture drawn ; *je l'ai vu peindre* : of a song, I heard it sung ; *je l'ai entendu chanter* : several ladies came to the door, I did not suffer them to be refused ; *plusieurs dames se sont présentes à la porte, je ne les ai pas laissé renvoyer*.

III. The participle passive is indeclinable. 1st, When followed immediately by another participle past : as, his disobedience had mounted to the highest pitch of insolence ; *sa désobéissance s'est trouvé montée au plus haut point de l'insolence.*

2dly, When it is immediately followed by *que* or *qui* : as, the consequence which I intended that you should draw from it ; *la conséquence que j'ai prétendu que vous en tirassiez.*

3dly, When the participle and the auxiliary verb are used impersonally : as, the hot weather we have had ; *les chaleurs qu'il a fait.*

4thly, When it cannot be joined to a substantive, as its adjective ; therefore the participles *parlé, agi, été, craint, plaint, &c.* are never declined.

5thly, When it is followed by its case governed : as, I have received the letters ; *j'ai reçu les lettres.*

6thly, The participles *pu* from *pouvoir, voulu, from vouloir*, either because they are not used adjectively, or because an infinitive is understood, which governs the preceding noun : as, I made all the endeavours I could : *j'ai fait tous les efforts que j'ai pu : faire* is understood after *pu*.

IV. It is the opinion of some grammarians, that when the subject or nominative case of the verb comes after, the participle is indeclinable ; but good authors, such as the Abbés *Girard* and *d'Olivet*, Messieurs *Duclos, Marmontel, &c.* make it declinable : as, there is a good lesson which our misanthrope has received ; *voilà une bonne leçon qu'a reçu notre misanthrope ; Marmontel : the impression which the recital of your misfortunes made on me ; l'impression que m'a faite le récit de vos malheurs : ibid.*

The participles in the foregoing examples are declinable, because, according to the second observation, the foregoing nouns are governed by the participles. However, it is, generally speaking, better to put the nominative before the verb, particularly in reflected verbs.

V. The participle is commonly indeclinable, when it is followed by an adjective which it governs, and which has a relation to a preceding noun, and makes a part of it : as, Amasis is the only one of the Egyptian kings *who conquered the isle of Cyprus and rendered it tribu-*

tary ; *Amasis est le seul des rois d'Egypte qui ait conquis l'île de Cypre & qui l'ait rendu tributaire* ; Rollin.

VI. According to the second observation we write, the ladies whom you came to see ; *les dames que vous êtes venu voir*, because the foregoing noun is governed by the infinitive.

The same is to be said, if a personal conjunctive pronoun be put before *allé* and *venu*, followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, thus we write, she came to see you ; *elle vous est venu voir*. Whereas, in transposing the pronoun, and putting it immediately before the word that governs it, which is more generally and better used, the participle is declinable, according to the third observation of the first rule ; thus we write, *elle est venue vous voir*.

N. B. In some cases of the last rules custom is divided ; grammarians on this head are far from agreeing with one another, and sometimes with themselves. The second rule and the observations may resolve many a doubtful case.

*Rules and Observations exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[Sect. I. 1] A man *fearing* Une homme *qui craint* Dieu.  
God.

A woman *loving* her hus- Une femme *qui aime* son  
band. mari.

A lady *applying* herself to Unedemoiselle *qui s'applique*  
study. à l'étude.

[2] He died in *eating* his Il mourut *en déjeunant*.  
breakfast.

Why do you speak *whilst* Pourquoi parlez-vous *en*  
*you are eating*? *mangeant*?

I saw him *whilst I walked* in Je le vis *en me promenant* au  
the Park. Parc.

Fortune is *fickle*. La fortune est *changeante*.

[3] She is a *charming lady*. C'est une demoiselle *charmante*.

She is a *slandering* woman. C'est une femme *médisante*.

[4] His or her temper is so Son humeur *répugne* telle-  
*repugnant* to mine, that— ment à la mienne, que—

- These are reasons *concluding* the same thing. Ce sont des raisons *qui concluent* la même chose.
- [Sect. II. 1] The idle are *despised*. Les paresseux sont *méprisés*.
- She was *endowed* in her youth with wit and beauty. Elle était dans sa jeunesse *douée d'esprit & de beauté*.
- Unpolite men are *hated* by all. Les impolis sont *hais* de tout le monde.
- He is *cherished* by the king. Il est *chéri* du roi.
- Have you *seen* the stockings I *bought*? Avez-vous vu les bas que j'ai *achetés*?
- I have seen the shirts you *bought*. J'ai vu les chemises que vous avez *achetées*.
- I shall speak to him of the affair you *communicated* to me. Je lui parlerai de l'affaire que vous m'avez *communiquée*.
- I have read the letter you *wrote* to me. J'ai lu la lettre que vous m'avez *écrite*.
- Have you read the books I *lent* you? Avez-vous lu les livres que je vous ai *prêtés*?
- It is a piece of news I have not read in any newspaper. C'est une nouvelle que je n'ai *lue* dans aucun papier de nouvelles.
- I have not yet read the papers you sent me. Je n'ai pas encore lu les papiers que vous m'avez *envoyés*.
- I had no time to give you an answer to the letters you *wrote* me. Je n'ai pas eu le temps de faire réponse aux lettres que vous m'avez *écrites*.
- These are not the same hats I *saw*. Ce ne sont pas les mêmes chapeaux que j'ai *vus*.
- You do not know the pain I *had* to persuade her. Vous ne savez pas la peine que j'ai *eue* à la persuader.
- Do you know the reasons he *told* me? Savez-vous les raisons qu'il m'a *dites*?
- The lace you *bought* is very fine. La dentelle que vous avez *achetée* est très belle.
- I have not learned the lesson you *gave* me. Je n'ai point appris la leçon que vous m'avez *donnée*.
- You speak to him of sciences which he has never *learned*. Vous lui parlez de sciences qu'il n'a jamais *appprises*.



You speak of a woman I *knew*. Vous parlez d'une femme que j'ai *connue*.

These are the things I never *foresaw*. Ce sont des choses que je n'ai jamais *prévues*.

You talk of an affair I have *not forgotten*. Vous parlez d'une affaire que je n'ai pas *oubliée*.

These are as good fruit as you ever have *eaten*. Ce sont d'aussi bons fruits que vous ayez jamais *mangés*.

'This is the best liquor I ever *drank*. C'est la meilleure liqueur que j'aie jamais *bue*.

These are the most honest people you ever *knew*. Ce sont les plus honnêtes gens que vous ayez jamais *connus*.

The jewels you *showed* me are very rich. Les bijoux que vous m'avez *montrés* sont très riches.

The woman he has *married* has brought him a handsome fortune. La femme qu'il a *épousée* lui a apporté un bien considérable.

There are the books you *lent* me. Voilà les livres que vous m'avez *prêtés*.

I have found my gloves again which I had *lost*. J'ai retrouvé mes gants que j'avais *perdus*.

It is a thought I have *read* somewhere. C'est une pensée que j'ai *lue* quelque part.

She has *applied* herself to the French tongue. Elle s'est *appliquée* à la langue Française.

They have *addicted* themselves to trade. Ils se sont *adonnés* au commerce.

They have *ruined* themselves by foolish expenses. Ils se sont *ruinés* par de folles dépenses.

They have *drowned* themselves. Ils se sont *noyés*.

The garrison has *surrendered* at discretion. La garnison s'est *rendue* à discrétion.

She *gave* herself up to despair. Elle s'est *abandonnée* au désespoir.

She *presented* herself to me with all the charms of beauty. Elle s'est *présentée* à moi avec tous les charmes de la beauté.

The soldiers whom they have *constrained* to submit. Les soldats qu'on a *contraints* de se soumettre.

What is become of the books which I *gave* you to read? Que sont devenus les livres que je vous ai *donnés* à lire?

The lesson which I *gave* you to learn, is not difficult. La leçon que je vous ai *donnée* à apprendre, n'est pas difficile.

Where are the letters which I *gave* you to write? Où sont les lettres que je vous ai *données* à écrire?

I expect the ladies whom I *invited* to dinner to-day. J'attends les dames que j'ai *priées* de venir dîner aujourd'hui.

We ought not to swerve from the good way which we *began* to follow. Il ne faut jamais s'écarter de la bonne route que l'on a *commencé* à suivre.

The tongue which you *began* to learn is very useful. La langue que vous avez *commencé* d'apprendre, est fort utile.

The lady whom you *left off* seeing is very witty. La demoiselle que vous avez *cessé* de voir est fort spirituelle.

The history which I *began* to read is very entertaining. L'histoire que j'ai *commencé* à lire est très amusante.

I *saw* her painting. Je l'ai *vue* peindre.

I *heard* her sing. Je l'ai *entendue* chanter.

The ladies whom I *saw* passing. Les dames que j'ai *vuës* passer.

The soldiers whom I *saw* going. Les soldats que j'ai *vus* partir.

I *saw* them arriving. Je les ai *vus* arriver.

I *saw* her picture drawn. Je l'ai *vu* peindre.

It is a song which I *heard* sung this week. C'est une chanson que j'ai *entendu* chanter cette semaine.

Several ladies came to the door, I did not suffer them to be refused. Plusieurs dames ce sont présentées à la porte, je ne les ai pas *laissé* renvoyer.

The house which he *ordered* to be built, is very fine and well situated. La maison qu'il a *fait* bâtir, est très belle & très bien située.

What news have you *heard*? Quelle nouvelle avez-vous *entendu* dire?

- This is the news I have *heard*. Voila la nouvelle que j'ai *entendu* raconter.
- It is a thing that I have seen *done*. C'est une chose que j'ai *vu* faire.
- Have you seen the new suit of clothes which he *ordered* to be made for him? Avez-vous *vu* l'habit neuf qu'il a *fait* faire?
- [3] She has *seen* herself *betrayed* by her own relations. Elle s'est *vu* *trahie* de ses propres parents.
- They have *found* themselves *surrounded* by their enemies. Ils se sont *trouvés* *environnés* par leurs ennemis.
- The books I have *ordered* to be sent to me. Les livres que j'ai *ordonné* qu'on m'*envoyât*.
- The lesson which I *commanded* that you should learn. La leçon que j'ai *commandé* que vous *appriessiez*.
- The consequence which I *intended* that you should draw from it. La conséquence que j'ai *prétendu* que vous en *tirassiez*.
- I have been sick during the hot weather we *have had*. J'ai été malade pendant les chaleurs qu'il a *fait*.
- The rain we *have had* this week, has spoiled the roads. La pluie qu'il a *fait* cette semaine-ci, a gâté les chemins.
- I *have read* those books. J'ai *lu* ces livres-là.
- I *received* your letter. J'ai *reçu* votre lettre.
- Have you *seen* the Queen? Avez-vous *vu* la Reine?
- Why have you not *translated* your fable? Pourquoi n'avez-vous pas *traduit* votre fable?
- She has not *learned* her lesson. Elle n'a pas *appris* sa leçon.
- She *used* her best endeavours. Elle a *fait* tous les efforts qu'elle a *pu*.
- I have *granted* her all the pleasures she *desired*. Je lui ai *accordé* tous les plaisirs qu'elle a *voulu*.
- [4] The impression which the recital of your misfortunes *made* on me. L'impression que m'a *faite* le récit de vos malheurs.
- The trouble which your law-suit *gave* me. La peine que m'a *donnée* votre procès.

The letters which your brother <i>wrote</i> to me.	Les lettres que m'a <i>écrites</i> Monsieur votre frère.
The friends which your mother <i>procured</i> me.	Les amis que m'a <i>procurés</i> Madame votre mère.
The surprise which his presence <i>occasioned</i> me.	La surprise que m'a <i>occasionnée</i> sa présence.
[5] The English <i>rendered</i> themselves masters of Quebec.	Les Anglois se sont <i>rendu</i> maîtres de Québec.
They have <i>rendered</i> themselves famous in war.	Il se sont <i>rendu</i> fameux dans la guerre.
She has <i>rendered</i> herself celebrated by her wit and beauty.	Elle s'est <i>rendu</i> célèbre par son esprit & par sa beauté.
The garrison has <i>surrendered</i> prisoners of war.	La garnison s'est <i>rendu</i> prisonnière de guerre.
She is <i>come</i> to see us.	Elle est <i>venue</i> nous voir, <i>ou</i> elle nous est <i>venu</i> voir.
They are <i>gone</i> to see him.	Elles sont allées le voir, <i>ou</i> elles le sont <i>allé</i> voir.
They are <i>come</i> to see me.	Elles sont <i>venues</i> me voir, <i>ou</i> elles me sont <i>venu</i> voir.

## CHAPTER VIII.

*Rules and Observations upon Adverbs.*

1. ADVERBS, being simple, are commonly placed before adjectives and participles: as, this wine is very good; *ce vin est très bon*. When they are compound, they are commonly placed after: as, he is arrived seasonably; *il est arrivé à propos*.

2. When adverbs simple or compound, are joined to a verb, they are commonly placed after it: as, she loves him tenderly; *elle l'aime tendrement*. But when the adverb is simple, and joined to a verb in a compound tense, it may be placed before or after the participle, though it is better to place it before: as, *elle l'a tendrement aimé*. Except *d'avantage*, more, which is always put after the participle.

The following adverbs, *bien, mieux, trop, mal, fort, &c.*

*jours, jamais*, and some more, are placed between the auxiliary and the participle; and when *jamais* or *toujours* meet with another adverb, they are always placed first: as, he always spoke well of you; *il a toujours bien parlé de vous*.

3. *Beaucoup, peu, trop, assez*, and such like adverbs of quantity, take sometimes before them the particles *de* or *à*, in the manner of nouns: as, it is the custom of many people; *c'est la coutume de beaucoup de gens*: of few people; *de peu de gens*: that happens to too many people; *cela arrive à trop de gens*: to too few people; *à trop peu de gens*.

In the negative sentence we generally make use of two negative words: as, *ne plus*, no more, *ne point*, not at all; *ne pas*, not; *ne rien*, nothing; *ne jamais*, never; *ne nullement*, by no means; *ne personne, ne pas un, ne aucun*, nobody, &c.

*Ne*, which is the first negation, does always follow the subject of the verb, and whatever depends on it; if the subject be a noun; as, man being born feeble, is never free from trouble; *l'homme étant né faible, n'est jamais exempt de peine*. If the subject be a pronoun personal, and the sentence interrogative, the sentence begins with *ne*; as, do you know? *ne savez-vous pas*? In compound tenses the second negation is always put between the auxiliary and the verb: as, I have not read your book; *je n'ai pas lu votre livre*. If the verb be in the infinitive mood, the two negatives come before it; as, not to tell you a lie; *pour ne pas vous dire un mensonge*.

6. We make use of the particle *ne*, without its second negative word in the following cases:

1st, When the negative *ni* follows; as, I neither love nor hate him, *je ne l'aime ni ne le hais*.

2dly, After the conjunctions *à moins que*, unless, *de peur que, de crainte que*, lest, or for fear that; as, unless he comes, *à moins qu'il ne vienne*.

3dly, After *que* preceded by the verbs *empêcher*, to hinder or keep from; *craindre*, to fear, and others expressing fear in mentioning an effect not desired; as, he fears that, or lest, he should come to-day, *il craint qu'il ne vienne aujourd'hui*.

But if one wishes that the thing spoken of should happen, then the verb that follows *craindre*, or such like, expressing fear, must be attended with two negatives; as, *il craint qu'il ne vienne pas aujourd'hui*.

4thly, Before *que* taken in the sense of *sinon*, besides, or

thing, but, only; as, I desire no recompense only, or but, the pleasure of obliging you, *je ne désire pour récompense, que le plaisir de vous obliger.*

5thly, After *que ne* taken in the sense of why not; as, why do not you answer? *que ne répondez-vous?*

6thly, After *ne savoir* used for *ne pouvoir*, or when it implies an uncertainty of the mind; as, I do not know whether he will succeed, *je ne sais s'il réussira.*

But if it implies a full ignorance of the thing, it requires commonly two negatives—as, I do not know if he is come, *je ne sais pas s'il est venu.*

7thly, After the verbs *oser*, *cesser*, and *pouvoir*, used negatively; as, I do not dare to write to him, *je n'ose lui écrire.* In an interrogative phrase a second negation is commonly added; as, *n'osez-vous pas lui écrire?*

8thly, After the verb *il y a*, followed by a compound of the present tense in a negative sentence; as, I have not been in Paris these ten years; *il y a dix ans que je n'ai été à Paris:* even if it be followed by any other tense, the second negative is still omitted; as, I had not been in Paris for a year; *il y avait un an que je n'avais été à Paris.*

9thly, When, in a negative sentence, the particle *de* signifies a part of time; as, I will not see him for a year; *je ne le verrai d'un an.*

10thly, There are some expressions where we indifferently make use of a single or double negative, particularly after *si*; as, *si vous ne voulez m'y conduire, or si vous ne voulez pas m'y conduire*; if you will not carry me thither: *si vous ne venez cette semaine, or, si vous ne venez pas cette semaine*: if you do not come this week, &c.

---

### *Rules and Observations upon Adverbs exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1] I saw him *very often.* Je l'ai vu *très souvent.*

[2] You are in *great haste.* Vous êtes *très pressé.*

You are arrived *very seasonably.* Vous êtes arrivé *fort à propos.*

*At present*, let us see. *A présent* voyons.

For the present, I am *very* easy. Pour le présent, je suis *très* tranquille.

*Now*, I will tell you. *Maintenant*, je vous dirai.

Come *to-day* and see me. Venez me voir *aujourd'hui.*

*Quick*, make haste. *Vite*, dépêchez-vous.

*I went yesterday* to the play. Je fus hier à la comédie.

I saw her *the day before yesterday*. Je la vis *avant-hier*.

I have known him *formerly*. Je l'ai connu *autrefois*.

He arrived *late*ly. Il arriva *dernièrement*.

She died *not long* ago. Elle mourut *depuis peu*.

You must write to her *before*. Il faut lui écrire *auparavant*.

I shall speak to you *to-morrow*. Je vous parlerai *demain*.

I shall have done *after to-morrow*. J'aurai fini *après demain*.

Come back *soon*. Revenez *bientôt*.

You shall be my friend *hereafter*. Vous serez *désormais* mon ami.

*Henceforth* it will always be so. *Dorénavant* il en sera toujours de même.

*At first* he spoke thus. *D'abord* il parla ainsi.

I have been *often* astonished. J'ai été *souvent* étonné.

She died *suddenly*. Elle mourut *subitement*.

Do you *sometimes* read romances? Lisez-vous *quelquefois* des romans?

I read them *very seldom*. J'en lis *très rarement*.

*On a sudden* he presented himself before my eyes. *Soudain* il se présenta devant mes yeux.

I shall come back, *the latest*, at ten o'clock. Je reviendrai à dix heures, *au plus tard*.

Run there *with all speed*. Courez y *au plus vite*.

I *never* consented to it. Je n'y ai *jamaïs* consenti.

I shall *always* be faithful to you. Je vous serai *toujours* fidèle.

It is done *for ever and ever*. C'en est fait *pour toujours*.

She torments him *continually*. Elle le tourmente *continuellement*.

I shall speak to him at *leisure*. Je lui parlerai à *loisir*.

I *commonly* breakfast at nine o'clock. Je déjeûne *ordinairement* à neuf heures.

At what o'clock do you *commonly* dine? A quelle heure dînez vous *communément*?

We dine *almost always* at three o'clock. Nous dinons *presque toujours* à trois heures.

I *never hardly* go out before dinner. Je ne sors *presque jamais* avant le dîner.

I shall meet him *one time or other*. Je le rencontrerai *tôt ou tard*.

You go to bed *too soon*.

Vous allez au lit *trop tôt*.

You rise *too late*.

Vous vous levez *trop tard*.

Rise *betimes*.

Levez-vous *de bonne heure*.

Have you not seen him *yet*? Ne l'avez vous *pas encore* vu?

We shall be then in the country. Nous serons *alors* à la campagne.

We shall *then* make ourselves merry. *Pour lors* nous nous divertirons.

From *that time* I perceived his cheating tricks. *Dès-lors* je m'appergus de ses fourberies.

I have not seen her *since*. Je ne l'ai pas vue *depuis*.

When will you come? *Quand* viendrez-vous?

Now and *then* we play at cards. Nous jouons aux cartes *de temps en temps*.

We have made ourselves merry *all the night*. Nous nous sommes divertis *toute la nuit*.

He has been robbed at *noon-day*. Il a été volé *en plein jour*, ou *en plein midi*.

I shall send it you *the first opportunity*. Je vous l'enverrai *au premier jour*.

I shall be ready to serve you *at all times*. Je serai prêt *en tout temps* à vous servir.

Where are you going? *Où* allez-vous?

Whence do you come from? *D'où* venez-vous?

Which way have you passed? *Par où* avez-vous passé?

Come *here*. Venez *ici*.

Get out *from hence*. Sortez *d'ici*.

Come *this way*. Venez *par ici*.

Stay *there*. Restez *là*.

Do not stir *from hence*. Ne bougez pas *de là*.

Go *that way*. Allez *par là*.

Look *above*. Regardez *là haut*.

Go *up stairs*. Allez *en haut*.

Your pen is *under here*. Votre plume est *ici dessous*.

See *yonder* that beautiful flower. Regardez *là-bas* cette belle fleur.

She comes *from above*. Elle vient *d'en haut*.

I come *from below*. Je viens *d'en bas*.

Take it *upward*. Prenez le par *en haut*.



Hold it <i>downward</i> .	Tenez-le <i>par en bas</i> .
This old house is very fine <i>within</i> .	Cette vieille maison est très belle <i>en dedans</i> .
This house is very fine <i>with-out</i> .	Celle-ci est très belle <i>en dehors</i> .
<i>How far</i> shall we go ?	<i>Jusqu'où</i> irons-nous ?
I have read this book <i>as far down as here</i> .	J'ai lu ce livre <i>jusqu'ici</i> .
Let us read <i>as far down as there</i> .	Lisons <i>jusque-là</i> .
You will find him <i>thereabouts</i> .	Vous le trouverez <i>aux environs</i> .
You go <i>very far</i> .	Vous allez <i>bien loin</i> .
He lives <i>hard by</i> .	Il demeure <i>tout proche</i> .
I bought it <i>just by</i> .	Je l'ai acheté <i>ici près</i> .
I have followed him <i>close</i> .	Je l'ai suivi <i>de près</i> .
Come <i>nearer</i> .	Approchez vous <i>de plus près</i> .
Go <i>before</i> , I will follow you.	Allez <i>devant</i> , je vous suivrai.
Walk <i>behind</i> .	Marchez <i>derrière</i> .
You will <i>nowhere</i> find the like.	Vous n'en trouverez <i>nulle part</i> de semblable.
Put this <i>over</i> , and that <i>under</i> .	Mettez ceci <i>dessus</i> & cela <i>dessous</i> .
He struck me <i>behind</i> .	Il m'a frappé <i>par derrière</i> .
You would be rich <i>elsewhere</i> .	Vous seriez riche <i>ailleurs</i> .
You will be contented <i>nowhere</i> .	Vous ne serez content <i>nulle part</i> .
She will be admired <i>everywhere</i> .	Elle sera admirée <i>par-tout</i> .
His house is <i>on this side</i> .	Sa maison est <i>en deçà</i> .
His garden is <i>on that side</i> .	Son jardin est <i>au delà</i> .
They seek for him <i>on all sides</i> .	On le cherche <i>de tous côtés</i> .
They have agreed <i>on both sides</i> .	Ils se sont accordés <i>de part &amp; d'autre</i> .
He runs <i>about and about</i> .	Il court <i>d'un côté &amp; d'autre</i> .
She goes <i>up and down</i> .	Elle va <i>ça &amp; là</i> .
Go <i>on the right</i> .	Allez <i>à droite</i> .
Do not go <i>on the left</i> .	N'allez pas <i>à gauche</i> .
Go <i>straight along</i> .	Allez <i>tout droit</i> .
He fell into the dirt <i>all along</i> .	Il tomba <i>tout de son long</i> dans la boue.

They went *together* to the coffee-house. Ils sont allés *ensemble* au *café*.

We treat one another *by turns*. Nous nous traitons *tour à tour*.

Let us drink *about*. Buons à *la ronde*.

Do not speak all *at once*. Ne parlez pas tous *à la fois*.

They run *helter skelter*. Ils courent *pêle mêle*.

They ran *in a crowd* to see the king. Ils coururent *en foule* pour voir le roi.

You set every thing down *topsy-turvy*. Vous mettez tout *sans dessus dessous*.

And he *likewise*. Et lui *aussi* ou *pareillement*.

Give him *ever so little* of it. Donnez-lui *en tant soit peu*.

You give him *much*. Vous lui en donnez *beau-coup*.

Give her but *little*. Ne lui en donnez *guères*.

I have *not much* of it. Je n'en ai *pas beaucoup*.

Have you *enough*? En avez-vous *assez*?

I have eaten *sufficiently*. J'ai mangé *suffisamment*.

You gave me *too much*. Vous m'en avez *trop* donné.

You give him *too little*. Vous lui en avez donné *trop peu*.

*By little and little* he will become a doctor. *Peu à peu* il deviendra *doc-teur*.

Do you owe him *so much*? Lui devez-vous *tant*?

I have owed him *more*. Je lui ai du *davantage*.

I may have it at another place *for less*. Je l'aurai *ailleurs* à *moins*.

I have been, *at most*, twice at her house. J'ai été deux fois chez elle *tout au plus*.

Do not fail to write to her *at least*. *Au moins*, ne manquez pas de lui écrire.

You bought it *too dear*. Vous l'avez acheté *trop cher*.

I have not sold it him *dear*. Je ne le lui ai pas vendu *cher*.

I am *infinitely* obliged to you. Je vous suis *infinitement* ob-ligé.

He was *almost* killed. Il fut *presque* tué.

You must ask it of him *by all means*. Il faut que vous le lui de-mandez *absolument*.

She is *tolerably well*. Elle se porte *passablement bien*.

**Why do you not answer me?** *Pourquoi ne me répondez-vous pas ?*

**How does your sister do ?** *Comment se porte Mademoiselle votre sœur ?*

She is *very well*. Elle se porte *très bien*.

She has been *very well*, since she went into the country. Elle se porte *très bien*, depuis qu'elle est à la campagne.

I am *admirably well* Je me porte *parfaitement bien* ou à *merveille*.

My mother is *very ill*. Ma mère se porte *très mal*.

You have done *wisely*. Vous avez agi *sagement*.

You accuse me *falsely*. Vous m'accusez *à faux*.

He *thoroughly* knows the French language. Il sait le Français *à fond*.

You will *hardly* persuade her. *A peine* la persuaderez vous.

She consented to it *with reluctance*. Elle y consentit à *regret*.

She went *against her will*. Elle y est allée à *contre cœur*.

I agree to it *heartily*. J'y consens *de bon cœur*.

She is *secure from all danger*. Elle est à *couvert* de tout danger.

I have told you my sentiment *openly*. Je vous ai dit mon sentiment à *découvert*.

He has given us a description *to the life*. Il nous a fait une description *au naturel*.

He fell *upon his back*. Il tomba à *la renverse*.

They went *groping* along. Ils allèrent à *tâtons*.

You have put on your stockings the *wrong side outwards*. Vous avez mis vos bas à *l'envers*.

He did it on *purpose*. Il l'a fait *exprès*.

I did not do it *designedly*. Je ne l'ai pas fait à *dessein*.

Do you speak *in good earnest* ? Parlez-vous *de bonne foi* ?

I tell it you *seriously*. Je vous le dis *sérieusement*.

I did it *in a joke*. Je le fis *pour rire*.

I did it *in jest*. Je l'ai fait *pour badiner*.

She told it *for fun*. Elle l'a dit *en badinant*.

You have done it *in a hurry*. Vous l'avez fait *à la hâte*.

- I have done it *unawares*. Je l'ai fait *par mégarde*.  
 You speak *at random*. Vous parlez *au hasard*.  
 Let the worst come to the *worst*, you can only lose *Au pis aller*, vous ne pouvez  
 your labour. perdre que votre peine.  
 They are *narrowly* lodged. Ils sont logés à *l'étroit*.  
 I shall *ingenuously* own it. Je l'avouerai *de bonne foi*.  
 I won it *fairly*. Je l'ai gagné *de bon jeu*.  
 I am *quite* persuaded of it. J'en suis *tout-à-fait* per-  
 suadé.  
 He would *by all means* make *Il voulut à toute force* me  
 me stay for dinner. faire rester à dîner.  
 Your book is *in all respects* *Votre livre est meilleur à*  
 better. *tous égards*.  
 I warn you *friendly*. Je vous avertis *en ami*.  
 Let us *amicably* settle our *Réglons nos affaires à l'ami-*  
 affairs. *able*.  
 He awaked *suddenly*. Il se réveilla *en sursaut*.  
 Let us live *in peace*. Vivons *en paix*.  
 You may sleep *quietly*. Vous pouvez dormir *en re-*  
*pos*.  
 Will you return *empty*? Vous en retournerez-vous à  
*vide*?  
 Be *free*, as if you were at *Agissez librement*, comme  
 your own house. si vous étiez chez vous.  
 She has resisted him *stoutly*. Elle lui a résisté *fort et*  
*ferme*.  
 Did you go thither *on foot*? Y allâtes-vous à *pied*?  
 She was *on horseback* when Elle était à *cheval*, quand je  
 I saw her. la vis.  
 Yes, *indeed*, I have been *Oui, en vérité*, j'y ai été.  
 there.  
 Perhaps he will come *to-day*. Peut-être viendra-t-il *au-*  
*jourd'hui*.  
 He *probably* does not know *Probablement* il ne le *sait*  
 it. *pas*.  
 Put them *separately*. Mettez-les *séparément*.  
 I have put them *out of the* Je les ai mis à *l'écart*.  
*way*.  
 I have left them *apart*. Je les ai laissés à *part*.  
 I know it *better* than you. Je le sais *mieux* que vous.  
 Trade goes on *worse and worse*. Le commerce va de *pis e*  
*24 pis*.

I know it *as well* as you. Je le sais *aussi bien* que vous.

My mother is *not so* sick as she was. Ma mère se porte *moins* mal qu'elle ne faisait.

His affairs go *better and better*. Ses affaires vont *de mieux en mieux*.

He shall *dearly* pay me for it. Il me le payera *cher*.

I am thirty years old, *neither more nor less*. J'ai trente ans, *ni plus ni moins*.

*Above all*, do not forget to bring paper. *Sur-tout*, n'oubliez pas d'apporter du papier.

I shall speak to her *in private*. Je lui parlerai *en particulier*.

[3] It is the opinion *of many* people. C'est l'opinion *de* beaucoup de gens.

It is the custom *of few* people. C'est la coutume *de* peu de gens.

That happens *to many* people. Cela arrive à beaucoup de gens.

[4] I have *not* learned my lesson. Je n'ai *pas* appris ma leçon.

I shall speak to him *no more*. Je *ne* lui parlerai *plus*.

I have *not* seen him *at all*. Je *ne* l'ai *point* vu.

He knows *nothing*. Il *ne* sait *rien*.

I *never* knew him. Je *ne* l'ai *jamais* connu.

*By no means* consent to it. *N'y* consentez *nullement*.

I did *not* see *any body* there. Je n'y ai vu *personne*.

[5] Have you *not* seen my brother? N'avez-vous *pas* vu mon frère?

Have you *not* written your exercise? N'avez-vous *pas* écrit votre thème?

Have they *not* yet breakfasted? N'ont-ils *pas* encore déjeuné?

Has she *not* consented to it? N'y-a-t-elle *pas* consenti?

Has he *not* spent all his money? N'a-t-il *pas* dépensé tout son argent?

Has he *not* sent for him? *Ne* l'a-t-il *pas* envoyé chercher?

[6] I *neither* love *nor* hate him. Je ne l'aime *ni* ne le hais.

I neither see her *nor* speak. Je ne la vois *ni* ne lui parle.  
to her.

*Unless* you come with me. *A moins* que vous *ne* veniez  
avec moi.

*Lest* he should die. *De crainte* qu'il *ne* mourût.

I shall hinder him from J'empêcherai qu'il *ne* joue,  
playing. ou, Je l'empêcherai de  
jouer.

I am afraid he is sick. Je crains qu'il *ne* soit ma-  
lade.

Be sure that he does *not* go Prenez garde qu'il *ne* sorte.  
out.

I am afraid he will *not* come Je crains qu'il *ne* vienne *pas*  
to-day. aujourd'hui.

Why do you fear she will *not* Pourquoi craignez-vous qu'*-*  
write to you ? elle *ne* vous écrive *pas* ?

She fears he does *not* love Elle craint qu'il *ne* l'aime *pas*.  
her.

She fears he is *not* in good Elle appréhende qu'il *ne* soit  
health. *pas* en bonne santé.

I desire no recompense *but* Je *ne* désire pour récom-  
the pleasure of obliging pense *que* le plaisir de  
you. vous obliger.

It is *only* through idleness. Ce n'est *que* par pure fai-  
néantise.

I know *only* him. Je *ne* connais *que* lui.

It was *but* a false alarm. Ce n'était qu'une fausse  
alarme.

It is *only* a jest. Ce n'est qu'un badinage.

We are *but* two. Nous *ne* sommes *que* deux.

I spoke *but* two words to him. Je *ne* lui ai dit *que* deux  
mots.

I learned French *but* three Je n'ai appris le Français  
months. *que* trois mois.

I heard *only* that news. Je n'ai appris *que* cette nou-  
velle.

We did stay there *only* one Nous n'y restâmes qu'une  
hour. heure.

She wrote *only* six lines. Elle n'a écrit *que* six lignes.

Why do *not* you answer ? Que *ne* répondez-vous ?

Why do *not* you study ? Que n'étudiez-vous ?

Why do *not* you write ? Que n'écrivez-vous ?

*Why does not he go thither* *Que n'y va-t-il lui-même ?*  
*himself ?*

*Why is he not come sooner ?* *Que n'est-il venu plutôt ?*

*Why does not she rise earlier ?* *Que ne se lève-t-elle plus matin ?*

*I cannot go thither.* *Je ne puis y aller.*

*I cannot keep pace with you.* *Je ne puis vous tenir pied.*

*You cannot speak to him to-day.* *Vous ne pouvez lui parler aujourd'hui.*

*I cannot stay any longer.* *Je ne peux rester plus longtemps.*

*Cannot you force him to it ?* *Ne pouvez-vous l'y forcer ?*

*I do not dare to speak to her.* *Je n'ose lui parler.*

*I do not dare to contradict him.* *Je n'ose le contredire.*

*He does not dare to take it upon himself.* *Il n'ose s'en charger.*

*She does not dare freely to declare her thoughts.* *Elle n'ose déclarer librement ses pensées.*

*Do not you dare to write to him ?* *N'osez-vous pas lui écrire ?*

*Does not he dare to go to the play ?* *N'ose-t-il pas aller à la comédie ?*

*Does not she dare to take the least pleasure ?* *N'ose-t-elle pas prendre le moindre plaisir ?*

*I have not seen him these ten years.* *Il y a dix ans que je ne l'ai vu.*

*I had not spoken to her for two years.* *Il y avait deux ans que je ne lui avais parlé.*

*I have not been at the play these three years.* *Il y a trois ans que je n'ai été à la comédie.*

*I had not been in the Park for four years.* *Il y avait quatre ans que je n'avais été au Parc.*

*I shall not see him for a year.* *Je ne le verrai d'un an.*

*I shall not speak to them for two years.* *Je ne leur parlerai de deux ans.*

## CHAPTER IX.

*Rules and Observations upon Prepositions.*

SOME prepositions govern the first case; some, the second; and some, the third.

1. The following prepositions exemplified govern the first case :

Avant	— le déluge,	— before the deluge.
après	— vous,	— after you.
devant	— lui,	— before him.
avec	— son frère,	— with his brother.
chez	— vous,	— at your home.
contre	— la muraille,	— against the wall.
dans	— la chambre,	— in the room.
en	— Angleterre,	— in England.
depuis	— son arrivée,	— since his arrival.
dès	— le commencement,	— from the beginning.
derrière	— le jardin,	— behind the garden.
dessus, ou dessous,	la table,	— over or under the table.
entre	— la porte,	— between the door.
envers	— son prochain,	— toward one's neighbour.
environ	— cent guinées,	— about a hundred guineas.
excepté ou hormis	son père,	— except his father.
moyennant	— une somme d'argent,	— for a sum of money.
nonobstant, ou } malgré }	sa mère,	{ notwithstanding, or in spite of his mother.
malgré	— elle,	— against her will.
outre	— son logement,	— besides his lodging.
par	— terre,	— by land,
parmi	— les riches,	— among the rich.
pendant	— l'hiver,	— during the winter.
durant	— la paix,	— during the peace.
pour	— sa pension,	— for his pension.
sans	— amis,	— without friends.
selon, ou } suivant }	votre avis	{ according to your ad- vice.



sous	— les décombres,	— under the rubbish.
sous	— le toit,	— under the roof.
touchant	— cette affaire,	— concerning that affair.
vers	— le soir,	— about the evening.
par deçà, ou par delà	} les Alpes,	{ on this side, or on that side of the Alps.
à travers,—		
	le corps,	— through the body.

The following prepositions govern the second case:

Autour	— de la maison,	— round, or about the house.
auprès	— de lui,	— near him.
faute	— d'argent,	— for want of money.
le long	— de la haie,	— along the hedge.
près ou proche,	du Palais Royal, near the Royal Palace.	
ensuite	— de quoi,	— after which.
hors	— du cabinet,	— out of the closet.
loin	— de ses ennemis,	— far from his enemies.
vis-à-vis	— de la Bourse,	{ over against the Exchange.

And all others which are composed of a substantive preceded either by *à*, *au*, or *en*, except *à travers*, which governs the first case: as above.

3. The following prepositions govern the third case:

Conformément à l'usage,	— agreeable to custom.
quant	— à moi, — as for my part.
jusqu'aux	— nues, — to the clouds.
par rapport	à ses pratiques, by reasons of his customers.

### Remarks upon Prepositions.

1. Some prepositions are placed before infinitives, as well as before nouns; some when placed before infinitives, have no prepositions after them, others have the preposition *de* and some the preposition *d*. Those which take no preposition after them before an infinitive, are *après*, *par*, *sans*, and *pour*; as, after having talked without book, *après avoir parlé sans savoir* ce qu'il disait. Those which take the preposition *de* after them before an infinitive, are *hors*, *hormis*, *excepté*, *à la réserve*, *loin*, *au lieu*, *faute*, *d* force, *au péril*, and perhaps some others: as, far from blaming you, *loin de vous blâmer*. Those which take the particle *d*, are *sauf* and *jusque*: as, I can but begin again, *sauf à recommencer*.

2. *En* is never followed by the article, though we say, in a

familiar way of speaking, he is dead, *il est alle en l'autre monde* ; upon what account, *en l'honneur de quel saint*.

*Dans* is always followed by the article, except before possessive pronouns, proper names of authors quoted, and proper names of towns : as, I have read it in Cicero's, *je l'ai lu dans Cicéron* ; seek in my pocket, *cherchez dans ma poche*. We indifferently make use of *en* or *dans* before personal pronouns : as, in him, *en lui*, or *dans lui*. But we say, *penser en soi-même*, to reflect within one's self.

*En*, before nouns of time, signifies the time employed in doing a thing ; and *dans*, the time after expiration of which the things will be done : as, I could do it in eight days, *of I* would spend no more than eight days in doing it, *je le ferais en huit jours* ; I will do it eight days hence, *je le ferai dans huit jours*.

4. *Chez*, followed by a pronoun, or a proper name of a person, signifies somebody's house : as, *hè is in my house*, in your house, &c. *il est chez moi, chez vous, &c.* It is preceded by *de* when it signifies coming from : as, I come from your house, *je viens de chez vous*.

5. *Dedans, dehors, dessus, dessous, and auparavant*, are always adverbs ; and never prepositions : consequently they have no case after them, except when *dedans* and *dehors, dessus* and *dessous*, are either joined together, or have the particle *de* or *par* before them ; as, both within and without the house, *dedans & dehors la maison* ; both upon and under the chair, *dessus et dessous la chaise* ; from under the bed, *de dessous le lit*.

6. When the definite article precedes *dedans* or *dehors, dessus* or *dessous*, those words are used substantively, and consequently require the following noun in the second case ; as, the inside, or the outside of the house, *le dedans ou le dehors de la maison*.

7. *Jusques*, or rather *jusque*, (to, as far as, till,) coming before a vowel, its final *e* or *es* is omitted, and an apostrophe is put in its stead : as, to death, *jusqu' à la mort*. This is to be observed even in declamation ; as, how long ? *jusqu' à quand ?* and not *jusques à quand ?* as likewise the other conjunction till, until : as, *jusqu' à ce que*, which govern the subjunctive ; and not *jusques à ce que*.

8. Even, or very, in English, is sometimes rendered into French by *jusqu' à* ; as, even the king, *jusqu' au roi*. In this sense it signifies an emphatic expression of a collection or universality of objects, either mentioned or understood ; as, when I say, even the kings are mortal, *jusqu' aux rois sont mortels* ; it signifies all men, even kings are mortal, *tous les hommes jusqu' aux rois sont mortels*.

9. *Sauf*, which signifies an exception to something, governs the first case, speaking of things ; as, without prejudice of his

claim, *sauf son droit*. It governs the third case, speaking of persons; as, *sauf au demandeur à se pourvoir*, but the plaintiff, or petitioner, is at liberty to sue or make application. A law expression.

10. When *before* signifies opposite to, in the presence of, or denotes precedency, it must be rendered into French by *devant*; as, opposite to your house, *devant votre maison*; in the presence of the king, *devant le roi*; dukes are before earls, or have the precedency of earls, *les ducs ont le pas sur les comtes*; its contrary is *derrière*, behind. In all other cases, *before* is rendered into French by *avant*; as, we were happy before the war, *nous étions heureux avant la guerre*; virtue must be preferred to every thing, *la vertu doit aller avant tout*: its contrary is *après*, after.

11. *Avant*, followed by *que*, is a conjunction, which governs the subjunctive: as, before you were born, *avant que vous fussiez né*; followed by *de*, it governs the infinitive; as, before death, *avant de mourir*.

12. *Près, auprès*, near, govern the 2d case, though we may say, in common conversation near St. Paul's, *près l'église*, St. Paul. *Près* must always be used instead of *auprès*, speaking of time or age: as, it is near twelve o'clock, *il est près de midi*; she is near thirty years old, *elle a près de trente ans*.

13. As custom will not always suffer *auprès* to be used, when speaking of places, particularly after *trop, si, assez, plus, bien*, I advise the learner to make use of *près*: as, he lives near the church, *il demeure près de l'église*; though *auprès* may be indifferently used in such a case.

14. *Près*, in the sense of save, excepting, governs the third case, and must be placed after the noun which it governs: as, except a crown, *à un écu près*; excepting that, *à cela près*.

15. *Auprès* must always be used instead of *près*, 1st, when we speak of somebody put near another, as, his master, friend, counsellor, or servant; as, *j'ai mis mon fils auprès de mon frère*, I have put my son near my brother, *viz.* as his tutor, master, friend.

2dly, When we mention in what esteem a person is with another, or what interest he has with him: as, he is in favour with the king, my lord, that lady, *il est bien auprès du roi, de monseigneur, de cette dame*; he can do what he will with him, *il a tout pouvoir auprès de lui*.

3dly, When we mention by whom a person is entertained, sheltered, &c.: as, he is gone to live with him, *il s'est retiré auprès de lui*; he is quite safe with him, *il est en sureté auprès de lui*.

16. The prepositions to and towards, when they signify in regard to, must always be rendered into French by *envers*:

as, he is ungrateful to God and men, *il est ingrat envers Dieu & envers les hommes*. In all other cases towards must be rendered by *vers*; as, he went towards Islington, *il est allé vers Islington*. *Vers* signifies likewise about; as, about the beginning of the spring, *vers le commencement du printemps*.

17. When from and to denote simply the distance from one place to another, they are rendered into French by *de* and *à*; as, it is five miles from London to Greenwich, *il y a cinq milles de Londres à Greenwich*. When they denote the quality of the distance, they are rendered by *depuis* and *jusque*; as, he walked from London to Greenwich, *il alla à pied depuis Londres jusqu'à Greenwich*. When they denote succession of place, they are rendered by *de* and *en*; as, he goes from town to town, *il va de ville en ville*.

18. A, each, and every, before a noun denoting distribution of people, time, or place, are rendered into French by *par*; as, two crowns a piece, *deux écus par tête*; three guineas a week, *trois guinées par semaine*; four shillings a mile, *quatre chelings par mille*.

19. *Vis-à-vis*, and *à l'opposite*, over against, govern the 2d case, though we say in common conversation, *vis-à-vis l'hôtel de ville*, over against Guildhall. The first is applied both to persons and things, the other to things only.

20. The participle active in English, preceded by without, is rendered into French by *sans*, sometimes followed by a substantive without an article; as, he spoke to him without fearing, *il lui parla sans crainte*. Sometimes by an infinitive without a preposition; as, *il lui parla sans craindre*. Sometimes by *que*, and the following verb in the subjunctive mood: as, *il lui parla sans qu'il craignût*: and even this last must be used when the participle active in English, is preceded either by a pronoun or any other noun.

21. As, in English, with a verb in the indicative mood, or on and upon with a participle active, are rendered into French, sometimes by *sur* followed by *ce que*; as, you wrote to me that, —*sur ce que vous m'avez écrit*, *que*—Sometimes by *comme*; as, as I walked in the Park, *comme je me promenais au Parc*. Sometimes by *à* followed by a substantive: as, on my arriving at London, *à mon arrivée à Londres*.

22. The prepositions *de*, *contre*, *sur*, *sous*, and *sans*, are commonly repeated in French, though they are not in English; as, there were many books upon the table and chair, *il y avait beaucoup de livres sur la table & sur la chaise*.

23. A, *par*, *pour*, *avec*, *dans*, &c. are commonly repeated when the nouns are not synonymous, or pretty nearly of the same signification; as, by mildness and reason, *par la douceur & par la raison*: *par* is repeated because *douceur* and *raison*

are neither synonymous, nor nearly of the same signification. But in this instance, in luxury and voluptuousness, *dans la mollesse & la volupté*, the preposition is, for the contrary reason, not repeated.

*Further Remarks upon the Prepositions à and de*

N. B. The preposition *de*, and the article *le*, are contracted into *du*; *de* and *les* into *des*; of the father, *du père*, of the fathers, *des pères* instead of *de le père*, *de les pères*; the same contraction of the article is made with the preposition *à*; to the father, *au père*, to the fathers, *aux pères*; instead of *à le père*, *à les pères*.

The preposition *de* (of) before, indicates the second state, *à* is the sign of the third state, see page 71.

1. Two nouns substantive in English joined together, and making but one word, the first expressing the manner or form of a thing, and likewise the use which it is designed for, the first must be the second in French, with the preposition *à* before it, or it must be changed into a verb in the infinitive mood; as, a dining-room, *une salle à manger*; a patch-box, *une boîte à mouches*. But if the first expresses the matter which the thing spoken of is made of, it requires the preposition *de*: as, silk stockings, *des bas de soie*; a silver pot, *un pot d'argent*.

2. *A* is sometimes used, 1st, instead of *at*, or *to*, before names of places, which admit of no article; as, *vivre à Paris*, *aller à Londres*, *s'arrêter à Amsterdam*.

2dly, Instead of *with*: as, to paint with oil, *peindre à l'huile*.

3dly, Instead of *for*: as, a coach for six persons, *un carrosse à six places*.

4thly, Instead of *after*: as, to live after the English fashion, *vivre à l'Anglaise*.

5thly, Instead of *on*: as, on the right hand, *à main droite*; on the left hand, *à main gauche*.

6thly, Instead of *in*: as, a suit in fashion, *un habit à la mode*.

7thly, Instead of *by*: as, step by step, *pas à pas*.

8thly, Instead of *according to*, followed by the substantive *avis*; as, according to my opinion, *à mon avis*.

9thly, Instead of *to*: as, to judge of him by his mien, *à juger de lui par la mine*.

10thly, Instead of *at*: as, at two o'clock, *à deux heures*. It is sometimes used without being expressed in English.

3. *De* is often put after a substantive instead of *some*, expressed or understood; as, a bit of bread, of meat, *un morceau de pain, de viande*. Moreover it is sometimes used, 1st, after the indeterminate pronouns, *quelqu'un, personne, rien, quoi, &c.* before an adjective; as, there is nobody so lucky as he is, *il n'y a personne de si heureux que lui*; there is none

thing inexpressibly gracious in his discourses, il y a je ne sais quoi *de* gracieux dans ses discours.

2dly, Before the proper names of places, having no article, which one is going or coming from ; as, revenir *de* Paris, partir *de* Londres.

3dly, Instead of *in* : as, he went away in the night, il partit *de* nuit.

4thly, Before a participle past in such and the like expressions ; as, there were ten thousand of them killed or wounded, il y en eut dix mille *de* tués ou de blessés.

5thly, Instead of *by* : as, he is taller by the whole head, il est plus grand *de* toute la tête.

6thly, Instead of *with* : as, he ran with all his might, il courut *de* toutes ses forces.

7thly, Instead of *in, after, instead of* : as, he behaves in or after this manner, il se conduit *de* cette manière ; were I instead of you, si j'étais *de* vous.

8thly, Instead of *on* : as, to live on fish, vivre *de* poisson. It is likewise used without being expressed in English.

There are some other uses of the prepositions *de* and *d* ; it would be too tedious to relate them here, as having been sufficiently explained in the foregoing grammatical rules and observations.

---

*Rules and Observations upon Prepositions, exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1] I was here <i>before</i> you.	J'étais ici <i>avant</i> vous.
You are come <i>after</i> me.	Vous êtes venu <i>après</i> moi.
Get <i>out of</i> my sight.	Otez-vous <i>de devant</i> moi.
I saw it <i>behind</i> the house.	Je l'ai vu <i>derrière</i> la maison.
He went <i>with</i> his brother.	Il est allé <i>avec</i> son frère.
I have been <i>at</i> your house.	J'ai été <i>chez</i> vous.
Have you been <i>at</i> his house ?	Avez-vous été <i>chez</i> lui .
I have not been <i>at</i> her house.	Je n'ai pas été <i>chez</i> elle.
Why did you not come to our house ?	Pourquoi n'êtes-vous pas venu <i>chez</i> nous ?
He has succeeded <i>against</i> all likelihood.	Il a réussi <i>contre</i> toute apparence.
You will find my stockings <i>in</i> the closet.	Vous trouverez mes bas <i>dans</i> le cabinet.
He is <i>in</i> England.	Il est <i>en</i> Angleterre.

Since his arrival he has always been ill.	Depuis son arrivée il a toujours été malade.
I foresaw the consequences of it from the beginning.	J'en prévis les conséquences dès le commencement.
My knife is over or under the table.	Mon couteau est dessus ou dessous la table.
Let us share between us two.	Partageons entre nous deux.
Let us have charity towards our neighbours.	Ayons de la charité envers notre prochain.
I have spent about a thousand guineas.	J'ai dépensé environ mille guinées.
They are all dead, except my father.	Ils sont tous morts, excepté ou hormis mon père.
He will do it for a sum of money.	Il le fera moyennant une somme d'argent.
She likes him, notwithstanding his humour.	Elle l'aime nonobstant son humeur.
She would marry him in spite of all her relations.	Elle voulut l'épouser malgré tous ses parents.
I spend two guineas a week besides my lodging.	Je dépense deux guinées par semaine outre mon logement.
We travelled by land.	Nous voyageâmes par terre.
I left it among my papers.	J'e l'ai laissé parmi mes papiers.
We take a walk every day during the summer.	Nous nous promenons tous les jours pendant l'été.
The people suffer a great deal during war.	Le peuple souffre beaucoup durant la guerre.
I gave it for you.	Je l'ai donné pour vous.
He is without friends and money.	Il est sans argent & sans amis.
I have done according to your advice.	J'ai fait selon, ou suivant votre avis.
Eight men have been buried under the rubbish.	Huit hommes ont été ensevelis sous les décombres.
Leave that dish upon the table.	Laissez ce plat sur la table.
He spoke to me concerning that affair.	Il m'a parlé touchant cette affaire.
I shall go and see you about the evening.	J'irai vous voir vers le soir.

He has been run *through* the body. Il a reçu un coup d'épée à *travers* le corps.

[2] He rambles every night *about* the house. Il rode toutes les nuits *autour* de la maison.

A man starves *for want of* money. *Faute* d'argent, on meurt de faim.

He followed me *along* the hedge. Il me suivit *le long* de la haie.

There are fine buildings *along* the Thames. Il y a de beaux bâtimens *le long* de la Tamise.

Let us walk *along* the river. Promenons-nous *le long* de la rivière.

I met him near the royal palace. Je l'ai rencontré *près* du palais royal.

He followed me *out of* the city. Il me suivit *hors* de la ville.

I am *far* from my country. Je suis *loin* de mon pays.  
Come *near* me. Venez *auprès* de moi.

Keep yourself *near* the fire. Tenez-vous *auprès* du feu.

She lives *over-against* the Exchange. Elle demeure *vis-à-vis* de la Bourse.

*After* which there was a ball. *Ensuite* de quoi il y eut un bal.

I have suffered a great deal *on* her account. J'ai beaucoup souffert à *cause* d'elle.

She died, *to the great regret* of all her family. Elle mourut, *au grand regret* de toute sa famille.

Cut them *close* to the ground. Coupez-les à *fleur* de terre.

Sit down *near* my brother. Asseyez-vous à *côté* de mon frère.

He made his escape by *means* of the night. Il s'échappa à *la faveur* de la nuit.

The bridge was built *at the expense* of the city. Le pont fut bâti *aux dépens* de la ville.

He pretends to be in the *right*, in *spite* of good sense. Il veut avoir raison, *en dépit* du bon sens.

They dress themselves *after the French fashion*. Ils s'habillent à *la mode* de France, ou à la Française.

*As to* what you tell, I heard *no talk about* it. *A l'égard* de ce que vous dites, je n'en ai pas entendu parler.



**She has done it without the** *Elle l'a fait à l'insçu de sa*  
*knowledge of her mother.* *mère.*

**You shall not have it under** *Vous ne l'aurez pas à moins*  
*fifty guineas.* *de cinquante guinées.*

**He has sold his whole estate;** *Il a vendu tout son bien, a*  
*except a small house.* *la réserve d'une petite*  
*maison.*

**We are sheltered here from** *Nous sommes ici à l'abri de*  
*the rain.* *la pluie.*

**There has been a battle on** *Il y a eu une bataille en deçà*  
*this side of the Alps.* *des Alpes.*

**He went to the other side of** *Il est allé au delà des Pyré-*  
*the Pyrenees.* *nées.*

**Nobody is screened from** *Personne n'est à couvert de*  
*slander.* *la médisance.*

**Dukes are above earls.** *Les ducs sont au dessus des*  
*comtes.*

**I am below you.** *Je suis au dessous de vous.*

**Let us go and meet him.** *Allons au devant de lui.*

**He has favoured all his fam-** *Il a favorisé toute sa famille*  
*ily by his will, his wife* *par son testament, à l'ex-*  
*excepted.* *clusion de sa femme.*

**We have brought it about by** *Nous en sommes venus à*  
*strength of arms.* *bout à force de bras.*

**I shall defend you at the pe-** *Je vous défendrai, au péril*  
*ril of my life.* *de ma vie.*

**He was stopped in the mid-** *Il fut arrêté au milieu de la*  
*dle of the street.* *rue.*

**He ordered his country-** *Il a fait bâtir sa maison de*  
*house to be built even with* *campagne à rez de chaus-*  
*the ground.* *sée.*

**He lends money at the rate** *Il prête de l'argent à raison*  
*of five per cent.* *de cinq pour cent.*

**[3] As for my part, I do not** *Quant à moi, je ne m'en sou-*  
*care for it.* *cie pas.*

**They have been pursued as** *On les a poursuivis jusqu'*  
*far as the wood.* *au bois.*

**I do not like to remove on** *Je n'aime point à déloger,*  
*account of my customers.* *par rapport à mes pra-*  
*tiques.*

**[Rem. 1.] After having** *Après avoir parlé sans sa-*  
*talked without book.* *voir ce qu'il disait.*

To show you how much I am concerned for all your interests. *Pour vous montrer combien je prends part à vos intérêts.*

I give you leave to do whatever you please, *except* going out. *Je vous permets de faire tout ce qu'il vous plaira, hormis de sortir.*

Full liberty is granted him to spend his money, *but* not to squander it away. *Il a tout pouvoir de dépenser son argent, à la réserve de le prodiguer.*

*Far from* disapproving of your conduct, I would have done the same. *Loin de désapprouver votre conduite, j'aurais fait la même chose.*

He does nothing else but prattle, *instead* of learning his lesson. *Il ne fait que causer, au lieu d'apprendre sa leçon.*

*For want* of asking it of him you will lose your money. *Faute de le lui demander, vous perdrez votre argent.*

*By dint* of walking we arrived before night. *A force de marcher, nous arrivâmes avant la nuit.*

He has entered an action against him, *at the peril* of losing all his estate. *Il lui a intenté un procès au péril de perdre tout son bien.*

I shall tell her my sentiment, *at the risk* of displeasing her. *Je lui dirai mon sentiment, au risque de lui déplaire.*

I can *only* begin again. *Sauf à recommencer.*

He took *so* much liberty as to tell her that she had told a lie. *Il s'émancipa jusqu'à lui dire qu'elle en avait menti.*

I have read it *in* Virgil. *Je l'ai lu dans Virgile.*

I am sure that she is now *in* Paris. *Je suis sûr qu'elle est à présent dans Paris.*

My father *is* abroad. *Mon père n'est pas en ville.*

Are you sure that he is not *in* the city? *Etes vous sûr qu'il ne soit pas dans la cité?*

I have left it in the chamber. *Je l'ai laissé dans la chambre.*

I have shut it up in my trunk. *Je l'ai enfermé dans mon coffre.*

Put that *in* my closet. *Mettez cela dans mon cabinet.*

*There is nothing in* the bottle. *Il n'y a rien dans la bouteille.*

(2) Reflect well *within* your- Réfléchissez bien *en* vous  
self. même.

I see nothing *in* him which Je ne vois rien *en*, ou *dans*  
displeases me. lui qui me déplaît.

There is nothing *in* her Il n'y a rien *en*, ou *dans* elle  
which you can blame. que vous puissiez blâmer.

Is there any thing *in* them Y a-t-il quelque chose *en*, ou  
which may give occasion *dans* eux qui puisse don-  
to your suspicions ? ner lieu à vos soupçons ?

(3) I could do it *in* ten days. Je le ferais *en* dix jours.

You would spend more than Vous ne le feriez pas *en*  
a fortnight *in* doing it. quinze jours.

I shall have done *in* four J'aurai fait *dans* quatre  
days. jours.

I shall send it you *in* a Je vous l'enverrai *dans* huit  
week's time. jours.

(4) I come *from* your house. Je viens *de* chez vous

I came *from* his or her house. Je venais *de* chez lui, ou *de*  
chez elle.

(5) I have looked for it *with-* Je l'ai cherché *dedans* &  
*in*, or *without* the house. *dehors* la maison.

There is a Spanish leather Il y a du marroquin *dessus*  
both *upon* and *under* the & *dessous* les chaises.  
chairs.

He drew him from *under* Il le tira *de dessous* la table.  
the table.

(6) The *outside* of his coun- *Le dehors* de sa maison de  
try house is very pretty. campagne est fort beau.

Give me the *upper part* of Donnez-moi le *dessus* du  
the bread. pain.

You will oblige me if you Vous m'obligerez, si vous me  
give me the *lower part* of donnez le *dessous* du pâté.  
the pie.

The fruit falls *off* the trees. Le fruit tombe *des* arbres.

(7) I shall love you *till* death. Je vous aimerai *jusqu'*à la  
mort.

(8) All men, *even* Kings Tous les hommes, *jusqu'aux*  
themselves, are liable to Rois, sont sujets à des ma-  
sickness. ladies.

*All men* despise him, *even* Tout le monde le méprise,  
*his relations.* *jusqu'* à ses parents.

- [9] *Without prejudice to my claim.* *Sauf mon droit.*  
*But the plaintiff is at liberty to sue.* *Sauf au demandeur à se pourvoir.*
- [10] *Why do you leave that heap of dirt before your house?* *Pourquoi laissez-vous ce tas de boue devant votre maison?*
- They are not covered in the presence of the King.* *On ne se couvre pas devant le Roi.*
- You have the precedence of him.* *Vous êtes devant lui.*
- We were happy before the war.* *Nous étions heureux avant la guerre.*
- Virtue should be preferred to every thing.* *La vertu doit aller avant tout.*
- [12] *It is near two o'clock.* *Il est près de deux heures.*  
*She is near twenty years old.* *Elle a près de vingt ans.*  
*He lives near St. Paul's.* *Il demeure près de St. Paul.*
- [13] *Does he live so near you?* *Demeure-t-il si près de vous?*
- You live very near one another.* *Vous demeurez bien près l'un de l'autre.*
- Come nearer me.* *Approchez vous plus près de moi.*
- You are not near enough to me.* *Vous n'êtes pas assez près de moi.*
- [14] *She consented to every thing, that excepted.* *Elle consentit à tout, à cela près.*  
*He has paid me all, except six guineas.* *Il m'a tout payé, à six guinées près.*
- [15] *I have put my daughter under her care.* *J'ai mis ma fille auprès d'elle*
- He is in favour with the King.* *Il est bien auprès du Roi.*
- He can do what he will with him.* *Il a tout pouvoir auprès de lui.*
- She is gone to live with him.* *Elle est allée auprès de lui.*
- You are safe with him.* *Vous êtes en sûreté auprès de lui.*
- [16] *He is ungrateful to me.* *Il est ingrat envers moi.*  
*I have not been ungrateful to you.* *Je n'ai pas été ingrat envers vous.*

- I intend to go to France** *J'ai dessein d'aller en France*  
*about the beginning of the* *vers le commencement du*  
*spring.* *printemps.*
- Come** *about midnight.* *Venez vers minuit.*
- She went out** *about noon.* *Elle sortit vers midi.*
- [17] How many miles is it** *Combien de milles y-a-t-il de*  
*from London to Windsor?* *Londres à Windsor?*
- Greenwich is five miles from** *Il y a cinq milles de Londres*  
*London.* *à Greenwich.*
- We walked from London to** *Nous allâmes à pied depuis*  
*Greenwich.* *Londres jusqu'à Green-*  
*wich.*
- We came in a coach from** *Nous vinmes en carrosse de-*  
*the Tower to the Park.* *puis la Tour jusqu'au*  
*Parc.*
- He goes from town to town.** *Il va de ville en ville.*
- They go from house to house.** *Ils vont de maison en mai-*  
*son.*
- [18] We spent two crowns** *Nous dépensâmes deux écus*  
*a piece.* *par tête.*
- They give him two guineas** *Ils lui donnent deux guinées*  
*a month.* *par mois.*
- Every mile will cost you a** *Ils vous en coûtera un che-*  
*shilling.* *lling par mille.*
- [19] Sit over-against me.** *Asseyez-vous vis-à-vis de*  
*moi.*
- I bought my ring over-against** *J'ai acheté ma bague vis-à-*  
*the Exchange.* *vis de la Bourse.*
- [20] He went, without telling** *Il partit, sans m'en dire da-*  
*me any more.* *vantage.*
- She spoke a long while with-** *Elle parla long temps sans*  
*out my taking notice of it.* *que j'y prisse garde.*
- We went out, without her** *Nous sortîmes sans qu'elle*  
*perceiving it.* *s'en apperçût.*
- He wrote to you, without my** *Il vous écrivit, sans que j'en*  
*knowing any thing of it.* *susse la moindre chose.*
- He cheated us without our** *Il nous trompa, sans que*  
*suspecting any thing.* *nous soupçonnassions la*  
*moindre chose.*
- She used him ill, without his** *Elle le maltraita, sans qu'il*  
*complaining of it.* *s'en plaignît.*
- [21] As you wrote to me** *Sur ce que vous m'avez écrit*  
*that—* *que—*

*As I walked in the Park.* *Comme je me promenais au Parc.*

*On my arriving at London.* *A mon arrivée à Londres.*

[22] *There are many books upon the table and the chair.* *Il y a beaucoup de livres sur la table, & sur la chaise.*

*She has married him against my will and yours.* *Elle l'a épousé contre ma volonté & contre la vôtre.*

*It was not the sentiment of her father and mother.* *Ce n'était pas le sentiment de son père & de sa mère.*

*He threw some under the table and chairs.* *Il en a jeté sous la table & sous les chaises.*

*He came to school without books and paper.* *Il est venu à l'école sans livres & sans papier.*

[23] *He has succeeded in it by his opulence and riches.* *Il y a réussi par son opulence & ses richesses.*

*He makes himself to be feared by his wealth and violence.* *Il se fait craindre par son opulence & par ses violences.*

*Go into the dining-room.* *Entrez dans la salle à manger.*

*Where have you put my patch-box?* *Où avez-vous mis ma boîte à mouches?*

*He has made her a present of a diamond ring.* *Il lui a fait présent d'une bague de diamans.*

*Bring the vinegar-bottle.* *Apportez la bouteille à vinaigre.*

*Where is the powder-box?* *Où est la boîte à poudre?*

*Give me my gold-fringed petticoat.* *Donnez-moi ma jupe à franges d'or.*

*I go to Paris.* *Je vais à Paris.*

*It is dear living in London.* *Il fait cher vivre à Londres.*

*He has been in Amsterdam.* *Il a été à Amsterdam.*

*The wainscot is painted with oil.* *Le lambris est peint à l'huile.*

*She works with the needle.* *Elle travaille à l'aiguille.*

*We had a coach for six persons.* *Nous avions un carrosse à six places.*

*Let us take a coach for four persons.* *Prenons un carrosse à quatre places.*

*He has got a coach and four.* *Il a un carrosse à quatre chevaux.*

I like to live *after* the English fashion. En- J'aime à vivre à l'Anglaise.

She is dressed *after* the French fashion. Elle est vêtue à la Française.

Go to the right hand, afterwards you will go on to the left. Allez à droite, ensuite vous prendrez à gauche.

I ordered a fashionable suit to be made for me. Je me suis fait faire un habit à la mode.

How! you are *in* the fashion. Comment! vous voilà à la mode.

Let us go step *by* step.

Allons pas à pas.

Go two *and* two.

Allez deux à deux.

*According* to my opinion, she is not in the wrong. *A mon avis*, elle n'a pas tort.

To judge him by his mien he is an honest man. A juger de lui par la mine, il est honnête homme.

I was here *at* ten o'clock. J'étais ici à dix heures.

He wears silk stockings. Il porte des bas *de* soie.

He has a fine marble-slab in his room. Il a dans sa chambre une belle table *de* marbre.

Give me my black velvet petticoat. Donnez-moi ma jupe *de* velours noir.

Give him a bit *of* bread. Donnez lui un morceau *de* pain.

Do you choose a bit *of* meat? Souhaitez-vous un morceau *de* viande?

A bit *of* cheese will be sufficient. Un morceau *de* fromage suffira.

There is something inexpressibly gracious in his discourses. Il y a je ne sais quoi *de* gracieux dans ses discours.

Somebody will be punished. Il y aura quelqu'un *de* puni.

Is there any thing finer than the sky? Y a-t-il rien *de* plus beau que le firmament?

I shall leave London next year. Je partirai *de* Londres l'année prochaine.

I come *from* Paris. Je viens *de* Paris.

He went away *in* the night. Il partit *de* nuit.

We shall arrive there *in* the day-time. Nous y arriverons *de* jour.

I shall set out to-morrow, early in the morning. Je partirai demain, *de* grand matin.

She is taller <i>by</i> the whole head.	Elle est plus grande <i>de</i> toute la tête.
She is beloved <i>by</i> every body.	Elle est aimée <i>de</i> tout le monde.
He ran <i>with</i> all his might.	Il courut <i>de</i> toutes ses forces.
I love you <i>with</i> all my heart.	Je vous aime <i>de</i> tout mon cœur.
Does he behave <i>in</i> that manner?	Se conduit-il <i>de</i> cette manière?
Were I <i>instead</i> of you.	Si j'étais <i>de</i> vous.
We live <i>on</i> fish.	Nous vivons <i>de</i> poisson.
They live <i>on</i> nothing but meat.	Ils ne se nourrissent que <i>de</i> viande.
It is the greatest folly in the world.	C'est <i>de</i> la dernière folie.
My rascally servant told him every thing.	Mon coquin <i>de</i> valet lui a tout dit.
I shall not come back <i>these</i> four months.	Je ne reviendrai <i>de</i> quatre mois.
There is no such thing.	Il n'y a rien de tel.
He goes better and better.	Il va <i>de</i> mieux en mieux.
She goes worse and worse.	Elle va <i>de</i> pis en pis.
I learn music <i>every</i> other day.	J'apprends la musique <i>de</i> deux jours l'un.
They meet <i>every</i> third year.	Ils s'assemblent <i>de</i> trois en trois ans.
I shall be married a year <i>hence</i> .	Je serai marié dans un an d'ici.

---

## CHAPTER X.

### *Observations upon the Conjunctions si and que.*

1. THE verb following the conditional *si* is never put in the subjunctive mood ; and it is put in no other tense of the indicative but the present and the imperfect : consequently the future in English is changed into the present in French : as, you shall be satisfied if you call to-morrow : ' vous serez satisfait si vous venez demain.' The imperfect of the subjunctive mood is changed into the imperfect of the indicative ; as, if you would call to-morrow : ' si vous veniez demain,' or ' si vous



*vouliez venir demain,* and not *'si vous viendriez,'* nor *'si vous voudriez venir.'*

2. Sometimes, instead of the compound of the imperfect of the indicative, we elegantly make use of the compound of the preterperfect of the subjunctive mood after *si*: as, if I had known it sooner, that would not have happened; *'si je l'eusse su plutôt, cela ne serait pas arrivé,'* instead of *'si je l'avais su,'* &c.

3. When *si* signifies whether, it may be used in any tense: as, do you not know whether he would come if—*'ne savez-vous pas s'il viendrait si'*:—I do not know whether he will come to-day: *'je ne sais s'il viendra aujourd'hui.'*\* Except the compound of the preterperfect of the indicative, the present, and the compound of the present of the subjunctive mood, where it is never used.

4. From the last observation it follows, that the conjunctions *whether* and *or* are most commonly rendered into French by *si* and *ou*: as, ask him whether he has done that or no: *'demandez-lui s'il a fait cela ou non.'* They are sometimes rendered into French, whether by *que*, or by *ou que* or *que* alone; as, you will not be punished whether you have done that or no: *'que vous ayez fait cela, que or ou que vous ne l'ayez pas fait, vous ne serez pas puni.'* It may likewise be rendered this way: *'vous ne serez pas puni, soit que, vous ayez fait cela, soit que or ou que vous ne l'ayez pas fait.'* It is better not to repeat *soit*, at least in conversation. Take notice, that *whether* and *or*, rendered by *que* or *soit que*, govern the subjunctive mood in French.

5. We make use of *que* instead of repeating the conjunction *si*, or some of the other conjunctions, but more particularly those of which *que* makes a part. In the first case *que* is followed by the subjunctive mood; as, if he comes, and if you speak to him; *'s'il vient, & que vous lui parliez.'* In the second case, the verb is put in the subjunctive mood, when *que* supplies the place of a conjunction which requires that mood: and in the indicative mood, if it supplies the place of a conjunction which requires the indicative; so that it follows the nature of the conjunction of which it is a part.†

Examples where *que* governs the indicative. When I have told and assured you; *'quand je vous ai dit, & que je vous ai assuré,'* as, he maintained it, and I did not believe it; *'comme il le soutenait & que je ne le croyais pas.'*

\* See the exception to the 9th observation on the use of the subjunctive mood, page 237.

† This distinction is very nice, yet neglected by all grammarians; some of whose inadequate and contrary rules.

Examples of the subjunctive. He is very far from reading and writing well; 'il s'en faut bien qu'il lise & qu'il écrive bien;' provided he comes and be in good health, 'pourvu qu'il vienne, & qu'il soit en bonne santé.' Many more instances will be met with in the following examples.

As the three first observations have been sufficiently exemplified in the tenses and moods of the verbs, I shall here exemplify only the fourth observation and the conjunction *que* throughout its different significations and purposes.

---

*The Conjunction Que exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[3] I do not know *whether* Je ne sais s'il viendra *ou* non.  
he will come *or* not.

Do you know *whether* he has Savez vous s'il a fait cela *ou*  
done that *or* not ? non ?

Tell me *if* he has done it *or* Dites moi s'il l'a fait *ou* non.  
not.

I do not know *whether* it be Je ne sais *si* c'est à droite *ou*  
on the right hand *or* the à gauche.  
left.

One does not know *whether* On ne sait s'il dit vrai *ou* non.  
he speaks true *or* not.

I doubt *whether* she will ac- Je doute *si* elle acceptera *ou*  
cept the offer they make non l'offre qu'on lui fait.  
her *or* not.

[4] It matters little *whether* Il importe peu qu'il parte *ou*  
he goes away *or* stays. qu'il demeure.

*Whether* he wins or loses, Soit qu'il gagne *ou* qu'il  
he is always of a cheerful perde, il est toujours de  
temper. bonne humeur.

So that you did see him, and Si bien que vous l'avez vu,  
speak to him. & que vous lui avez parlé.

In such a manner that you De manière que vous avez  
have sold your goods in vendu vos marchandises  
time, and made a great à temps, & que vous avez  
profit. fait un grand profit.

By what I see, and you tell A ce que je vois, & que vous  
me, he will have much médites, il aura bien de la  
ado to bring it about. peine à en venir à bout.

He lives niggardly, *as if* he *Il lésine comme s'il ne devait*  
 was never to die, and *had* jamais mourir, & *qu'il*  
 more than an hundred eût plus de cent ans à  
 years to live. vivre.

*When* I saw him, and *told* *Quand* je le vis & *que* le lui  
 him my reasons, he ap- *dis* mes raisons, il approu-  
 proved of my behaviour. va ma conduite.

*While* you play and *lose* *Pendant que* vous jouez, &  
 your time, he learns his *que* vous perdez votre  
 lesson. temps, il apprend sa leçon.

*Whilst* I was speaking to *Tandis que* je lui parlais, &  
 him, and *showed* him he *que* je lui *faisais voir* le tort  
 was in the wrong, our dis- qu'il avait, un accident im-  
 course was suddenly in- prévu interrompit tout à  
 terrupted by an unfore- coup notre discours.

*Because* you would not fol- *Parce que* vous n'avez pas  
 low my advice, and *would* voulu suivre mon avis, &  
 listen only to your own *que* vous n'avez voulu  
 whim, you do not deserve écouter que votre ca-  
 my farther concern for price, vous ne méritez pas  
 you. que je m'intéresse davan-  
 tage à vous.

*As soon as* I have dined, and *Dès que* j'aurai diné, & *que*  
 written a letter, I shall go j'aurai écrit une lettre,  
 and speak to him. j'irai lui parler.

*As soon as* I saw that I could *Aussitôt que* je vis que je ne  
 not make him understand pouvais lui faire entendre  
 reason, and that he *was* raison, & *qu'il était* trop  
 too much prepossessed prévenu contre moi, je  
 against me, I went out sortis sans dire mot.  
 without saying any thing.

*Why* do you not imitate your *D'où vient que* vous n'imitiez  
 sister, and *apply* yourself pas votre sœur, & *que*  
 to the French tongue as vous ne vous *appliquez*  
 she does ? pas au Français comme  
 elle ?

Is it not *because* you are *N'est-ce pas parce que* vous  
 lazy, and you *shun* labour êtes paresseux, & *que*  
 and pain ? vous évitez le travail & la  
 peine ?

*After that* we drank tea and *Après que* nous eûmes pri-

played at cards, we went  
a walking.

le thé, & *que nous étames*  
joué aux cartes, nous al-  
lâmes à la promenade.

*Perhaps* he will come and  
see you to-day, and give  
you an account of his rea-  
sons.

*Peut-être qu'il* viendra vous  
voir aujourd'hui, & *qu'il*  
vous *rendra* compte de ses  
raisons.

*According as* you tell me,  
and I *have* heard, she has  
a great deal of wit and  
merit.

*Selon ce que* vous me dites,  
& *que j'ai* entendu dire,  
elle a beaucoup d'esprit  
& de mérite.

*Besides that* her brother does  
not study, and *that* he  
*loves* play too much, he  
has not so much wit as  
she.

*Outre que* son frère n'étudie  
pas & *qu'il aime* trop à  
jouer, il n'a pas tant d'es-  
prit qu'elle.

*As long as* we have wealth,  
and spend high, we never  
want friends.

*Tant qu'on a* du bien, &  
*qu'on fait* de la dépense,  
on ne manque jamais  
d'amis.

*In proportion as* you study,  
and learn the French  
tongue, you will find more  
beauties in it.

*A mesure que* vous étudierez  
& *que vous apprendrez* le  
Français, vous y trouve-  
rez plus de beautés.

*Since* we are together and  
it is very fine weather, let  
us go and take a little  
walk in the country.

*Puisque* nous sommes en-  
semble, & *qu'il fait* fort  
beau temps, allons faire  
un petit tour de prome-  
nade à la campagne.

*God forbid that* I should  
blame your behaviour, and  
reproach you with it.

*A Dieu ne plaise que* je blâme  
votre conduite, & *que je*  
*veuille* vous en faire un re-  
proche.

*Would to God that* you may  
be in good health, and  
*succeed* in all your enter-  
prises.

*Plaise à Dieu que* vous vous  
portiez bien, & *que vous*  
*reussissiez* dans toutes vos  
entreprises.

*For all that* you know him,  
and he *has* cheated you,  
you still converse with  
him.

*Malgré que* vous le con-  
naissiez & *qu'il vous ait*  
trompé, vous ne cessez de  
lui parler.

*He is far from being happy* Il s'en fait bien qu'il va

- and contented in the midst of his wealth. heureux & content au milieu de ses richesses.
- Go and speak to him *lest* he should be angry and reproach you. Aller lui parler, *de crainte* qu'il ne soit fâché, & qu'il ne vous fasse des reproches.
- Unless* you go and see him, and *speak* to him, he will not be satisfied with you. *A moins* que vous n'alliez le voir, & que vous ne lui parliez, il ne sera pas content de vous.
- I shall go into the country, next week, *provided* I be well, and it be fair. J'irai à la campagne la semaine prochaine, *pourvu* que je me porte bien, & qu'il fasse beau.
- Not that* I praise him, and approve of his arrogance. *Non pas* que je le loue & que j'approuve son arrogance.
- In case* that he comes, and asks news of my brother, tell him that he will arrive in a week. *Au cas* qu'il vienne, & qu'il demande des nouvelles de mon frère, dites lui qu'il arrivera dans huit jours.
- Though* he denies it, and declares that he has not seen it, I can assure you of the contrary. *Quoiqu'il* le nie, & qu'il déclare ne l'avoir pas vu, je puis vous assurer du contraire.
- To the end* that you may be contented and have no occasion to complain of me, I will give you more than I promised you. *Afin* que vous soyez content & que vous n'ayez pas sujet de vous plaindre de moi, je vous donnerai plus que je ne vous ai promis.
- Though* he told me of it, and his brother confirmed it, I believe nothing of it. *Bien* qu'il me l'ait dit & que son frère me l'ait confirmé je n'en crois rien.
- Though* he be young and rich, she does not love him. *Encore* qu'il soit jeune & qu'il ait du bien, elle ne l'aime pas.
- Before* you give your opinion, and determine, be without partiality and prepossession. *Avant* que vous disiez votre sentiment, et que vous décidiez, soyez sans partialité et sans prévention.

## PART IV.

PRACTICAL IRREGULARITIES OF THE  
FRENCH TONGUE,

ALPHABETICALLY DISPOSED,

WITH THE

CHOICE OF WORDS AND PHRASES,

APPROVED BY THE BEST AUTHORS,

AND ESPECIALLY BY THE DECISIONS

OF THE FRENCH ACADEMY.

*Abandonné.*

THIS word, in the masculine gender, commonly signifies forsaken, given over: as, *un homme abandonné*, a man who is forsaken; *un malade abandonné*, a sick person, given over by his physicians. When it is applied, in the feminine gender to persons it always signifies a bad woman.

*Affectionner.*

We say *affectionner une chose*, to love, to like a thing: but we do not say, *affectionner une personne*, to love, to like a person, if the person be of an equal, or higher rank: the genius of the French tongue does not allow it. However, *affectionné*, in a passive signification, may be used, speaking of an inferior, with regard to his superior: as, *ce serviteur est fort affectionné à son maître*, this servant is much attached to his master.

*Bouhours* and *Corneille* observe, that *votre affectionné serviteur*, your affectionate servant, is only used with regard to persons of an inferior rank.

*Aider.*

When the verb *aider* governs the first case, it is taken in the sense of to help one with money, counsel, &c.: as, *il l'a aidé à bâtir sa maison*, he helped him to build his house, viz. with money. But when it governs the third case, it is taken in the sense of to help a man overloaded, as, *il lui a aidé à porter sa charge*, he helped him to carry his burden.

*Aller. Venir.*

The first is said of the place where one is, with relation to the place where one is not. The second, on the contrary, is said of a place where one is not, with a relation to the place where one is: as, supposing the person spoken of be in London, I say, *un courrier est allé de Londres à Paris en trois jours, & il est venu de Paris à Londres dans le même espace de temps*; a courier went from London to Paris in three days, and came from Paris to London in the same space of time.

This verb is likewise used, speaking of the place where one dwells in; as, meeting somebody, I say to him, *je vous prie, Monsieur, de venir dîner demain chez moi*, pray, Sir, come and dine to-morrow with me.

However, there is a distinction to be made here: if it be another body's house, *aller* must be used; as, if meeting somebody, I say, *Monsieur A. vous prie d'aller demain dîner chez lui*. But, in this case, when the person who speaks is likewise to go to another body's house, *venir* is used: as, *Monsieur A. vous prie de venir demain avec moi dîner chez lui*.

This verb *aller* is likewise used to denote what is, or was to happen; it signifies to be going, to be ready: as, *je vais écrire*, I am going to write; *il va sortir*, he is just going out; *il allait rendre l'âme*, he was ready to give up his last.

*Venir*, on the contrary, signifies a thing just done: as, *je viens de lui écrire*, I have just written to him; *je venais de dîner, quand vous—*, I had just dined when you—

*Ne faire que de* may be used instead of *venir* in the aforesaid sense: as, *je ne fais que de lui écrire*; *je ne faisais que de dîner quand vous—* These verbs are used in

that sense, only in the present and imperfect tenses of the indicative mood.

*Venir*, followed by an infinitive with *à*, signifies, as I observed elsewhere, Part III. § III. to begin, or to set about doing, something : as, *quand je vins à lui parler*, when I began to speak to him. This verb may be used in all its tenses.

Again, though the verb *aller* be neuter, it seems to be in some cases, an active one, or, at least, to have an active signification : as, *aller son chemin*, to go one's way ; *aller son train* ; to be the same, to continue in the same way ; *aller son même pas*, to go on in the same manner ; but in that case, a preposition is understood before the substantive.

*Aller*, joined with the particle *y*, and used impersonally, signifies to be at stake, to be concerned : as, your fortune is at stake, *il y va de votre fortune* ; your life was concerned in it, *il y allait de votre vie*. When in this signification we make use of the imperfect of the subjunctive mood, *y* is left out : as, though my fortune should be at stake, *quand il irait de ma fortune* ; though my life should be concerned in it, *quand il irait de ma vie*.

FRENCH ACADEMY.

*Alors. Lors.*

The second is never used without being followed by *que*, unless it be preceded by these two particles *dès*, or *pour* ; in these cases, *dès-lors* signifies from that time, and *pour-lors*, then, *Lorsque* signifies when : as, *lorsque je le vis*, when I saw him. Some say, *dès lors que je le vis*, as soon as I saw him : but this expression is very bad ; we say, *dès que je le vis*. *Alors* signifies then, and is never followed by *que*.

*Ancien. Vieux. Antique.*

The second is commonly used speaking of old persons, and things worn by use : as, this man is very old, *cet homme est bien vieux* ; this suit of clothes is very old, *ce habit est bien vieux*. The first has a relation to the century which one lives in : as, *Aristote est plus ancien que Cicéron*, Aristotle is more ancient than Cicero. It signifies likewise an advantage acquired by time : as, *cet*



*une maison ancienne*, or *une famille ancienne*, it is an ancient family. But when we speak of a building, we say *une vieille maison*, an old house; and not *une maison ancienne*.

Though we equally say *le Vieux* for *l'ancien Testament*, the old Testament; *d'anciennes*, or *de vieilles histoires*, old histories; *de vieux*, or *d'anciens manuscrits*; *de vieux*, or *d'anciens Romains*, &c. however, we do not equally say *le Jeune*, for *le Nouveau Testament*: and so for the others; though *jeune* be the contrary of *vieux*, which may be used equally with *ancien* in such cases as above.

Neither do we equally say *d'anciens*, or *de vieux livres*; *d'anciens*, or *de vieux tableaux*. We say *d'anciens livres*, *d'anciens tableaux*, of books or pictures which the authors and painters of antiquity have made; and *vieux livres*, *vieux tableaux*, of books or pictures used and spoiled by time, of what age soever they may be.

The third is made use of speaking of medals, statues, and pictures, when we speak of them as monuments of antiquity. It is likewise used speaking of some pieces of architecture done after the ancient way.

When we speak of a collection of the laws of the Visigoths, Burgundians, &c. we say, *les lois antiques*. But when we speak of other Roman and French laws, we say, *les lois anciennes*. We say, likewise, *coutumes anciennes*, *cérémonies anciennes*.

#### *Année passée. Année qui vient.*

*L'année passée* is used only in relation to the year which immediately precedes that which one lives in: as, *je fus malade l'année passée*, I was sick last year. *L'année qui vient* is used when we speak of the year immediately following that which one lives in; as, *j'irai à Amsterdam l'année qui vient*, I shall go to Amsterdam next year.

#### *Au cas.*

This word signifying in case, is always followed by *que*: as, *au cas qu'il meure*, in case he should die. We equally say, *en cas qu'il meure*. If, after *cas*, a substantive follows, we make use of *en cas* followed by *de*; *en cas de mort*, in case of death; and not *au cas de mort*.

*Beaucoup.*

This word signifying *many*, is never used alone : as, we do not say, *il donnoit peu à beaucoup*, he did give little to many ; we add, *à beaucoup de personnes*, or *à beaucoup de gens*.

When a personal pronoun is before *beaucoup*, in such a case it may be used alone : as, *nous sommes beaucoup*, *vous êtes beaucoup*, we are many, you are many ; because *beaucoup* has a relation to the foregoing pronoun. The same is to be said when the indeterminate pronoun *en* is before *beaucoup* : as, *il y en a beaucoup*, there are many. *En* is in the place of *gens* or *personnes* ; as in the foregoing example, *il y a beaucoup de gens*.

When *beaucoup* is taken in the sense of *much*, a great deal, and comes after an adjective, it must always be preceded by the particle *de* : as, *votre bouquet est plus beau de beaucoup que celui de votre frère*, your nosegay is much finer than that of your brother. But, when *beaucoup* is before the adjective, *de* may be left out.

We say *il s'en faut beaucoup*, to express that there is a great difference between persons and things, and it signifies to be far from, or to come short of something : as, he comes far short of being so handsome as you, *il n'est pas si beau que vous, il s'en faut beaucoup*. This last gallicism may begin the sentence, and then the first is preceded by *que* and the following verb is put in the subjunctive mood : as, *il s'en faut beaucoup, qu'il soit aussi beau que vous*.

We say *il s'en faut de beaucoup*, to express a deficiency in something : as, you think that you returned me every thing, there is a great deal wanting, *vous croyez m'avoir tout payé, il s'en faut de beaucoup*. FRENCH ACADEMY.

*Champ.*

This word in the singular, signifies a piece of arable ground, commonly not encompassed by walls. But, when it is taken in the plural, it is applied to all sorts of ground such as meadows, woods, &c. taken together : thus we say, to lead the cattle into the fields, *mener les bestiaux aux champs*. It likewise signifies every other place which is not in the city or suburbs ; thus we equally say *une maison de campagne*, or *une maison des champs*, a country house : however, the first is most in use.

*Cœur.*

When this word is joined to the verb *avoir* and preceded by the article, it signifies to have courage ; thus we say of a man who is not a coward, *il a du cœur*.—When it is preceded by the preposition *à* it signifies to espouse an affair ; *avoir une affaire à cœur*. When it is preceded by the preposition *sur*, it signifies to resent a thing, *avoir une chose sur le cœur*.

When we make use of the word *cœur* to express generosity or goodness, we join to it an adjective, or some other word : as, *il a le cœur bien fait, il a le cœur bon, c'est un bon cœur*, he is a good natured man.

Likewise, though *c'est un homme de cœur* signifies he is a courageous man, yet when we add *tout* to the word *cœur*, it signifies a generous man : as, *il est tout cœur*, he is a very generous man.

*Comme.*

This word is used in different ways : it is used instead of *ainsi que, de même que, dans le temps que, par exemple, à cause que, ou parce que, presque, en quelque sorte* ; as, like, as it were, in the time that, for example, because, in some manner.

*Il sera puni comme les autres.*

He shall be punished like others.

*Cela paraît comme vieux.*

This seems as if it were old.

*Comme il arrivait j'étais chez moi.*

When he arrived I was at home.

*Comme il a toujours aimé le bien public, il n'a jamais voulu consentir, &c.*

Because he always loved the public good, he never would consent, &c.

*Il est comme le ressort de toute cette intrigue.*

He is in some manner the spring of this intrigue.

It is likewise used instead of *comment*, signifying how, or in what manner, after some other phrase : as, *il verra comme je lui parlerai*, he will see in what manner I shall speak to him. But, when how, or in what manner, begins a phrase, *comment* must be used : as, in what manner, did he succeed ? *Comment a-t-il réussi ?* and not *comme*.

*Davantage. Plus.*

*Plus* is never used at the end in an affirmative sentence: as, give me some more; *donnez m'en davantage*, and not *plus*. Unless it be preceded by *de*: as, I will give you something more for it; *je vous en donnerai quelque chose de plus*.

*Plus* or *davantage* is indifferently used at the end of a negative sentence, with this difference, that *plus* requires only *ne* before it, whereas *davantage* requires *ne* and *pas*: as, *je n'en veux pas davantage*, or *je n'en veux plus*, I will have no more of it.

*Davantage* is never put in the middle of a sentence before a substantive, whereas *plus* may be so: as, the Romans have more plain dealing than the Greeks: *les Romains ont plus de bonne foi que les Grecs*, and not *davantage de bonne foi*.

However, *davantage* may sometimes be used, as well as *plus*, in the middle of a sentence before *que*: as, you are in the wrong to reproach me with being hasty, I am not more so than you, *vous avez tort de me reprocher d'être vif je ne le suis pas davantage*, or, *je ne le suis pas plus que vous*.

Except from this observation, when *davantage* is followed by an adjective or substantive; in this case *plus* must always be used, as in the foregoing example, adding the adjective after *plus*: as, *je ne suis pas plus emporté que vous*, and not *je ne suis pas davantage*: I have no more friends than you; *je n'ai pas plus d'amis que vous* and not *davantage*.

*Durant.*

This preposition is sometimes indifferently put either before or after its regimen: as, *durant deux mois*, or *deux mois durant*, during two months; during his life, *sa vie durant*. But we always say, *durant le jour*, *durant la nuit*.

*Enclin.*

This word signifies inclined. It is used in morals, and rather speaking of something bad: as, *il est enclin au jeu*, he is inclined to gaming.

Though we say *enclin*, yet we say, *incliner*, *inclination*.

*Ensuiure. (s'.)*

This verb is used only in the third person singular and plural: as, *tout ce qui s'ensuit*, all that follows from thence; *les accidens qui s'ensuivaient*, the accidents which would ensue.

*Evitable.*

Some French authors have made use of that word, but it is very seldom used. However, we say, *inévitabile*, unavoidable.

We have in the French tongue several compounded words which are used, though their simple are not: as, *inévitable*, inexorable; *implacable*, implacable; *irréconciliable*, irreconcilable; *insatiable*, insatiable; *indubitable*, unquestionable; *ineffable*, ineffable; *immanquable*, infallible, &c.

*Excepté.*

When this word comes before a noun, it is a preposition, consequently indeclinable: as, *excepté ceux là*, except those; *excepté ma sœur*, except my sister. But, when it comes after the noun, it is a participle past, consequently declinable; as, *ma sœur exceptée*, my sister excepted.

*Fable.*

When this word is used to signify the fabulous history of the gods and semi-gods, it has no plural: as, *un poète doit savoir la Fable*, a poet ought to know the history of the gods and semi-gods; *la Fable est fort amusante*, Mythology is very entertaining.

But, if we say, in the plural *les fables sont agréables & utiles*, the fables are pleasant and useful, we understand the fables of *Æsop*, *Phædrus*, *Lafontaine*, *Gay*, and other authors.

The word *fable* is sometimes used in a figurative sense: as, *le pauvre homme sert de fable & de risée à tout le monde*; the poor simpleton makes himself a common talk and a laughing stock.

*Fleurir.*

This verb may be taken in a proper or figurative sense;

in the first, it signifies to blossom ; in the second, it signifies to flourish, to be in repute.

When it is used in its proper sense it has no irregularity at all ; but when it is used in its figurative sense, it has an irregularity in all the persons of the imperfect tense, and in the participle of the present : as, *une armée florissante*, a flourishing army ; *Horace florissait sous César*, Horace flourished in the time of Cæsar.

In the present tense we say *fleurissent* ; as, *les arts & les sciences fleurissent dans notre siècle* ; arts and sciences flourish in our age.

### Gagner.

Though we say *gagner une bataille*, to gain a battle, yet we do not say, *gagner un combat*, to express the same thing. We may say *être victorieux dans un combat*.

### Gens.

There is scarce another word to be met with, liable to so many irregularities. See page 167, where notice is taken of some of them.

*Gens* is never said as in English, of a determinate number of people, unless it be attended with an adjective : as, two honest people : *deux honnêtes gens*. However, we say, a thousand people believe it ; *mille gens le croient*. In this case *mille* is taken for an indeterminate number, viz. a great many.

*Gens* sometimes signifies one's retinue ; in this case it may be used with a determinate number : as, I see but four of my servants, where are the others ? *je ne vois que quatre de mes gens, où sont les autres ?*

*Gens* sometimes signifies people who are of the same party or club : in this sense it is likewise used with a determinate number : as, four of our club are come ; *quatre de nos gens sont arrivés*.

*Gens*, in the sense of nation, is only used in this phrase : the law of nations, *le droit des gens*. It is still used in the same sense, in the singular number, in some pieces of poetry, such as fishes : as, *la gent aquatique*, to express fishes and whatever lives in the water. *La fontaine*.

*Grâce.*

When this word is alone with the verb *faire*, and an article, it signifies favour, kindness: as, do me the favour; *faites-moi la grâce*.

When it is without an article, it signifies to forgive, to remit: as, the King has forgiven him; *le Roi lui a fait grâce*: you owe me a hundred guineas but I remit you the half; *vous me devez cent guinées mais je vous fais grâce de la moitié*.

When *grâce* is used in the singular, with *de* before it, it signifies pray, or be so kind as:—as, pray, tell me, *de grâce, dites-moi*.

*Grâce* used in the singular, with the adjective *bonne* signifies gracefulness: as, he salutes with gracefulness; *il salue de bonne grâce*: she has a good grace, *elle a bonne grâce*.

When in the same number, it is preceded by the adjective *mauvaise*, it signifies quite the contrary: as, admire his awkwardness, *admirez sa mauvaise grâce*. Sometimes, in this last sense, it only signifies what is contrary to decency, to reason: as, there is no reason to complain of me, *vous avez mauvaise grâce de vous plaindre de moi*.

When *grâces* is used in the plural, it signifies the Graces, (three goddesses, who, according to the Poets, were the companions of *Venus*;) 2dly, the beauties of the French language: as, *les grâces de la langue Française*.

If, in the same number, the word *bonnes* is added to it, it signifies good will: as, he has got the good will of his master; *il a les bonnes grâces de son maître*.

F. Bouhours, observes here, that though we say *gagner les bonnes grâces de quelqu'un*, to get one's good will; yet we do not say, to express the contrary, either *gagner*, or *encourir les mauvaises grâces de quelqu'un*; custom, says he, allows the one, and not the other; in such a case we say *perdre les bonnes grâces de quelqu'un*, to lose one's benevolence.

*Etre en grâces auprès du Prince ou de quelque personne puissante*, signifies to be in favour with the King, or some powerful person.

*Etre dans les bonnes grâces d'une dame*, signifies to be beloved by a lady or high in her esteem.

*J'ai été ou je suis allé.*

We make use of the first expression to signify that we are, or were no more in the place we are speaking of : as, Madam went to the play to-day, *Madame a été à la comédie aujourd'hui* ; but, when somebody is, or was still in the place we are speaking of, then we make use of the compound of *aller* : as, Madam is gone to the play, *Madame est allée à la comédie*.

Moreover, if some word denoting a motion be added to it, we make use of the compound of *aller*, though the person is no more in the place we are speaking of : as, he went to Paris in two days, *il est allé à Paris en deux jours*. We likewise say in conversation *j'aurais été*, or *je serais allé vous voir*, I would have gone to see you ; *je fus*, or *j'allai hier à l'opéra*, I went yesterday to the opera. FRENCH ACADEMY.

*Main.*

This word has many curious significations.

*Donner la main à une chose*, to consent to a thing..

*Tendre la main*, to beg alms, also to lend an helping hand, to assist one : as, lend him your helping hand, *tendez lui la main*. However, *donner*, or *prêter la main à quelqu'un* is less equivocal.

*En venir aux mains avec l'ennemi*, to fight, come in contact with the enemy.

*Faire main basse sur l'ennemi*, to put all to the sword.

*Mettre la main sur quelqu'un, (le battre,)* to lay hands upon one, to beat him.

*Tenir la main haute*, to keep a strict hand over one, to treat him severely.

*Prendre en main la cause de quelqu'un*, to take one's part.

*Prendre à toutes mains*, to catch every way.

*Donner la main à un cheval*, to give a horse the bridle.

*Donner de main en main*, to hand about.

*Mettre la main à la plume*, to begin to write.

*Mettre la main au chapeau, à l'épée*, to put the hand to the hat, in order to salute somebody ; to put the hand to one's sword.

*Mettre le chapeau à la main*, to pull off one's hat.



*Mettre l'épée à la main*, to draw a sword : also to fight with a sword.

*Etre en main pour faire une chose*, to be in a convenient situation, to make use of one's hands easily.

*Lever la main*, to take an oath before a judge, to lay the hand upon the Bible, to lift up the hand.

*Avoir les armes bien à main*, to be expert in arms.

*Faire credit de la main à la bourse*, to trust no farther than one can see.

*Un coup-de-main* signifies a bold action ; in this sense it is joined to the verb *faire*. When it is joined to the verb *donner*, it signifies to put one's hand to something in order to help one, and is applied only to things : as, *donnez-y un coup de main*.

*Un homme de main*, signifies a man who is fit for a bold and hazardous enterprise.

*Des coups de main*, handy blows.

*A pleines mains*, largely, plentifully.

*Sous main*, underhand, secretly.

*Combat de main à main*, a close fight

*Sous la main*, under one's nose.

*Cela est fait à la main*, that is done in concert.

### *Maison.*

Speaking of people of quality, or gentlemen of an ancient and noble extraction, we say, *maison* : as, he is of the house of Montmorenci, *il est de la maison de Montmorenci*. But, speaking of citizens and people of business, we make use of the word *famille*.

Sometimes we make use of the word *famille*, instead of *maison*, when some following word heightens it ; as, the royal family : *la famille royale*.

Take notice, that when we say, *la famille royale*, we mean by this expression, the King, the Queen, their children, and grand-children. But when we say, *la maison royale*, we commonly mean the other princes and princesses of the blood.

*La maison du Roi*, signifies the King's household, servants, or troops.

Take notice again, that, though we say, *la maison royale*, or, *la maison du Roi*, yet we never say, *la famille du roi*.

*Famille* is used instead of *maison*, even speaking of ancient nobility, when we mention it with relation to medals: as, the consular medals are distinguished by the Roman families, *les médailles consulaires se distinguent par les familles Romaines*. It is for this reason, perhaps, that we say, *la famille des Scipions, la famille des Césars*, etc. and not, *la maison des Scipions*, even when we do not speak of medals.

The word *famille* is likewise used when we speak of one's nearest relations: as, he has fallen out with his relations, *il s'est brouillé avec sa famille*.

*Maison* and *famille* are sometimes used promiscuously, speaking of one's servants and household: as, she is a woman who takes care of her household; *c'est une femme qui a soin de sa maison, or famille*. However, the first seems to be more extended, and has a nearer relation to the household goods.

We always say, *établir sa maison*, and *faire une bonne maison*, and not *famille*, to grow rich.

### *Métier.*

This word is low in its proper, and elegant in its figurative sense. According to *Balzac*, painters are offended at this word, for we do not say, *le métier de peintre*, the profession of a painter.

However, generals of the army boast of that calling: as, the profession of arms, the profession of war; *le métier des armes, le métier de la guerre*.

We likewise say, speaking of works: there are only people of that calling, who may be judges of it; *il n'y a que les gens du métier, qui en soient bons juges*.

In this sense it must be used with the definite article, because *gens de métier* signifies quite another thing, *viz.* handicraft men.

### *Mont.*

This word is never used alone, except when we speak of the mountains, which separate France from Italy; for we say, *les Alpes*, or *les monts* only, after some prepositions, but very seldom: as, on this side the Alps, *en dedans des monts*.

In other circumstances we say, *le mont Olympe, le Liban, le mont Ætna, le mont St. Godard*; but we say, *la montagne du Calvaire*.

### *Noms de Nations & de Langues.*

There is, perhaps, nothing where variety of custom is more visible, than in the nouns of some nations and languages.

*Arabe, Arabesque.* The first is applied to men and women: as, *un Arabe, une femme Arabe*. The second is never applied to persons, but to the Arabian characters. Speaking of the language, we say, *l'Arabe, or la langue Arabique*. We say, *une figure Arabesque*, an Arabian figure.

*Barbarie.* We have no nouns to express a man of Barbary, for *un Barbare* is always taken figuratively, and signifies a barbarous man. *Barbe* signifies a Barbary horse. So we are obliged to say, speaking of people of Barbary, *les peuples de la Barbarie*.

*Chaldéen, Chaldaïque.* The first is said of the persons and their language; the second of their language only.

*Dorien, Dorique; Ionien, Ionique.* The first is applied only to persons; as, *les Doriens, les Ioniens; une Doriennne, une Ionienne*. The second is applied to the language. Speaking of architecture, we say, *ordre Dorique, ordre Ionique*.

*Hébreu, Hébraïque.* We say, speaking of the people, *un Hébreu, les Hébreux*. This word is not used in the feminine gender; thus we must say, *la femme d'un Hébreu, la fille d'un Hébreu, les femmes & les filles des Hébreux*. Speaking of the language, we say, *l'Hébreu, or la langue Hébraïque*. Speaking of manuscripts, we only say, *des manuscrits Hébreux*; but speaking of Hebrew types, we say, *des caractères Hébraïques*.

*Juif, Judaïque.* We say *un Juif, une Juive*, speaking of the modern Jews. We say, *vivre à la Juive*, to live like Jews, with relation to their manners; and *vivre à la Judaïque*, with relation to their ceremonies.

*More, Moresque.* We say, *un More, a Moor; une Moresque, a she Moor*; and not *une More*; though we say *une femme More*. We say, *le More*, speaking of the lan-

guagé. *Moresque* signifies a Moorish dance, also a *Morisco* work in painting.

*Perse, Persan, Persien, Persique.* We commonly say, *les Perses*, speaking of the ancient people of Persia : and *Persans*, speaking of the modern ones.

In the singular, we always say, *un Persan*, and not *un Perse*. Printed cloth of Persia is called *de la Perse*, and not *Persienne*. The latter is applied to Venetian blinds.

However, when we speak of Persian stuff, we may say, *une étoffe de Perse*, as we say, *une étoffe de la Chine*. We say, *la langue Persienne*, or *le Persien*, speaking of the ancient language, but we say, *la langue Persanne*, or *le Persan*, speaking of the modern language.

We always say *à la Persienne*, to signify after the Persian way.

*Persique* is said of the gulf which separates Persia from Arabia : as, *le golphe Persique*. It likewise signifies an order in architecture.

Speaking of the ancient kings, *Cyrus, Darius, &c.* we call them indifferently *roi de Perse*, or *roi des Perses* ; but now-a-days, we say only *le roi de Perse*.

*Syrien, Syriaque.* The first is used, speaking of the people, *un Syrien, une Syrienne* ; the second, speaking of the language, *le Syriaque*, or *la langue Syriaque*.

*Teuton, Teutonique, Tudesque.* The first is said of the people and of the language ; the second of the language, and when we speak of the Order : as, *l'Ordre Teutonique*, the Teutonic Order. *Tudesque* is only used speaking of the language of the ancient Germans.

These are the irregular nouns of nations and languages. The others are equally applied to the people and to their language : as, *les Ethiopiens, l'Ethiopien* ; *les Moscovites, le Moscovite* ; *les Grecs, le Grec* ; *les Latins, le Latin, &c.*

#### *Des Nombres Cardinaux.*

What belongs to the manner of counting them has been said already, see page 38. However, there are many other remarks to be made concerning these numbers.

It is to be observed that *vingt*, when it is multiplied by another preceding number, whether followed by a substantive or not, takes an *s* after the *t* : as, *quatre-vingt*

eighty ; *quatre-vingts guinées*, eighty guineas ; but the *s* is omitted, when it is followed by another cardinal number : as, *quatre-vingt-trois*, eighty-three.

To know in what cases the other numbers are either declinable or indeclinable, see page 39.

Instead of *septante*, seventy ; *octante*, eighty ; and *nonante*, ninety ; we always say, *soixante & dix, quatre-vingts, quatre-vingt-dix*. Except when we speak of the interpreters of the Bible, we say *les septante*, though they were seventy-two ; but when we add *interprètes de la Bible*, we say *les soixante et douze interprètes de la Bible*.

We likewise say, *les septante semaines de Daniel*, the seventy weeks of the prophet Daniel. We may say *six vingts*, one hundred and twenty ; and sometimes *sept-vingts*, one hundred and forty ; *huit-vingts*, one hundred and sixty ; but we never say *deux vingts*, forty ; *trois vingts*, sixty ; *cinq vingts*, a hundred ; *dix vingts*, two hundred. After *six vingts*, we say *cent vingt et un, cent vingt deux, &c.*

After *mille* we say *onze cent, douze cent*—to *deux mille*. Except when we speak of the year of our Lord, we write *mil*, and not *mille* ; after *mil* we say *l'an onze cent*, one thousand one hundred ; *l'an mil deux cent*, one thousand two hundred ; *l'an mil trois cent*, one thousand three hundred, &c. However, we say *douze cents hommes*, twelve hundred men ; *treize cents hommes*, thirteen hundred men, &c.

When we speak of the place endowed at Paris, by *Louis IX.* king of France, for three hundred blind, or when we speak of the blind themselves, we say, *les quinze vingts*, and not *les trois cents*.

Sometimes we make use of *couple* and *paire* instead of *deux*, but not indifferently : *couple* and *paire* are said of things of the same kind which may be separated : as, a couple of partridges, a couple of chickens ; *une couple* or *une paire de perdrix, une couple*, or *une paire de poulets*. *Couple* is never said of things which are considered as inseparable : as, a pair of gloves, a pair of ruffles, a pair of stockings, &c. *une paire de gants, une paire de manchettes, une paire de bas, &c.* not *une couple de gants, &c.*

*Couple* is likewise said of persons united together by love or marriage ; in this sense it is always in the masculine gender : as, *beau couple, couple fidèle*.

We make use of the word *quarteron*, when we are speaking of things which are reckoned *per cent*. It signifies the fourth part of a hundred: as, a quarter of a hundred pins, *un quarteron d'épingles*. This word is likewise said of things which are weighed; it then signifies the fourth part of a pound: as, a quarter of a pound of butter; *un quarteron de beurre*.

We make use of the word *quintal* to express a hundred weight; it is only used when we are speaking of some merchandises which are weighed.

*Millier* is said of a thousand weight, as, a thousand weight of iron, brass, &c. *un millier de fer, de cuivre, &c.*

When we speak of time, we say, *huit jours*, or *une semaine*, eight days, or a week, *quinze jours*, or *deux semaines*, fourteen days, or two weeks. However, we always say, *trois semaines*, three weeks; *un mois*, a month, *cinq, six, sept semaines*, five, six, seven weeks; *deux mois*, two months; *neuf semaines*, two months and a week; *deux mois et demi*, ten weeks; *trois mois*, three months, and not *un quart d'an*; *quatre, cinq, six mois*, four, five, six months, and so on to *un an*. Then we commonly reckon by months: as, *treize mois, quatorze, quinze mois, &c.* to *deux ans*, though we may say, this child is one year and one month, or eighteen months old, *cet enfant a un an et un mois*, or *un an et demi*, in these two cases only.

We never say *il est douze heures*, it is twelve o'clock, but *il est midi, il est minuit*.

### *Des Nombres collectifs.*

Numbers, which grammarians call collective, are *huitaine, neuvaïne, dizaine, douzaine, quinzaine, vingtaine, trentaine, quarantaine, cinquantaine, soixantaine, centaine*.

*Huitaine* signifies eight days; it is used in law: *à la huitaine*, eight days hence.

*Neuvaïne* signifies a nine days' devotion; it is now scarcely used in poetry, as it was formerly, to signify the nine Muses.

*Dizaine* and *Douzaine* signify a collection of ten and twelve: as, *une dizaine ou une douzaine de pommes*, ten or twelve apples; *Douzaine* signifies a dozen, and *demi-douzaine*, half a dozen; but we never say *demi-huitaine* or *demi-dizaine*, to signify four or five.

*Quinzaine, vingtaine, trentaine, &c.* a collection of fifteen, twenty, thirty, &c.

*Quarantaine* is likewise said of the forty days which persons, coming from a place where the plague is, are obliged to spend, before they get into the town where they intend to go.

There are some other collective numbers : as, *tercet, quatrain, sizain, huitain, dizain, quinzain, trentain.*

The first five are only used, speaking of some pieces of poetry. The first signifies a triplet, the second a stanza of four verses, the third a stanza of six verses, &c.

*Quinzain* and *trentain*\* are used at tennis. *Quinzain* is said when both players have fifteen, and *trentain* when they have thirty. In this sense they are indeclinable : as, they have both fifteen : *ils sont quinzain.*

#### *Des Nombres ordinaux.*

Ordinal numbers are *premier, second, troisième, quatrième, cinquième, sixième, &c.*

Though we do not say *unième* alone, it is, however used after other numbers instead of *premier* : as, we do not say *vingt & premier* twenty-first, *trente & premier, &c.* but we say *vingt & unième, trente & unième.*

Neither do we say *vingt et second, trente et second* ; but we say, *vingt deuxième, trente-deuxième.*

Speaking of a sovereign, we make use of cardinal numbers : as, *Guillaume trois, George trois, Louis quinze*, and not *Guillaume troisième, &c.* as in Boyer's Grammar. However, for first and second, we make use of ordinal numbers : as, *George premier. Frédéric second.* Speaking of the Emperor *Charles V.* we say, *Charles Quint.*

We commonly say *livre trois, chapitre quatre, article cinq, verset huit, nombre dix, paragraphe cinq, page soixante* ; however, speaking regularly, we make use of the ordinal numbers in such cases : as, *livre troisième, chapitre quatrième, &c.*

When two uncertain numbers follow one another, the first is a cardinal, the second an ordinal number : as, this is in the third or fourth chapter ; *cela est dans le trois ou*

\* These words *quinzain* and *trentain*, are formed by corruption from *quinze*, *trente*, to signify *quinze-à-quinze, trente-à-trente.*

*quatrième chapitre* ; he is the seventh or eighth Earl in the kingdom ; *il est le sept ou huitième Comte du royaume*. Except *premier et second*, which are always to be used in such cases.

When *quatrième, cinquième, sixième, &c.* are preceded by the indefinite article *un*, they signify the fourth, fifth, sixth, &c. part of a thing ; but when they are preceded by the definite article *la*, we join the word *partie* to the noun of number : as, *la quatrième, cinquième, sixième partie*.

When we ask for the day of the month, we commonly say *quel quantième avons-nous du mois ?* or *quel jour avons-nous du mois ?* We likewise say *quel quantième êtes vous de votre classe ?* what place have you got in your school ? When we speak of the day of the month, we indifferently make use of the ordinal or cardinal numbers : as, it is the fourth of the month ; *c'est le quatre*, or *quatrième du mois*.

### *Des Noms propres.*

It would be too tedious, and to no purpose, to relate all the proper names which suffer an alteration in French.

*Vaugelas* and particularly *Ménage*, have made a complete list of them. They who are desirous to know such irregularities may consult these two authors. I will lay down here some general rules concerning this matter.

1st, Proper names of kingdoms, empires, provinces, &c. commonly take the French appellation : thus, England is called *l'Angleterre* ; Wales, *la province de Galles* ; Ireland, *l'Irlande* ; Scotland, *l'Ecosse*.

2dly, Proper names of cities and towns have commonly no variation, though sometimes pronounced in a different manner : as Bristol, &c. Except a few of the most renowned places : as London, *Londres*.

Neither are foreign proper names of men ever subject to any alteration over the whole world : thus, Master White in English, is *Monsieur White* in French ; Master Black is *Monsieur Black*, &c. and not *Monsieur le Blanc, Monsieur le Noire, &c.*

These observations are only upon ancient Hebrew, Greek, Latin, and Gothic proper names that occur in history, because the foregoing never change.



3dly, Such foreign names as are much celebrated are commonly adapted to the genius of the French language; as, *Homère, Pindare, Virgile, Horace, &c.*

4thly, A compound noun does not often change its termination; as, *Petronius, Priscus, Marcus, Varro, &c.*—But if one or other of these two nouns is much celebrated, it commonly follows the genius of the French tongue: as, *Jules César, Marc Antoine, Quinte Curce, &c.* If the noun be composed of three, it never changes its termination: as, *Marcus Tullius Cicero, Caius-Julius César, &c.*

### *Nuage, Nuée, Nue.*

These words taken in a proper sense, signify the very same thing; but when they are taken in a figurative sense, they are not used indifferently, and as synonymous expressions; for, we say, to extol somebody to the skies, *élever quelqu'un jusqu'aux nues*, and not *nuages*; and we say, truth dissipates the clouds of error, *la vérité dissipe les nuages de l'erreur*, and not *nues*; the clouds which darken the understanding, *les nuages qui offusquent l'entendement*; a cloud of dust, *un nuage de poussière*.

We say, figuratively, he has a mist before his eyes, *il a nuage devant les yeux*, and not *nue*.

To wear out one's patience, to put him in a passion, *faire sauter quelqu'un aux nues*, and not *nuages*.

To be extremely surprised and astonished, *tomber des nues*, and not *nuages*.

We say, of somebody who is out of countenance, not knowing to whom he is to address himself in company, *il semble tomber des nues*, and not *nuages*; and, of a man, who is not known to, or owned by any body, *il est tombé des nues*.

We likewise say in a bad sense, of a man who, in his writings or discourse, soars in such a manner as to lose himself, and make others lose the main subject of his writings or speech, *il se perd dans les nues*, and not *nuages*.

We say, in a figurative sense, *une nuée se forme, la nuée crevera*, and not *nuage*, nor *nue*, to express that an enterprise, a plot, a conspiracy, a punishment, or a war, &c. is ready, and near breaking out.

We likewise make use of the word *nuée* to express a multitude of persons, birds, or animals, that are supposed

to be in flocks : as, there came a cloud of barbarians who laid waste all the country, *il vint une nuée de barbares qui désolèrent tout le pays* ; a multitude of witnesses, *une nuée de témoins*, and not *un nuage* or *nue*.

Generally speaking, we make use of the word *nuage*, when we speak of what dims the sight, and hinders it from seeing objects distinctly. It is likewise used to express the doubts, the uncertainty, and ignorance of the mind.

### *Original.*

This word used adjectively is said of something new, not done after model : as, an original picture, *un tableau original* ; that is not imitated, it is original ; *cela n'est pas imité, cela est original*.

We likewise say, *pensée originale* a new thought and which is not taken from any author.

When this word is used substantively, it is said of things which are the first in their kind, and are not copied after others ; such are master-pieces of art, ancient manuscripts, or letters written or signed by those who are the authors of them : as, this picture is an original one ; *ce tableaux est un original* ; *l'original Hébreu, l'original d'une lettre*.

We likewise say, speaking with mockery of a niunny and ridiculous fellow, *c'est un original*.

This word is likewise used in a good sense, speaking seriously : as, it is after so great an original, that Plato has become a philosopher, *c'est sur un si grand original, que Platon est devenu philosophe* ; Socrates is an original of wisdom, *Socrate est un original de sagesse*. In this sense it is always attended either by an adjective expressing the meaning of it, or by a case governed after it.

This word is likewise used, speaking of languages, or texts, or of writings : as, *les langues originales, textes originaux, les pieces originales*.

*Original* is sometimes applied to a person whose picture has been drawn ; so, in seeing a picture, you may say, I like better the person than the copy, *j'aime mieux l'original que la copie*.

*Part, Partie.*

These two words, signifying a part, a share, a portion of a whole, have several odd constructions, and are not to be used indifferently the one for the other. We say, *une partie d'un livre, une partie du corps humain*, a part of a book, a part of the human body; *une part d'enfant dans la succession*, a child's portion in the succession.

As these words are used several ways in a proper sense, it will not be amiss to set the most part down, without the English annexed to them, as these words are easily understood, when a learner comes so far as to learn this part.

We say: 'on a fait trois parts de tout le bien de la succession. Quand il y a tant d'héritiers, les parts sont petites. Voilà votre part, & voici la mienne, &c. Céder sa part. Prendre sa part. Il a eu tant pour sa part & portion. Donnez-moi ma part. Prendre sa part. Le plus fort fait la part au plus faible. Il en a eu tant à sa part, tant pour sa part. Entrer en part avec quelqu'en, être de part avec lui. S'il y a du profit, j'en aurai ma part, &c. and not *partie*.

We say: 'partie d'un corps politique. Le tout est plus grand que sa partie. Les parties subtiles, grossières, homogènes, hétérogènes, &c. L'union des parties, l'arrangement des parties. Les quatre parties du monde. Ce prince perdit une partie de son royaume.—Cette grammaire est en quatre parties. Une partie de l'armée était encore campée, l'autre était en marche. Il n'avait qu'une partie de ses troupes. Il avait tant d'argent, mais il en a donné une partie. Il a vendu une partie de ses livres. Il a employé une partie de sa vie à cela, etc. and not *part*.

We say indifferently *la plupart, la plus grand part, la plus grande partie*, to express the greatest number, the most part.

Besides the foregoing irregularities, *part* and *partie* are used both in a proper and figurative sense, in several other expressions; most part of them are to be met with in dictionaries.

*Parti.*

*This word joined to the verb prendre has many significations.*

*Prendre parti* signifies to turn soldier ; in this sense it is commonly followed by the word *régiment* : as, *il a pris parti dans un tel régiment*. It likewise signifies to engage one into one's service : but when we express with whom : as, he has engaged himself in the service of my lord N., *il a pris parti avec milord N.*

*Prendre son parti* signifies to resolve, to take one's last resolution : *j'ai pris mon parti*, I am resolved upon it.— When it is used in this sense, it is followed by nothing else.

*Prendre un parti* likewise signifies to take a resolution, with this difference, that it requires always after it either an adjective or a personal pronoun, to make a complete sense : as, *il a pris un parti avantageux*, or *un parti qui est avantageux*, he took an advantageous resolution.

*Prendre le parti* signifies to take a resolution, to choose, and is commonly followed either by a verb in the infinitive mood preceded by *de*, or by a relative pronoun ; as, I choose to be silent, *j'ai pris le parti de me taire*.

When *prendre le parti* is followed by a noun in the second case, it signifies to defend, to protect, as one ought to protect oppressed innocence ; *il faut prendre le parti de l'innocence opprimée*.

*Prendre le parti*, followed by a noun in the second case, likewise signifies one's calling, profession, &c. : thus we say *prendre le parti de l'église*, *le parti des armes*, *le parti de la robe*, to turn clergyman, officer, lawyer.

### *Passer.*

This verb is liable to several irregularities. We say sometimes indifferently *passer* and *se passer* : as, *le temps passe*, or *le temps se passe*, time goes away : *la beauté passe*, or *la beauté se passe bien vite*, beauty fades very soon. In this sense it is conjugated in its compound tenses by the auxiliary *être* ; as, *le temps est passé*.

However, the one is sometimes better used than the other. When we speak of beauty in general, we say, *la beauté passe* ; but, when we speak of a handsome person whose beauty decays, we say better, *sa beauté se passe*.

We say better *des couleurs qui se passent*, than *des couleurs qui passent*, colours which fade.

When we speak of time only to express the rapidity

with which it fades away, and without mentioning in what manner we spend it, we say, *le temps passe, les jours passent, les années passent*.

But when we speak of time with relation to the use we make of it, we make use of *se passer*; a part of our life flies away in desiring the future, and the other part in lamenting the past, *une partie de notre vie se passe à désirer l'avenir, l'autre à regretter le passé*.

We do not say indifferently, *il est passé*, and *il a passé*, he is gone by.

When *passer* has either a case governed, or relation to places or persons, we say, *il a passé*, either in a proper or figurative sense: as, he passed this way, *il a passé par ici*: the troops have passed through Germany, *les troupes ont passé par l'Allemagne*.

*Passer*, in its compound tenses, is conjugated by the help of the verb *avoir*, when it is used in a figurative sense, and has a relation to something: as, after his second part he passed to his conclusion, *après son second point il a passé à sa conclusion*.

When *passer* has neither a case governed, nor relation, it is conjugated by the help of *être*; as, the troops have passed: *les troupes sont passées*.

These two following expressions, *a passé, est passé*, speaking of words or expressions used in a language, have quite a contrary signification: as, for example, *ce mot passé*, signifies that this word did take, was received; whereas, the other expressions, *ce mot est passé*, signifies that this word is obsolete, and quite out of use.

Generally the word *passer* is always conjugated in its compound tenses with the verb *avoir*, when it is used actively.

Likewise, when it signifies to be reputed, accounted for, though, in this sense, it is not used actively: as, Cromwell was reputed the greatest politician of his age. *Cromwell a passé pour le plus grand politique de son siècle*.

### *Passioner.*

*Passioné*, used adjectively, is said both of persons, and things which have relation to persons: as, *un homme passionné, des sentimens passionnés, des expressions passionnées, un air passionné*.

When this word is said of things, it never has a case governed after it : as, *des sentimens passionnés*, &c. But if it is said of persons, sometimes it has a case, sometimes not ; when it has no case, it is commonly taken in a bad sense : as, *un homme passionné*, a man prepossessed with passion : when it has no case after it, it signifies fond of a thing, and then it has a good or bad sense according to its case, as, *un homme passionné pour la volupté, pour la gloire, pour l'honneur*, &c. a man fond of voluptuousness, of glory, of honour.

*Passionné* does not govern its following case, which is always a substantive in the second case : thus, we do not say, he is greedy of glory, of shows, &c. *il est passionné de la gloire, des spectacles*. However, when its case comes before it, which is always in this case a pronoun, it governs commonly the second case ; this is the fruit of those shows of which you are so fond, *voilà le fruit de ces spectacles dont vous êtes si passionné* ; he loves nothing but glory, and he is so fond of it, that he thinks on nothing else, *il n'aime que la gloire, et il en est si passionné, qu'il ne pense à autre chose*.

### *Personnage.*

This word is only applied to men, and not to women : as, the greatest men of antiquity ; *les plus grands personnages de l'antiquité* ; he is one of the most illustrious men of this age ; *c'est un des plus illustres personnages de ce siècle*.

We say in familiar discourse, laughing at somebody, *c'est un sot personnage, c'est un ridicule personnage*, he is a silly fellow, a ridiculous man.

When *personnage* is preceded by the definite article, without some modifying word before or after it, it is commonly taken in a bad sense : as, I know the fellow, *je connais le personnage*.

### *Peinture, Portrait, Tableau.*

These three words when they are taken figuratively, have the same sense, and signify a description, a picture of some person or thing ; but when they are taken in a proper sense, they signify different things.

*The first is said, 1st, of what is painted upon a wall*

wainscot, &c. ; 2dly, of the art of painting ; 3dly, of the colour in general which is made use of in painting.

The second is said of a picture which is drawn to represent any thing after life.

The third is said of any picture upon wood, cloth, brass, &c. representing a history, landscape, building, hunting, storm, shipwreck, &c. ; even what is drawn out of fancy, or after a statue, bust, medal, &c. is called *tableau*, and not *portrait*, the latter always signifying a picture drawn after life.

*Tableau* is not always equally said of a *portrait*. Who did ever call a miniature, or some small picture drawn after life, *un tableau* ? This last word implies something large.

### *Persuader.*

When the verb signifies to convince, it commonly governs the first case of the person and the second case of the thing : as, I have convinced him of this truth, *je l'ai persuadé de cette vérité* ; he convinced me of the sincerity of his intentions, *il m'a persuadé de la sincérité de ses intentions*.

But when this verb signifies to advise, it governs the third case of the person, and is always followed by a verb in the infinitive mood preceded by the preposition *de* ; as, I will advise him to go thither ; *je lui persuaderai d'y aller* : I have put him upon study, or I have induced him to study, *je lui ai persuadé d'étudier*.

### *Perturbateur.*

This word is not joined with all sorts of substantives. We say, *un perturbateur du repos public, de l'état, de l'église* ; a disturber of public repose, of the state, of the church ; but we do not say, *un perturbateur du peuple*, a disturber of the people.

Likewise we say, *troubler le repos public, l'ordre, l'état, l'église, un royaume*, to disturb public repose, order, the state, the church, a kingdom ; but we do not say, *troubler le peuple, un état, une province*, to disturb the people, a state, a province ; though we say, *exciter des troubles parmi le peuple*, to disturb the people, to excite disturbances among them : *exciter des troubles dans un état, dans une ville, &c.*

According to the FRENCH ACADEMY, *perturbateur* is scarcely used but in this phrase, *perturbateur du repos public*.

### *Piquer, (se.)*

This verb signifies, 1st, to be offended, to be angry at: as, he is offended at the least thing, *il se pique de la moindre chose*.

2dly, It signifies to pretend to, to set up for: as, a truly learned man knows every thing, and pretends to nothing, *un homme véritablement savant sait tout & ne se pique de rien*: he pretends to write and speak well, *il se pique de bien écrire, & de bien parler*.

We say of a man who made, on some occasion, his generosity appear in emulation of another; *il s'est piqué d'honneur*. This verb, in the three foregoing cases, is always followed by the preposition *de*.

### *Politesse.*

This word is used in a figurative sense only; for we say, the politeness of the court, *la politesse de la cour*: and we do not say, *la politesse des perles, la politesse du marbre*, but *le poli*; though we say, *du marbre poli*, polished marble.

What we have said of the word *politesse* may be applied to many other substantives which are only used in a figurative sense, though the adjectives from which they are derived be used both in a proper and figurative sense; such are, among others, *tendresse, droiture*. Though we say, *du pain tendre*, new bread, and *colonne droite*, a straight column; yet we do not say, *la tendresse du pain, la droiture d'une colonne*.

### *Précis.*

When this word is used adjectively, it signifies precise, fixed: as, a fixed time, *temps précis*; a fixed day, *jour précis*; a fixed hour, *heure précise*.

We say of a man who is concise and exact in his discourses, *il est fort précis dans ses discours*; what you say is very plain, *ce que vous dites là est fort précis*.

But when it is used substantively it signifies the substance, the summary of what is the main the chief, the



most important thing in an affair, science, book, &c. : as, there is the whole substance of this book, *voilà tout le précis de ce livre*.

### *Propre.*

When this word signifies fit, good, apt, it is followed either by the preposition *à* or *pour* : as, a man fit to war, *un homme propre à la guerre*, or *pour la guerre* ; an herb fit to heal wounds, *une herbe propre à guérir des plaies*.

However, when it is followed by an active verb, having a passive signification, it is always followed by *à* : as, a truth fit to be preached, *une vérité propre à être prêchée* ; fruit good to be pickled, *du fruit propre à confire*, or *à être confit*.

When *propre* is taken substantively, it signifies a particular quality, which distinguishes a thing from all others: as, the property of birds is to fly, *le propre des oiseaux est de voler*.

### *Raillerie.*

When this word is used with the verb *entendre*, and without any article : as, *entendre raillerie* ; it signifies to give a good interpretation to a raillery, not to be offended at any thing.

When it is used with the same verb *entendre*, and with the definite article : as, *entendre la raillerie* ; it signifies to be acquainted with the art of jeering : as, *il entend la raillerie*.

We sometimes say *raillerie à part*, seriously, in earnest.

### *Recherche.*

This word is not equally applied to all things ; for we do not say *faire la recherche d'une chose perdue, d'une chose égarée*, to inquire after a thing which is lost or strayed ; though we say, *faire la recherche de la vie de quelqu'un*, to make an inquiry after the life and actions of somebody ; *faire la recherche d'une fille*, to express the pursuit one makes to marry a girl, to court her. In this sense we likewise say, *rechercher une fille en mariage*, or only *la rechercher*.

We do not say, in a proper sense, the seeking after the treasures which the sea encloses in its depths, *la recherche*

*des trésors que la mer renferme dans ses abîmes.* However, we say in a figurative sense, *la recherche des biens de la terre & des trésors*, the pursuit after wealth and treasures.

We likewise say, *les recherches de l'antiquité*, the inquiries after antiquity; *il faut toujours travailler à la recherche de la vérité*, we must always be busy about the inquiry after truth.

It likewise signifies a thing curiously inquired after: as, this book is full of curious inquiries, *ce livre est plein de recherches curieuses*.

Though we do not say of a thing lost or strayed, *faire la recherche*, yet we may make use of *rechercher* to seek again, to look for a second time: as, you did not seek well every where, you must seek again, *vous n'avez pas bien cherché partout, il faut rechercher*.

### *Réglé, Régulier.*

These two words have many odd constructions. They are said of both persons and things, but with different significations.

We say, a man regular in his study and conduct, *un homme réglé dans ses études, & dans sa conduite*.

We likewise say, *des mœurs réglées*, good manners; *une vie réglée*, a pure and innocent life; *une horloge bien réglée*, a clock that goes very right; *un repas réglé*, a repast not too expensive; *des heures réglées*, stated hours, &c.

We say, *une femme-très pieuse & très régulière*; *sa conduite a toujours été fort régulière*, to express that a woman is very pious and regular in her conduct. We do not say, in this sense, *c'est une femme réglée*; this word has quite a different meaning; however, we say, *c'est un homme réglé*, he is a sober man.

We say *régulier* of things which are done in an uniform and regular manner, particularly of those which are done according to the rules of art. Thus we say, *une procédure régulière*, a regular proceeding; *une beauté régulière*, a regular beauty; *un mouvement régulier*, a great and uniform motion; *verbes réguliers*; *bâtiment régulier*, *les mouvemens réguliers des corps célestes*, etc.

*Déréglé* is the contrary of *réglé*, it is applied, 1st, to

matters of morality ; as, *un homme déréglé*, a disordered man ; *des mœurs déréglées*, *une vie déréglée*, disorderly manners of life : 2dly, to things which are not according to the ordinary course of nature and art ; thus we say, *un temps déréglé*, *avoir le poulx déréglé*, *une horloge déréglée*, *une montre déréglée*.

*Irregulier* is the contrary of *régulier*. It is scarcely applied to persons but in ecclesiastical matters. It signifies an irregular man, one who, by reason of some misdemeanor, some natural defect, or some ecclesiastical law, cannot be admitted into orders, or officiate, if he be in orders.

However, *irrégulier* is frequently used speaking of things : as, *une procédure irrégulière*, *un bâtiment irrégulier*, *un discours irrégulier*, *des manières irrégulières*, *fortification irrégulière*, *poème irrégulier*, etc.

According to the FRENCH ACADEMY, we may likewise say, *un esprit irrégulier*, a wit out of order.

### *Rendre.*

*Rendre justice à quelqu'un* signifies to do one justice, to give him his due. *Rendre la justice* signifies to exercise or to administer justice.

This verb is never followed by a participle passive : as, these are the means to make you known, *c'est le moyen de vous rendre connu* : we must say, *de vous faire connaître*.

Some French authors have put a participle after this verb, as, for example, one of them says, *la vertu rend chéri de Dieu*, virtue makes you beloved by God.

Such expressions are very vicious. The verb *rendre* in that sense, is only to be joined with pure adjectives : as, *bon*, *aimable*, *illustre*, *ridicule*, *odieux*, *celèbre*, etc. or substantives.

Neither do we say, with a French author, *rendre la guérison*, to heal one : because people had no healing before they were sick ; and we make use, in this sense, of the verb *rendre*, only speaking of things which were lost, and of which we were deprived.

Hence it follows, that we may say, *rendre la santé*, to restore one to health ; *rendre la vie*, to restore one to life ; because we enjoy health and life before we are de-

prived of both. We say *rendre la vue, les forces, la liberté, la parole, l'appétit.*

### *Richesse.*

This word, used in the singular, signifies sometimes opulence, riches ; as, commerce makes all the riches of that country ; *le commerce fait toute la richesse de ce pays-là.* Sometimes it signifies in poetry, the exactness and justness of the rhymes : as, the exactness of rhyme contributes a great deal to the beauty of poetry ; *la richesse de la rime contribue beaucoup à la beauté de la poésie.*

Sometimes it signifies the copiousness of a language : as, the copiousness of the English language, *la richesse de la langue Anglaise.*

*Richesses*, in the plural, and in a proper sense, always signifies great riches.

### *Satisfaire.*

This verb sometimes governs the first case, and sometimes the third. There are some cases where it governs the first case and not the third : as, all the wealth of the world is not able to satisfy the human heart, *tous les biens du monde ne sont pas capables de satisfaire le cœur humain.*

We likewise say *satisfaire ses passions, sa colère, son ambition, sa vanité, sa curiosité*, etc. and not *satisfaire à ses passions*, &c. to satisfy, to content one's passions, anger, ambition, &c.

There are some other cases where it governs the third and not the first case : as, *satisfaire à son devoir*, to discharge one's duty ; *satisfaire à une obligation*, to acquit an obligation ; *satisfaire aux personnes qu'on a offensées*, to make a reparation to persons we have offended.

However, we say, in the first case, *satisfaire les personnes à qui on doit*, to pay people to whom we owe.

The general rule to know when *satisfaire* governs the first or the third case, is this ; when it is used in the sense of to pay or content, it governs the first case ; and when it is used in the sense of to make reparation, or discharge a duty, it governs the third case.

### *Supplier.*

*Though this word be more respectful and submissive*

than *prier*, yet we do not say *supplier Dieu*, to beseech God ; we say *prier Dieu*. However, speaking to God, we say, very well, *je te supplie, ô mon Dieu! nous te supplions, ô Dieu de Miséricorde!*

Such is the oddness of custom for the use of this word, that we do not dare to make use of the word *prier*, speaking to a king, or to persons of a much higher station than ours ; though we make use of it speaking to God ; for we do not say *prier le roi*, but *supplier le roi*.

### *Tel.*

Some are wont to say *j'aime tous les bons livres, tels qu'ils soient* ; I like all good books, whatever they may be. Such an expression is wrong ; we ought to say *quels qu'ils soient*. *Tels qu'ils soient* signifies such as they are. Moreover it governs the indicative, and not the subjunctive mood ; consequently, it must be *tels qu'ils sont*.

### *Vaillant, Valant.*

These two words are subject to the caprice of custom. There are some cases where we make use of the first, and others where we make use of the second ; as, for example, we say, *il a cent mille écus vaillant*, he is worth a hundred thousand crowns ; *il a en meubles dix mille écus vaillant*, his personal estate is worth ten thousand crowns. And we say, *je lui ai donné dix tableaux valant deux guinées la pièce*, and not *vaillant* ; I have given him two pictures worth ten guineas a-piece.

When it signifies what a man is worth, either in his real or personal estate, we make use of *vaillant* : but when it implies what a thing is worth, we make use of *valant*. This reflection may easily be applied to the foregoing examples.

### *Veiller.*

*Veiller une personne*, to watch a person, has two different significations ; it signifies to spend a night with a sick person to take care of him ; it likewise signifies to watch, to observe one, to have a watchful eye upon him.

In this sense we likewise say *veiller sur une personne, sur les actions, sur la conduite de quelqu'un*.

*Veiller* governs sometimes the third case : it then sig-

nifies to take care, and is properly applied only to things : as, *je veillerai à vos affaires*, I will take care of your affairs.

### *Venir à bout.*

When this verb is applied to things : as, *venir à bout d'une chose*, it signifies to bring a thing about, to succeed : as, *il est venu à bout de son dessein*.

When it is applied to persons it signifies sometimes to reclaim one : as, this child cannot be reclaimed ; *on ne saurait venir à bout de cet enfant*.

Sometimes it signifies to overcome one's enemies, to strike them home : as, *il viendra à bout de tous ses ennemis*.

### *Vent.*

'Though we say, with the article, *vent du nord*, north-wind ; *vent du sud*, south-wind ; yet we say, with the preposition *de* only, *vent d'est*, east-wind ; *vent d'ouest* west-wind.

### *Ville.*

We say in familiar discourse, of somebody, *il est à la ville*, to express that he is not in the country ; and *il est en ville*, that he is not at home, when we are speaking

### *Vin.*

We say *vin de Bourgogne, de Champagne, d'Espagne, de Portugal, de Piémont*, etc. and we say, *vin du Rhin*, and not *vin de Rhin*.

### *Vouloir.*

This word which commonly signifies to be willing, to have a mind to, has several other significations ; it signifies first, to command ; as, the king commands you to obey, *le roi veut que vous obéissiez*.

Secondly, to desire, to wish : as, they will give you whatever you desire, *on vous donnera tout ce que vous voudrez*.

Thirdly, to consent, to agree : as, yes, I consent to it ; *oui, je le veux bien* ; if you agree to it, he will agree likewise, *si vous le voulez, il le voudra aussi*.

Fourthly, a necessity : as, this affair must be conducted with prudence, *cette affaire veut être conduite avec prudence*.

dence; this picture must be seen in its proper light, *ce tableau veut être vu dans son jour*.

When the word *bien* preceded by the article, is added to it, it signifies to have an affection for somebody, to wish him well: as, *il vous veut du bien*. When the word *mal* is added to it, it signifies the contrary, as, *il vous veut du mal*.

We say *en vouloir à quelqu'un* to express a desire of hurting somebody; as, I know that he aims to hurt you, *je sais qu'il vous en veut*.

We say, *à qui en voulez vous?* Whom do you ask?—whom do you look for? *À qui en veut-il?* What ails him? What does he complain of?

*Que veut dire cet homme* signifies, what means this man? What does he ask for? And, to show a mere surprise, we sometimes say *que veut dire celà?* What means that? In the same manner, we say, of words or things which we do not understand, *que veut dire ce mot?* *Que veut dire ce procédé.*

#### Vue.

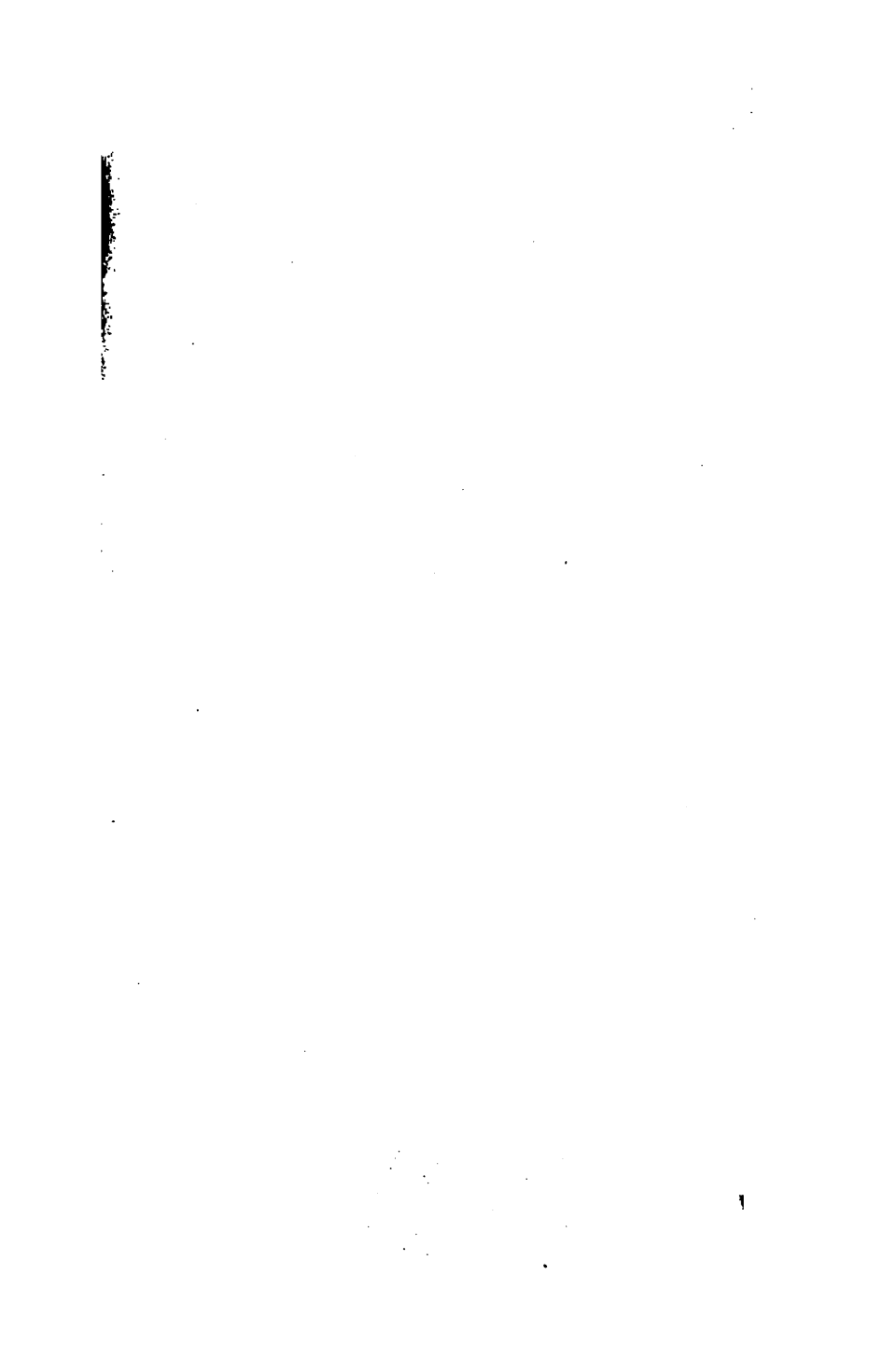
This word, besides its various significations, which are to be met with in dictionaries, has several others. *Perdre une chose de vue*, signifies to cease to see a thing: as, *le vaisseau s'éloigna en peu de temps, et nous le perdîmes de vue*. We likewise say, of an affair, *on l'a perdue de vue*, to express that we do not know what is become of it.

*Avoir vue sur quelqu'un* signifies, in a figurative sense, to have a right to observe somebody, in order to rule and conduct him; and *avoir la vue sur quelqu'un*, signifies to have a watchful eye upon somebody, to watch his conduct. We say, *avoir des vues pour quelqu'un*, to have a design to procure somebody an advantage; *avoir des vues sur quelqu'un*, to have a design to employ him to do something; and *avoir des vues sur quelque chose*, to have a design to obtain a thing.

There are some other practical irregularities: the most part of them have been taken notice of in the third part of this Grammar.

FINIS.

H. G.







1. The first part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY  
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

**This book is under no circumstances to be  
taken from the Building**

[illegible]



